A NEW

SPANISH GRAMMAR,

ADAPTED

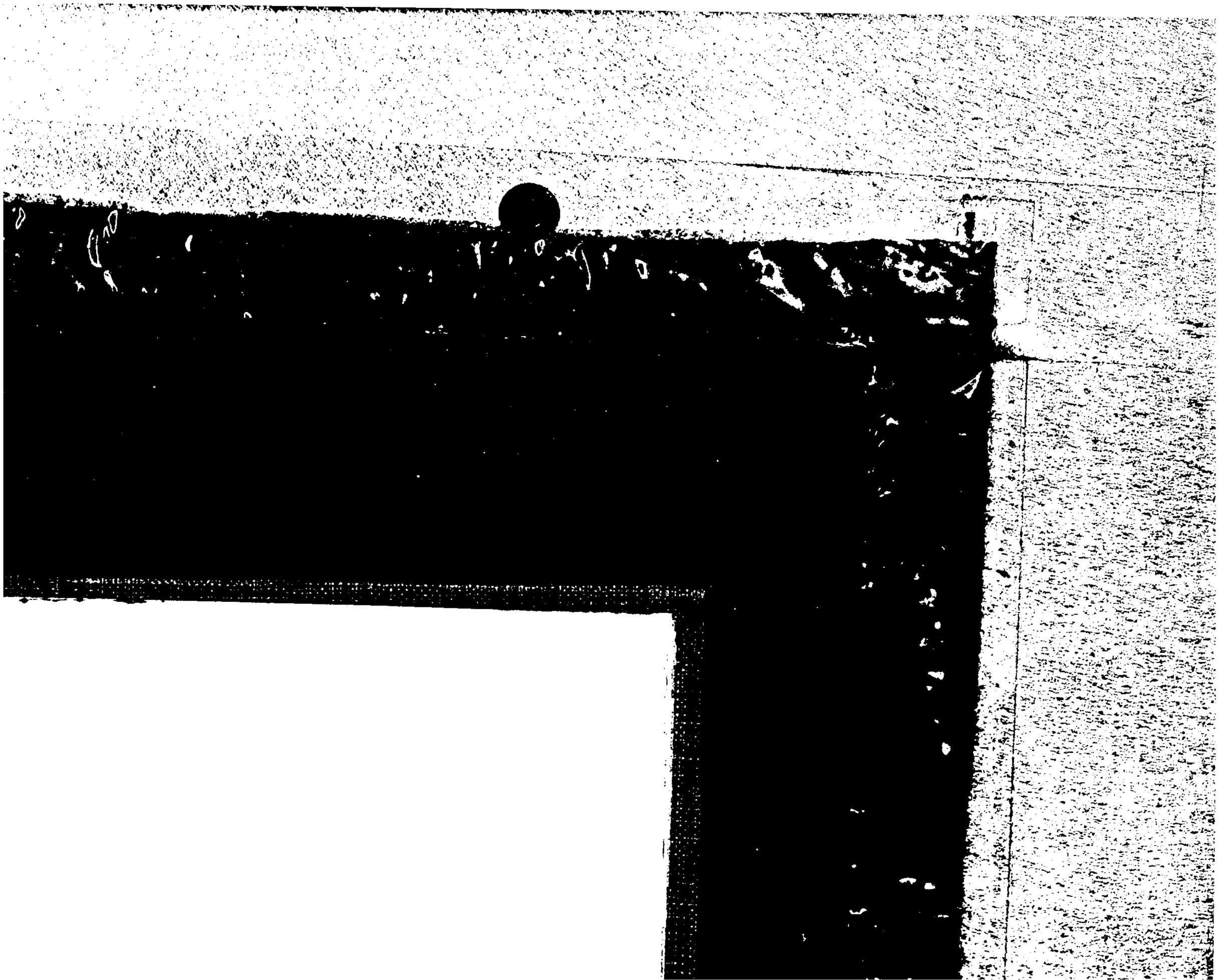
TO EVERY CLASS OF LEARNERS.

BY MARIANO CUBI Y SOLER.

FOURTH EDITION,

REVISED, CORRECTED, SIMPLIFIED AND MUCH IMPROVED.

BALTIMORE:
FIELDING LUCAS, JUN'R, NO. 138 MARKET STREET.
1828.



ADVERTISEMENT TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

Again is the author of this grammar called upon to acknowledge his gratitude to the American public, for the distinguished patronage extended to his feeble efforts. The consciousness of having been induced in all his literary labours by no other view than that of being useful to a country from which he has received the greatest testimonials of esteem and hospitality, is to him a greater reward, than all the advantages usually derived from the most successful productions. With these sentiments, neither approbation, nor censure has ever had any other tendency in his mind, than that of endeavouring, by research and study, to render this, and other works more and more practically useful.

In regard to this grammar, he has only to say, that every succeeding edition from the publication of the first, bears ample testimony to what is now advanced. It had always been the intention of the author to offer the public a classic as well as a school book. But owing to a multiplicity of conflicting circumstances, it has only been accomplished in this fourth edition—how well the public must judge.

No rule subject to contrariety of opinion has been left unsupported by one or more quotations of some author, generally acknowledged to be classic. A correspondent translation has also been annexed for the

advantage of those who may happen not to be sufficiently advanced to comprehend fully the sense of the Spanish author.

There has been added to this edition, a series of questions without answers, that the student might reap the double advantage of examining himself, and becoming familiar with what he had previously learned. This improvement will also be serviceable to those teachers, who not being familiar with this grammar, feel desirous, as they should be, to see what real progress their pupils are making.

Experience has shown the author, that some rules might have been placed with more perspicuity within the reach of tender minds, and that others, were not altogether conformable to the genius of the Spanish language. All this has been adverted to, and though he knows full well he cannot claim the right of having made this grammar perfect, he feels confident, that he has exerted, to accomplish it, all the means which it has been in his power to command.

Cambridge, Mass.
February 20, 1828.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

For the unexampled patronage which has been extended to this work, the author cannot but feel grateful to the American people. His exertions to render it more and more worthy of their approbation, have not been in any manner suspended or relaxed.

In the second edition the economy of the work was entirely changed, and the most essential parts, completely remodelled. This tended to establish its character more extensively, and it became generally used both in North and South America. Utility has been the sole aim of the author; and he has consequently availed himself of any remark, whether kindly suggested, or clothed in the asperities of enmity, which might render this work more worthy of public patronage. This third edition will, he hopes, afford sufficient evidence in support of this assertion.

That the rules of orthography might not be without practical illustrations, the author has annexed to them a few reading lessons, which he has written himself, to introduce whatever words he considered necessary for the improvement of the student's pronunciation. The explanations of the tenses have been simplified, and placed under the head of Syntax. The complaint, with regard to the difficulty which the scholar encountered in the commencement of the exercises, will no longer exist. Their arrangement has been entirely

changed; and those under the first rules, written in a manner suitable to the capacity of young persons. Every rule which was before considered either incorrect or obscure, has been rendered accurate and perspicuous. The whole grammar has, in fine, been revised and improved with all care and attention possible.

To conclude these few remarks, the author will observe, that as language is antecedent to grammar, grammar can scarcely be called original; that there are certain rules immutably fixed, which have been, and must necessarily be the same so long as language exists; that, with regard to these, all grammarians have drawn from the same source, or one has followed the footsteps of another; and that. therefore, the public will not think the less of this production if some traces of the Spanish Academy, Fernandez, McHenry, Murray, and other authors, are occasionally to be marked in it. For, with the exception of these instances, the writer thinks he has a claim to originality. Nor will it be withheld from him by any impartial judge, who will compare this work with any other of a similar nature now extant.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

It is a remarkable circumstance, that the Spanish language, which, since the days of Shakspeare, has remained in a state of oblivion, should now become an indispensible study, in a polite or commercial education. The gallant struggle of the Spaniards against the efforts of Napoleon; and the glorious achievements accomplished in South America, are the principal causes to which this revolution may be attributed.

To support the Spanish literature, or to exhibit the merits of the illustrious men, who have enriched it with their productions, has, until lately, been considered a useless and an idle task. It is only within these last eighteen years, that the English reviewers,* the German professors,† and the French literati,‡ have viewed with astonishment and surprise the "prodigious"

* See the Edinburgh Review, for Oct. 1806, p. 224—the Edinburgh Review, for Oct. 1823–24 p. 393. This number contains a critical essay on the lyric poetry of Spain, which highly supports the eminent character of this periodical work.

† Lectures on the History of Literature, Ancient and Modern, by Frederick Schlegel, in 2 vols.,—vol. 1, pp. 343—346; vol. 2 lectures xi. xxii. and pp 186, 187, 188, &c. See the 3d vol. of the excellent History of Elegant Literature, by Bouterwek, (Geschichte der Poesie und Beredsamkeit seit dem Ende des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts,) 12 vols. 8vo., 1801—1819.

‡ See Sismondi's Literature of the South, (De la Littérature du Midi de l'Europe,) 4 vols. 8vo., 1813.

genius of *Lope de Vega*, and *Calderon de la Barca;* the "sublimity and sympathetic feeling" of *Garcilaso*, and *Boscan*; and the "lofty merits" of *Frai Luis de Leon*, *Mendoza*, *Montemayor*, *Ercilla*, &c. *Cervantes* himself, whose Don Quixote is, "of all works of wit, the richest in spirit and invention," and his *Numancia*, a perfect piece of dramatic composition, had not, until lately, been shown in a proper light. Now, however, that the merits and defects of the Spanish literature are daily placed before our view, in an able and unprejudiced manner,* and that perfect translations† of the authors of merit who have been concealed for ages, are continually issuing from the press, the public may judge for itself.

While the pens of the literary world are thus employed in tracing the beauties and merits of the authors and language of Spain; it has been presumed, that to

* A course of lectures on the History and Criticism of Spanish Literature, has been written by Professor George Ticknor, of Boston. This is certainly the production of much taste and labour. Although it has not yet been published, we have had the pleasure of perusing it; and we do not hesitate to pronounce this work, for plan and execution, the best of the kind, that has yet appeared, The perfect acquaintance which this gentleman possesses with the Spanish language; the access which he has to the best editions of the many works he mentions; and his indefatigable industry in the pursuit of literary and scientific knowledge, have rendered him so completely master of the subject he handles, that his production may be considered an invaluable acquisition, and entitled to the thanks of every friend to literature and science.

† See the works of *Gareilaso de la Vega*, surnamed the prince of Castilian poets, translated into English verse; with a critical and historical essay on Spanish poetry, and a life of the author; by J. K. Wiffen, 8vo.

labour in a work, which might tend to facilitate the acquisition of this noble idiom, could not but be desirable. This is the object of the present performance: how far it may prove successful, experience alone can determine. The anxiety which the author feels for the diffusion of his native tongue, and the sense of gratitude which he cherishes towards this nation, are the only motives that have induced him to embark in the present undertaking.

In the composition and arrangement of this grammar, it has been the wish of the author to adapt it to all classes of learners. It is not, however, to be presumed, that the necessity of teachers will be superseded. The impression that a work can be written, by means of which alone, *any* capacity may learn the science it treats, is as common as it is fallacious. We cannot regard the books or methods adopted to compass the object of our pursuit, under any other aspect, than indispensable or necessary aids. They may afford more or less advantages, in proportion as they are adequate or indifferent; but the final success of the student will, and must absolutely depend, on his application, knowledge, capable instructors, particular talents, or appropriate age. This is as true as it is apparent. Can a youth, who has scarcely had time to learn the rudiments of his own language, understand the nature of another, with the same facility as the adult, who, by study and reflection, has acquired experience; quickened his penetration, and matured his judgment? Or, can a person without any general knowledge, and perhaps imperfect in his maternal tongue, apprehend as rapidly, and apply as judiciously, the rules of any

science, as he who has made uni
object of his constant pursuit.

It must be confessed that the
prevented the author from annex
common and attractive phrase of
not, however, from bestowing u
and study possible, to render it a
telligible, as the subject would
tion, that human capacity is limi
and that it is to very few indivi
been bountiful in her gifts; has al
to use his utmost efforts in ende
contents of this grammar in a
gradation; and to make its arran
various modes of instruction.

On the present edition of this
attention have been bestowed, th
would ever require. The rapidit
impression has been exhausted;
upon it by the most eminent An
the promptitude with which it wa
institutions of the United State
forms a branch of their instructi
as flattering as they were unex
They have given impulse to new s
new discoveries have ensued, an
tion of this performance has b
additions and improvements hav
that it may be pronounced almost

It is hoped that, although no gr
new, this may have claims, both i
to some originality. It has not
tion, nor has the zeal of the a

difficulties, or has, in any manner, the consideration, that seldom does the writer of an elementary work obtain much credit for his toil, weakened his exertions. When therefore, it shall be found, that in this present task, errors have been committed, or room for improvement has been left, let it be attributed to the deficiency of the author, and not to his pressure of time or want of study.

As simplicity and clearness have been the guides by which the writer of this work has been directed, he has divided it into Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody. These are the heads most commonly used, and most generally understood. It has always been the peculiar care of the author, never to sacrifice perspicuity to novelty, or precision to fancy. He is perfectly convinced, that how philosophical or logical soever new technical terms or modes of expression may appear, they always destroy the very purpose for which they are intended.

It is a matter of peculiar gratification, that English words have been found, by means of which, the precise and exact sound of the Spanish vowels can immediately be attained. The consonants have also been rendered perfectly intelligible; and rules for the true Castilian pronunciation have been laid down. As the sound of some consonants has given rise to various discussions, they have been explained at large; and it is presumed, that irrefragable authorities having been produced, their pronunciation will now be permanently established. The hope may, therefore, be indulged. that the study of Spanish orthography will no longer be considered as a matter of difficulty.

With a view to afford greater facilities to those individuals, who, being unacquainted with the rudiments

of language in general, are anxious to acquire the Spanish, a concise treatise on grammar has been introduced into Etymology. The gender of nouns will, the author trusts, be found remarkably simple. A few clear and succinct rules, to distinguish it, have been given, and the exceptions to these rules, are placed in alphabetic order. Great care has been taken to place the declensions within the reach of any common capacity. In regard to cases, two only have been adopted. It was imagined, that by this means, the difficulties, rules and anomalies of the Spanish language, could be much better elucidated, than if six had been used. Independently of this, the Castilian idiom differs in this respect, from the ancient languages, in which, the words receive new modifications, according to their position in the sentence.

The verb being the principal mover and spring of language, much attention has been bestowed upon it; and it is fondly hoped, not without some success. New and easy modes of conjugating the verbs have been introduced; and to render them easy of acquisition, the English equivalent has always been added. The irregular verbs, which have always been considered one of the greatest intricacies in the study of the Spanish language, no longer will present, it is believed, any difficulty to the learner.

During the sixteenth and successive centuries, the tenses of Spanish verbs, underwent some changes, and a variety of modifications. To prevent the embarrassment which this novelty might offer, when the student should peruse the books written in those days, a view of the ancient termination has been annexed to the verbs. Strong as the notion was, that the use of the

tenses which had been copied in the first edition of this volume, was beyond the possibility of change; further experience and study have devised some improvements and meliorations, which it is presumed, will not be altogether unworthy of the public.

In the progress of the art of acquiring foreign languages, it must be considered as a lamentable circumstance, that each professor should be addicted to form a method of his own; and that whilst scientific men have been occupied in exploring the abstract regions of language, they should have left to the caprice of fashion, or to the fancy of innovators, the steps which end, where philosophical researches commence. Within late years, however, we find some individuals employed in explaining the elements of grammar, whose names cannot be mentioned without sentiments of reverence. It is to this circumstance, that we are to attribute the general adoption of exercises, to explain, elucidate, and impress the grammatical rules. This custom must be considered as the greatest advancement which has been made towards the art of acquiring languages.

In taking a view of the many advantages resulting from the adoption of exercises, some are found, which cannot be passed in silence. By means of these practical themes, no rule can be too obscure for the student's penetration; or misapprehended through his want of judgment. Practice brings his knowledge to the test; if there be any deficiency or mistake, it immediately becomes apparent; and it can therefore be supplied or corrected, by the explanation of an instructor, or the renewed efforts to which the learner is impelled. The act of correcting, either by writing or reading, a number of sentences in which the rule, note, or observation

in question is applied, must necessarily inculcate it on the student's mind; and the frequency of reference, supplies him with an abundance of words, and what is better, with the power of using them correctly. To the young beginner this method will teach, that something more than mere repetition is necessary for improvement; and in the adult, it will supersede the aptitude which he once had to recollect words, and which he may now have insensibly lost, either by the want of practice, or the habit of reflection. Exercises will tend to establish firmly the long neglected truth, that he who recollects a rule, may fail in the application of it;—that the manner in which a child acquires its native tongue, is, and must be essentially different from what vocabularists call to learn a language as nature teaches it;—that in the first instance, we acquire the oral signs, and their use, by the sensation which their sound and the novelty of their application produces upon our tender faculties, and the insensible impression created in us by the constant desire of expressing our wants, or the curiosity we feel as new objects are presented to our view;—that in the second, we must possess a good memory to acquire a number of words and sentences, which, when known, (as no rules are given for their application,) throw the mind into confusion, the moment they are to be modified, or our ideas differ from those conveyed in the phrases learned;—that to know the rules, or understand the books of an idiom, is not to speak it or to write it;—and that, practice in language, as in all other sciences, is the soul of improvement.

These reflections, which the experience of years emboldens the author to believe are founded on the solid principles of common sense, have induced him to sup-

ply every syntactical rule, note, and observation of this grammar, with a number of corresponding exercises. In the arrangement of them, it will be perceived, that the gradual progress of the student, has been an object of great consideration. Much attention has also been paid to their selection. None have been admitted but those which had a moral tendency, or which would afford the student some instruction, in the various departments of useful learning.

Reference has always been preferred to repetition; the author being convinced, that this is what most accustoms the learner to study and reflection; the only two means by which he can make any rapid or solid advancement.

As it cannot be supposed, that every one who will use this work, to acquire a knowledge of the Spanish language, has directed his attention to rhetoric, logic, or universal grammar; the rules, notes, or observations, which, for the want of those studies, might appear obscure, have been fully explained.

Having taken into consideration, that this work is intended to carry the student through a theoretical, as well as practical course of Spanish; peculiar care has been taken that the difference between the Imperfect, and the Preterite tenses; that of *Ser* and *Estar;* that of *le* and *lo;* the use of *se;* and of the pronouns in general, should be treated in a perspicuous and comprehensive manner, to remove the impression that these parts of speech constitute insurmountable barriers in the acquirement of this language.

As the speaking of the Spanish with propriety, as far as pronunciation is concerned, depends on a good knowledge of the accent; this has been treated at full

length in Prosody. The Versification has been much enlarged, and written in Spanish. This change has been effected, under the persuasion that it would afford infinite advantages to the learner.

In the Appendix, the synonymes have been increased; and the colloquial idioms, useful words, dialogues, and commercial documents, corrected and much improved. This grammar has also been supplied with an alphabetical Index, which, it is imagined, will be of great service to those persons, who, having learned the Spanish, may have occasion, from time to time, to solve some rising difficulties. In fact, nothing susceptible of melioration, has remained unnoticed; and every thing, within the power of the author, that could render this work valuable, has been added.

It has been his constant care to avoid typographical mistakes, or inaccuracies of language; fully persuaded, that these imperfections are more apparent and injurious in grammars than in other works. As to the first, justice compels him to say, that owing to the accustomed unremitted attention of the printer, the number of them is so insignificant, that an errata is rendered totally unnecessary. Respecting the second, if any have escaped, the writer hopes, that as he has expressed himself in a foreign idiom, they will be regarded with some degree of lenity.

The author will finally observe, that having been animated by the desire of being serviceable; no toil has been considered too irksome—no research too laborious—no study too difficult—no expense too great, to produce a complete Spanish grammar. Whether his wishes have been realized, he entirely leaves to the future decision of a free and enlightened people.

the unsuspecting Phœnicians entirely under his dominion.

The unjust Carthaginians did not, however, long enjoy the benefit of this ungenerous and treacherous conduct. In the year 200, before Christ, the Romans, whose power was now wide and irresistible, took possession of that country;—established there their own form of government;—introduced their own language;—and habituated the natives to their manners and customs, for the space of 616 years, during which period they kept this territory under absolute subjection.

When in 416, that mighty empire, at the mention of which all nations trembled, was inundated by hordes of fierce northern tribes, and was precipitated from that pinnacle of glory and power, to the vale of obscurity and insignificance, Spania, like most of Europe, was overrun by hosts of these barbarous invaders. In proportion as the Romans, in Spania, were subdued, they were, no doubt, anxious to be understood by their assailants, that, by this communication, their fall might be less intolerable. To accomplish this, they were obliged to have recourse to the desperate remedy of mutilating their precious and sonorous language. The Goths or Teutonicks, on the other hand, being unacquainted with the beauties of language, were not ambitious either to refine or impart their idiom to the newly conquered provinces. As they found several difficulties to surmount in the Latin, they were unwilling to adopt this language of the subdued Romans. Among the greatest difficulties which the Goths experienced in the adoption of the Roman language, was the declension of nouns, for which reason they abandoned them, and in their place substituted prepositions.

This inflection of language, how trivial soever it may appear at first, hastened, more than any thing else, the destruction of the Latin and Gothic tongues in *Spania;* for, in 623, not long after the entire rejection of the declensions, when the Goths obtained full possession of that portion of the Roman empire, these two languages were so adulterated, that they entirely constituted a new dialect, which received the name of *Romance.* This *Romance* became then the vernacular tongue of all *Spania.*

In the year 714, when the Arabs suddenly overwhelmed, like a mighty torrent, all this country, the *Romance* underwent new modifications. It was then that it received those palatical sounds and sonorous expressions, which so eminently characterize the noble Castilian language.

During the contests of the descendants of the Goths with the Musselmen, the Romance was recovering strength, in proportion as the former were gaining superiority over the latter. As the first descendants of the Goths who distinguished themselves against the Musselmen, were natives of a province of that territory called *Castilla,* Castile; they all received the appellation of *Castellanos,* Castilians.

The Phœnician term, *Spania,* had also now been converted into España, Spain, and thus the inhabitants of this country in general, were, and have ever after been, called *Españoles,* Spaniards. When the Spaniards had entirely shaken off their Arabic yoke, the Romance received so great a cultivation in Castile, that it afterwards obtained the name of *La Lengua Castellana,* the Castilian language, an appellation

which we ought always to give to the idiom of Spain, when spoken in its purity.

Notwithstanding all the adulterations which the Latin or Roman language had undergone, when any thing was to be committed to public writing, it always appeared in the Latin language in its most correct state. This was continued until the time of Alphonsus the Wise, who, seeing the superiority which their own language would obtain if properly cultivated, prohibited the custom of writing in Latin, royal ordinances, concessions, privileges, and other public documents.

This prince, the father of Castilian literature, evinced the greatest enthusiasm in the cultivation of the *Romance.* To excite a taste and eagerness for it in every Castilian heart, he furnished, in the new language, a code of laws, which his father, St. Ferdinand, caused to be framed by the best advocates of his time. These laws were divided into sections or heads, called *partidas.* Such was the reputation which these laws had acquired, that *partida,* when used in reference to them, became a term of excellence; and when Alphonsus had concluded them in the Romance, he entitled them *las leyes de las partidas.* The style in which he wrote these laws was so pure and majestic, that it not only displayed the beauty and strength of the language at that early period, but it was not surpassed, or even equalled, by many cotemporary or posterior productions.

These glorious labours of Alphonsus, which show at once his learning and attachment to his country, had the desired effect. They roused from a dormant state the Castilian genius—communicated emulation to those cold and indifferent hearts—showed them the treasure they possessed in their then imperfect language; and

literature and science became the objects of the Castilian mind. The Spaniards being inspired with this praiseworthy ambition, thought of soaring higher than employing themselves, as they had done heretofore, in writing ballads and chivalric poems. For soon after, the Chronicles of king St. Ferdinand, Don Alphonsus the Wise. Don Sancho IV. Don Ferdinand IV. and Don Alphonsus XI. appeared written in this language, which was not an inconsiderable step towards its perfection.

Whilst the Castilian genius was thus employed in beautifying and perfecting the newly adopted language, *Pedro Lopez de Ayala*, that classical writer, made his appearance; and composed in a chaste, handsome, and relatively speaking, elegant style, the Chronicles of king Don Peter, those of Don Henry II., and those of Don John I.

The Spaniards, at a very early period, were inspired with an almost irresistible taste for the Romance, and in this species of composition they then excelled, and have ever after equalled, and even surpassed all other European nations. As to the chivalric writings, the Spaniards also distinguished themselves over the French, Italians, and English. In all their compositions, particularly in that entitled the Cid, the name of whose author was buried with himself, or has unfortunately remained concealed to the present day, the true Castilian spirit, a simplicity at those times not to be excelled, and a national feeling, worthy of the highest encomiums, manifested themselves.

The greatest monument, however, that perpetuates the memory of the early efforts of Castilian genius, is the production of Juan Manuel, entitled, "*El Conde*

Lucanor," Count Lucanor. This work, though written in the beginning of the fourteenth century, is not distinguished by any of the pomp or ostentation which disfigured, in some measure, the productions of that age. Experience and observation seem to have enriched the author's fertile mind with a great fund of practical philosophy, and modest, dignified sentiment, which he infused into the spirit of his writings. In his style he introduces no sought beauty or artificial embellishment; a natural and even neglected simplicity pervades throughout, which greatly enhances the vast erudition and deep reflections with which all his works abound.

This writer was a lineal descendant of king St. Ferdinand, and distinguished for every good and great quality, that can adorn the human mind. Under king Alphonsus XI., he achieved so many heroic exploits, and performed so many brilliant actions, that obtained him a lasting glory. Endowed, as he was, with sentiments lofty and generous, and with a judgment that nothing could misguide, he never became the victim of kingly jealousy or of party feeling. A universal admiration of the man and his works, was the happy lot of this author to enjoy during his life; and it has been the monument consecrated to his memory after his death.

The productions of such a character and at such a period, gave great impulse to the budding genius of the Spaniards. Their effect on the language was not so immediate, half a century having elapsed since the wise Alphonsus had used so many exertions to carry it to some degree of perfection. The polished form, however, that the Castilian idiom assumed in the fifteenth century, was owing in a very great measure to the la-

bours and popularity of Don Juan Manuel. This age is conspicuous in the literary annals of Spain for having produced Juan de Mena, the first of the Spanish great poets. Immortal praise is due to this son of the Muses for the labours he bestowed on his maternal tongue, and for his exertions to improve it, without the aid of any other dialect or idiom.

Boscan, Garcilaso de la Vega, and Luis de Leon, the three greatest stars that, in the sixteenth century, rose to illumine the dawn of Castilian poetry, changed in some degree the character of the language. By their close imitation of the Italian poets, they gave the Spanish those soft and sweet tones, which are heard amidst its Latin majesty, Gothic strength, and Oriental pomp.

By the labours of these eminent authors, the Spanish idiom had taken some rapid strides towards refinement and elegance. Happily, they were only harbingers of the degree of perfection to which it would be carried by a Cervantes, whose genius for the Romance has been the inimitable example of all other nations, and by which he has immortalized his name and his compositions. By a Francisco de Quevedo Villegas, whose prose and poetical writings are entitled to the highest admiration of the learned. By a Granada, whose chaste and eloquent style will ever be the pride of Spain. By an Alego Venegas, a Fernando Perez de Oliva, whose profound and philosophical treatises will always be read with interest and advantage. By a Lopez de Vega, a Calderon de la Barca, whose dramatic powers have entitled Spain to the boasted appellation of being equal to any as to comedy. By a Juan Rufo, an Alphonso de Ercilla, whose two heroic poems, La Austriada of the former, La Araucana of the latter,

reflect honor on the poesy of Spain. By a Solis, a Clarijo, a Palafox, an Argensola, a Jovellanos, a Montengon, an Isla, a Melendez Valdez, and, in fine, by numberless other eminent writers, who have rendered Spain, in a literary point of view, the competitor of any country.

Formation of the tenses of the regular verbs, . . 101–108
Formation of the participle and gerund, . . 107–108
Conjugation of regular verbs active, . . . 109–116
Conjugation of passive verbs, ... 117–119
Conjugation of a reflective verb, ... 119–121
Regular verbs, ... 121
Irregular verbs, ... 122
Conjugation of the irregular verbs, ... 125
Alphabetical list of all the irregular verbs, . . 156–164
Impersonal verbs, ... ib.
Defective verbs, ... 169
Irregular participles, ... 171
Properties of some participles, ... 174
Ancient and modern terminations of verbs, . . . 175
Of Adverbs, ... 179
Adverbial phrases, ... 183
Of Prepositions, ... 184
English prepositions, with their correspondent in Spanish, 185
Of Conjunctions, ... 188
Of Interjections, ... 190

PART III.—SYNTAX.

Explanation of some marks used in the exercises, . 192
Agreement of the Article, *rule* 1, *notes* and *exercises*, . 193
Use of the Article, *rules* 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, *notes* and *exercises*, 195–206
Omission of the Article, *rules* 8, 9, 10, 11, *notes* and *exercises*, 206–215
Use of the neuter article *lo*, rule 12, *notes* and *exercises*, . 216
Rules for the use of the English definite article *a*, . . 218
Use of the noun, *rule* 13, *notes* and *exercises*, . . 222
Observations on the Adjectives, ... 225
Agreement of Adjectives, *rule* 14, *notes* and *exercises*, 226–232
Position of Adjectives, *rule* 15, *notes* and *exercises*, . 232
Accidents of Adjectives, *rule* 16. *notes*, &c. . . 236–244
Of Comparison, *rules* 17, 18, *notes* and *exercises*, . 241–250
Of Superlatives, *rules* 19, 20, *notes* and *exercises*, . 250–255
Of Adjectives which require some prepositions, . 255–259
Of Pronouns, ... 260
Of Personal Pronouns, ... 261
Observations on *vos*, *vosotros* and *vmd.*, ... ib.
Position of the Nominative, and *exercises*, . . . 262

Position of the 1st objective case, and *exercises*, . 266
Position of the 2d objective case, and *exercises*, . . 269
Use of the 1st objective case, and *exercises*, . . 271
Use of the 2d objective case, and *exercises*, . . . 273
Observation on the two objective cases, and *exercises* . 275
Observation on *se*, and *exercises*, ... 278
Observation on *le* and *lo*, and *exercises*, . . . 282
Agreement and use of possessive pronouns, . . . 285
Observation on the possessive pronouns, and *exercises*, 290
Agreement and relations of relative pronouns, *notes*, &c. 295
Use of the relative pronouns, *rules*, *notes*, and *exercises*, 297
Interrogative Pronouns, *notes* and *exercises*, . . . 303
Agreement and use of demonstrative pronouns, 306–313
Indefinite pronouns, *rules*, *notes*, and *exercises*, . 314–324
Of Verbs, ... 324
The present tense, ... 325
Imperfect Indicative, ... 328
Perfect Indefinite, ... 330
Observations on the Imperfect and Perfect, . . 331
Perfect Definite, ... 334
Pluperfect, ... 336
Future Imperfect, ... 338
Future Perfect, ... ib.
Imperative mood, ... 340
Subjunctive mood, ... 342
Present, ... ib.
Imperfect, ... 343
Terminations *ra*, *ria*, *se*, ... 344
Perfect, ... 350
Pluperfect, ... 351
Future Imperfect, ... ib.
Future Perfect, ... 352
Observation between the imperfects and future of the subjunctive, ... 353
Infinitive mood—present, perfect, gerund, participle, 354–360
Recapitulatory exercises of the tenses of verbs, . . 360
Agreement of verbs, ... 365
Collective nouns, ... 370
Use of *haber* and *tener*, ... 372

Use of *ser* and *estar*, ... 374
Recapitulatory exercises on the impersonal and irregular verbs, ... 383
Government of verbs, ... 387
Of verbs governing the infinitive, ... 388
Verbs governing the indicative or subjunctive, *notes* and *exercises*, ... 391
Of verbs requiring certain prepositions, ... 395
Verbs requiring the preposition *de*, *notes* and *exercises*, . ib.
Verbs requiring the preposition *a*, *notes* and *exercises*, 399
Verbs requiring *en*, *notes* and *exercises*, ... 403
Verbs requiring *con*, ... 404
Of Prepositions required by verbs of motion, *notes*, *observations* and *exercises*, ... 406
Of Adverbs, *notes*, *observations* and *exercises*, . . . 410
Of Prepositions, ... 411
Of Conjunctions, *notes* and *exercises*, ... 414

SPANISH GRAMMAR.

SPANISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and of writing the Spanish Language with propriety. It is divided into four parts, viz: Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY shows the sound, power, and proper combination of letters, to form syllables or words.

The Spanish Alphabet is composed of the following

Characters:	A,	B,	C,	CH,	D,	E,	F,	
Names:*	*ah*,†	*bai*,	*thai*,	*chai*,	*they*,	*a*,	*ai'ffey*,	
G,	H,	I,	J,	K,	L,	LL,	M,	
hay,	*at'chey*,	*ee*,	*hot'tah*,	*kah*,	*ai'ley*,	*ail'liey*,	*ai'mey*	
N,	Ñ,	O,	P,	Q,	R,	S,	T,	
ai'ney,	*ain'niey*,	*o*,	*pay*,	*koo*,	*air'rey*,	*ais'sey*,	*tay*,	
U,	V,	X,	Y,	Z.				
oo,	*vai*,	*ai'keez*,	*eegreeai'ghah*,	*thai'tah*.				

* The name should not be mistaken for the sound of the letters. For instance, the name of the character Z, is *thaitah;* at the same time that its sound is like *th* in *thanks*. The name has therefore relation to the peculiar appellation by which a letter, when it forms no combination with others, is distinguished. The sound is that noise which is made in pronouncing a letter when combined with others.

† The author is well aware that it is impossible to give, by English sounds, the names of the Spanish letters exactly, as a

A, E, I, O, U, are called *vowels*, because they contain a perfect sound in themselves; all the rest are *consonants*, because it is impossible to utter them without the assistance of the vowels.

The consonants are divided into *mutes*, and *semivowels*. Mutes are those letters, the sound of which, begins with themselves, and the vowel is placed last. They are B, C, CH, D, G, J, K, P, Q, T, V, Z.

Semivowels are those, whose sound cannot be uttered without beginning with a vowel, such are: F, H, L, LL, M, N, Ñ, R, S, X.

SOUND OF THE VOWELS.

The sound of the Spanish vowels, is exactly the same as that of the English vowels, in the following words:

Bar,	*Prey,*	*Pique,*	*No,*	*Rule.*
a,	*e,*	*i,*	*o,*	*u.*

SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS.

B, D, F, K,* L, M, N, P, T,† V, sound as in English.

Spaniard would pronounce them. He has, however, endeavoured to effect it, as well as the variety of sound that can be formed by the several combinations of the letters of the English alphabet, would permit him.

* This letter is used in foreign words only, its place being supplied in Spani h by *c* and *q*.

† The sound of *d* and *t*, is not exactly the same in English, as it is in Spanish. There is a difference, which, although trifling in itself, is very perceptible, and therefore should be noticed.

It will be observed, that, in speaking the English, the sound of *t* and *d*, is formed by striking the end of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. In Spanish the end of the tongue is used in

C, before *a, o, u,* or a consonant, sounds like *k;* as, *caco, cuco;* before *e, i,** like *th* in the word *thick;* as, *Cicerón.*

the same manner, but instead of striking the palate, it strikes the upper teeth. The *d*, therefore, uttered after the Spanish manner, is very similar to the sound of *th*, in the English word *than though*, &c.

This sound of d, not being very easy, those Spaniards who have not attended particularly to the study of elocution, are apt to give this letter, when it terminates a word, the sound of *t*. Those whose education has been neglected, do not pronounce it at all. Certain it is, however, that one of the principal rules of the Spanish orthography is, never to give two sounds to a letter, nor ever to express two sounds by one single character. From this then it follows, that not to pronounce the d at the end of words, or to pronounce it like *t*, is inconsistent with the fundamental rules of Spanish orthography, and that, it must necessarily be pronounced as in any other part of the word. The sound of *d* therefore at the end of Spanish words, is like, or very nearly like, *th*, in soo*th*, loa*the*, &c. as, De*idad*, *verdad*, *tened*, *ardid*. This sound is supported by the most eminent Spanish preachers, orators, lawyers, such as *Ergüellas*, *Galiano*, &c.

* With regard to the sound of *c*, before *e* or *i*, it must be observed, that it is not universal. In some provinces of Spain, as for instance, *Galicia*, *Estremadura*, *Asturias*, and in all *South America*, the generality of people sound it as *s*, in the English words, *set*, *seat*. The Andalusians give it a kind of lisp, and sound it with some affectation. It is in old and new Castile alone, that it is universally given to this letter the sound of *th*. But as the most erudite people of all the provinces both of old and new Spain, sound the *c* in the manner that is done by the Castilians;—as no rules of the Spanish Academy at Madrid, are more strongly inculcated than those relative to the sounding of the *c* before *e* or i like *th* in the English words *thank*, *thick;*—and as this sound, according to our opinion, is the most compatible with the genius of the Spanish language, we have no hesitation in saying, that those who wish to speak the Spanish with purity, should adopt this manner of pronouncing the *c*.

CH, is pronounced like *ch* in the English word *charity;* as, *chalon, chacho.*

G, before *a, o, u,* or a consonant, sounds as in English in the word *gate;* as, *gana, laguna;* before *e, i, y,* as the English aspirate *h;** as, *gigo, geme.* In the syllables *gue, gui,* the *u* is mute, unless there be a diæresis on it.

H, is never pronounced.

J, sounds always as *g,* before *e, i;* as, *jaco, jo.*

LL, sounds like the *li* of the English word *pavilion;* as, *llanto, lloro, llega.*

Ñ, sounds like *ni* in the English word *pinion;* as ñoño, ñudo, liña.

Q, which is always followed by *u,* is pronounced as in English. In the syllables *que, qui,* the *u* is mute, unless there be a diæresis on it.

R,† sounds rough; 1st, when it is doubled; 2ndly, when it begins a word; and 3rdly, after *l, n, s;* in all other cases it is pronounced smoothly.

* Absolutely speaking, the English possesses no equivalent to the sound of Spanish g before *e* or *i.* The sound of the aspirate *h* in *horde, host,* seems to be the most similar to it. It is not however, exactly alike. There exists some difference, which is this, that the sound of the English aspirate *h* is effected by an effort of the throat; and the Spanish g by an effort of the palate. It is for this reason, that the late Spanish writers on orthoepy, call this, a palatical, not a guttural sound. The author concurs perfectly well with their opinion; and he, therefore, advises those persons anxious to acquire this sound, never to endeavour to form it by a strong impulse of the throat and lungs, but by a gentle effort of the upper end of the root of the mouth.

† The R, in the Spanish language, must always be thrilled; that is, it must be sounded by applying the end of the tongue to the inside of the upper teeth, and make it vibrate.

fully pronounced, there is not much room for particularizing any one with uncommon vehemence.

6th. In the general tone of conversation, the sound must never be transmitted to the throat, as is generally done in English at the end of sentences; but let it be extinguished in the hollow of the mouth.

7th. It is necessary not to fall into the erroneous impression that the Spaniards sound the letters B and V alike. There is no rule in the late treatise upon orthography, by the Spanish Academy at Madrid, which is so strongly inculcated as the one relating to the difference which must necessarily exist between the sound of B and V. The Spanish Academy, ought, on any occasion, to be sufficient authority to prove the correctness of any rule we may be disposed to give. But, as this erroneous impression has become very general, particularly among those persons, who, not understanding the Spanish language perfectly well, have heard native Spaniards speak, we shall explain the reason which has induced them to form an opinion so contrary to the rules of Spanish pronunciation.

The Spaniards in pronouncing the V, join, like the English, the upper teeth to the lower lip. But, as in all those languages which have been chiefly formed from the Latin, the consonants are never sounded strongly, the pressure in Spanish, is not so strong as it is in English. In fact, none of the consonants are so strongly pronounced in *Spanish*, *Italian*, &c., formed from the Latin, as they are in *English*, *German*, &c. Hence it is, that the sound of V seems to be so near that of B; and that persons, who are not perfectly conversant with the Spanish, find it so difficult to perceive the distinction between these two sounds; but which distinction, is, in fact, as great as it is in English.

DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

When in the same syllable two vowels come together they are called a *diphthong;* and when three, a *triphthong.*

Diphthongs.

ai, as in	am*ais*,	ye love.
au,	c*au*sa,	cause.
ei,	ten*ei*s, r*ei*,	ye have; king.
ea,	s*ea*,	let it be.
eo,	r*eo*,	culprit.
eu,	d*eu*da,	debt.
ia,	t*ia*,	aunt.
ie,	b*ie*n,	well.
io,	l*io*,	bundle.
iu,	v*iu*da,	widow.
oe,	r*oe*,	he gnaws.
oi,	s*oi*s, d*oi*,	ye are; give.
ua,	p*ua*,	sharp point.
ue,	h*ue*vo,	egg.
ui,	c*ui*dado,	care.
uo,	ard*uo*,	arduous.

Triphthongs.

iai,	ten*iai*s,	ye had.
iei,	lid*iei*s,	ye may contend.
uai,	santig*uai*s, b*uei*,	ye bless; ox.
uei,	averig*üei*s,	ye may investigate.

Whenever any of the vowels of the diphthongs are accented, they cease to be diphthongs; because each vowel belongs then to a separate syllable; as, *lei*, *brío*, *le-i*, *brí-o*.

READING LESSONS.

Lesson 1.

Words of one Syllable.

la	the	*sud*	south
cal	dog	*luz*	light
dar	to give	*cruz*	cross
san	saint	*frai*	father
ser	to be	*rei*	king
ver	to see	*seis*	six
él	he	*veis*	ye see
te	tea	*reo*	culprit
sé	I know	*leo*	I read
mes	month	*sien*	temple

nor-te	north	*ner-vio*	nerve
es-te	east	*ve-na*	vein
oēs-te	west	*san-gre*	blood
ist-mo	isthmus	*pe-lo*	hair
cuēs-ta	cost	*fren-te*	forehead
fo-so	ditch	*cuē-llo*	neck
pol-vo	dust	*pe-cho*	breast
lo-do	mud	*hom-bros*	shoulders
o-la	wave	*co-do*	elbow
puēr-to	port	*ma-no*	hands
fuēn-te	spring	*ce-ja*	eyebrow
si-glo	age	*o-dio*	hatred
a-ño	year	*go-zo*	joy
mar-zo	March	*de-seo*	desire
ma-yo	May	*vis-ta*	sight
ju-lio	July	*oī-do*	hearing
quin-ce	fifteen	*tac-to*	the touching
ho-ra	hour	*guān-tes*	gloves
lu-nes	Monday	*sue-gro*	father-in-law
jué-ves	Thursday	*sím-bol*	symbol
viér-nes	Friday	*ju-go*	juice
al-va	dawn	*ja-que*	bully
tar-de	evening	*jue-go*	play
no-che	night	*yer-ro*	error
fiēs-ta	holiday	*jar-ro*	pitcher
cuēr-po	body	*zon-zo*	dunce
huē-so	bone		

Lesson 3.

Accent over the second.

na-riz	nose	*re-loj*	watch
a-lon	wing	*bas-ton*	stick
a-mor	love	*cor-don*	tag

ju-bon	spencer	*Ge-sus*	Jesus
mu-ger	woman	*do-lor*	pain
pin-tor	painter	*ver-dad*	truth
Plu-ton	Pluto	*sa-lud*	health
In-gles	English	*pre-til*	breastwork
Fran-ces	French	*ju-gad*	play ye
Sac-son	Saxon	*ja-bon*	soap
ciu-dad	city	*sa-gaz*	sagacious
fi-gon	cook shop	*us-ted*	you
por-tal	threshold	*gor-jal*	collar
jar-din	garden	*ba-jad*	descend
si-llon	armchair	*dei-dad*	deity
per-diz	partridge	*cau-sāis*	ye excite
pi-chon	pigeon	*ren-dis*	ye surrender
ja-mon	ham	*te-nēis*	ye hold
mor-tal	mortal	*vol-veis*	ye return
vir-tud	virtue	*ger-men*	germ
so-cial	social	*lu-gar*	village
sa-lon	hall	*ca-fé*	coffee
fi-lial	filial	*so-lar*	ground-floor

Lesson 4.

Words of three Syllables.

Accent over the second.

bor-ras-ca	storm	*gra-ni-zo*	hail
es-tre-lla	star	*se-rē-no*	evening dew
hu-ma-no	humane	*pe-lle-jo*	skin
cria-tu-ra	creature	*ca-be-za*	head
co-lo-nia	colony	*ce-le-bro*	brain
con-da-do	shire	*me-gi-lla*	cheek
a-bis-mo	abyss	*mu-ñe-ca*	wrist
co-lla-do	hill	*ro-di-lla*	knee
cal-za-da	cause-way	*me-mo-ria*	memory

ca-mi-no	road	*ves-ti-do*	dress
cas-ca-jo	gravel	*he-bi-llas*	buckles
ar-ro-yo	brook	*som-bre-ro*	hat
es-tan-que	pond	*cor-ba-ta*	cravat
E-ne-ro	January	*pa-ra-gua*	umbrella
ma-ña-na	morning	*en-ca-ge*	lace
cua-res-ma	lent	*zar-ci-llos*	ear-rings
do-min-go	Sunday	*sor-ti-ja*	ring
in-viēr-no	winter	*man-ti-lla*	shawl
a-yu-no	fast day	*man-gui-to*	snuff
a-buē-lo	grand-father	*con-de-sa*	countess
mu-cha-cho	boy	*mar-que-sa*	marchioness
mo-ci-to	lad	*se-ño-ra*	lady
ma-dras-tra	step-mother	*vi-drié-ro*	glazier
bis-niē-to	great grand son	*li-bre-ro*	book-seller
		can-te-ro	mason
cu-ña-do	brother-in-law	*Bo-hé-mio*	Bohemian
		Pru-siā-no	Prussian
so-bri-no	nephew	*Po-la-co*	Pole
her-ma-no	brother	*mer-ca-do*	market
pa-dri-no	god-father	*pa-la-cio*	palace
pa-dras-to	step-father	*co-me-dia*	play-house
pa-riēn-te	relation	*a jon-ge*	birdlime
o-bis-po	bishop	*men-jun-ge*	a beverage
sol-te-ro	bachelor	*don-ce-lla*	maid
bis-niē-to	grand-son		

Lesson 5.

Accent over the first.

vás-ta-go	bub	*bí-bli-co*	biblical
cá-ma-ra	chamber	*bá-ca-ro*	earth-vessel
bár-ba-ro	barbarian	*cár-di-ne*	hinge
gé-ne-ro	kind	*lāu-da-no*	laudanum

bá-ja-mar	low water	*cál-cu-lo*	calculation
hí-ga-do	liver	*cé-du-la*	slip of paper
huēr-fa-no	horfan	*cé-fi-ros*	zephyrs
Bá-va-ro	Bavarian	*é-po-ca*	epoch
Hún-ga-ro	Hungarian	*é-po-do*	epode
ín-cli-to	renowned	*gím-ni-co*	gymnastical
án-gu-lo	angle	*jú-bi-lo*	jubilee
tí-tu-lo	title	*ín-ti-mo*	intimate
bál-sa-mo	balsam	*vá-li-do*	valid
lá-gri-ma	tear	*ró-tu-lo*	inscription
lás-ti-ma	pity	*nāu-ti-ca*	nautical
já-be-ga	moorish flute	*úl-ti-mo*	last
já-ca-ra	prattle	*tác-ti-ca*	tactics
prác-ti-ca	practice	*púl-pi-to*	pulpit

Lesson 8.

LA LENGUA CASTELLANA.

Este noble idioma que se distinguió en los tiempos de obscuridad y rudeza por su cultivo y majestad; en los dias de ilustracion y elegancia, le vemos estendido hasta los últimos confines del nuevo mundo, y sobrepujar en utilidad á los demas del orbe. Digan lo que quieran los enemigos de esta lengua, jamas podrán negar, que tanto por riqueza, y hermosura, como por copiosidad y energia, no iguale y aun lleve ventaja á cuantos se conocen. Los autores que con sus producciones imortales la han enriquecido, son y serán el deleite y la admiracion de los siglos presentes y venideros. No hai materia por abstrusa que sea por la cual la España no haya producido varones insignes que la hayan tratado como merecia. No hai ninguna especie de poesia ya sea del género elevado ó del simple en que no cuente esta nacion sus hijos eminentes. No hai ningun evento histórico, ocurrido en tiempos antiguos ó modernos, que no se halle mencionado con veracidad, pureza y elegancia, por los cronólogos de esta nacion. La España ha producido tambien hombres elocuentísimos; profundísimos jurisconsultos, grandes astrónomos, que con todos los demas varones ilustres en la literatura y en la ciencia, han elevedo el magestuoso idioma Español al auge en qe se halla.

Lesson 9.

LA LENGUA INGLESA.

Pretenden muchos que á este súblime idioma le faltan tonos suaves; que la frecuencia de *s* fuerte hace sus sentencias desagradables al oido; que sus aspiraciones le

quitan su elegancia; y que se halla todavia en un estado de rudeza ¡Cuan ciega es la ignorancia! Nada es superfluo en un lenguage, toda voz tiene su propio lugar señalado, y siempre será dura ó suave, harmoniosa ó desagradable, segun se use en la frase. Ni la *s*, ni la *h*, ni la *sh*, son de ninguna desventaja; al contrario cuando se hayan de espresar palabras que por su sonido se quiera hacer entender el sentido, son estas letras las que mas lo efectuan.

Tiene el idioma Ingles tantos diferentes sonidos, tantas modificaciones de acento y énfasis, tanta variedad de pronunciacion, que hace su adquisicion dificilísima á todo estrangero. No es pues de estrañar que unos desalentados por sus dificultades; y otros frustados en la esparanza de adquirirle, le hayan pronunciado en un estado de rudeza. Sin embargo no se espresan así, aquellos, que, penetrados de los obstáculos que han de vencerse en el estudio de esta lengua, le hayan abierto por medio de su perseverancia y aplicacion, sus inmensos tesoros; aquellos, digo, que entienden y sienten la suavidad y fuerza que se deben dar á muchos sonidos, cuya dureza solo ecsiste en la imaginacion de los principiantes. Pero á que discurrir sobre los méritos de un idioma que fué sacado de su rudeza por Chaucer, elevado por Shakespear, Milton y Dryden, y establecido por Johnson? ¿De un idioma, que si le hallamos energico en las obras profundísimas de Locke, Stewart, y Brown; le admiramos magnífico en los labios de Chatham y Burke, y se convierte en melífluos acentos en las páginas de Pope? ¿De un idioma que sirve hoi dia para decorar los conceptos de tantos eminentes varones, cuyos acentos retumban por todos los hemisferios del mundo civilizado?

Lesson 10.

LOS NORTE AMERICANOS.

Jamas ha presentado el mundo en su marcha hacia la perfeccion, un fenómeno tan estupendo como le presentan hoi dia los Estados Unidos. Ni las historias antiguas, ni las modernas, nos hablan de una nacion que en el cortísimo espacio de medio siglo despues de haberse emancipado de una de las mas formidables naciones del mundo, compita en elegancia, ilustracion, y energía á cuantas contiene el orbe civilizado. Un progreso tan rápido, en estos siglos de luces, ha formado en los habitantes de esta nacion un carácter mui diferente de los conocidos ántes. Su deseo de libertad, les hizo valerosos; sus sucesos, nobles y humanos; su emulacion, activos; su comercio, sagaces; sus instituciones y naturaleza, reflecsivos y graves. Sin embargo las dos calidades que dan mas golpe en los Americanos, son su enérgica actividad y su madura reflecsion, que nacen de las instituciones del pais. Estas se ven en todas sus operaciones, y son las que dan orígen á tantas otras calidades, que la ignorancia y falta de conocimiento les dan muchas veces mal sentido. Estas son las que les hacen ser temperados en sus demostraciones, lo que se convierte muchas veces en falta de sensibilidad; las que les inspiran sentimientos de decoro en sus amistades, que se considera muchas veces como á falta de sociabilidad; las que les hacen siempre estar dentro los confines de la prudencia en las acciones de la vida, que se implica frecuentemente á policía refinada; las que les hacen observantes, y estudiosos de las cosas y de los hombres, cautos en sus espresiones, y reservados en sus costumbres, lo que

se toma frecuentemente por frigidez de alma; las que les hacen persuadir que pueden hoi levantarse todos en cuerpos formidables á repeler el enemigo, y mañana volver á sus ocupaciones, que se interpreta en orgullo y altivez. Pero si estas dos calidades han deslumbrado á muchos que no los conocen, han servido á levantar una sociedad civil, que hace gloria á la nacion á quien los Americanos deben su ecsistencia. Faltas, ni á ningun individuo, ni á ninguna nacion pueden faltar; y el que considere que aun cuando las cosas humanas se trageran á su mas alto auge de perfeccion podrain mejorarse, no encontrará dificultad en perdonar las que nazcan de la grandeza.

Lesson 11.

INDUSTRIA.

¿Qué cosa mas necesaria en esta vida que la industria? ¿Quien pudo jamas adelantar en ninguna empresa sin ella? ¿Quien se encontró jamas libre de corazon, desenredado de vapores melancólicos, sin esta hija de la felicidad? ¡Ah, que engañados vivis, los que pensais que la indolencia trae consigo reposo! De nada nos sirven nuestras facilidades si no nos valemos de ellas por medio de nuestros esfuerzos personales. Mira, reconoce, observa aquellos hombres que les hace el mundo tantos acatamientos, y les da tantas alabanzas por su ingenio y talentos; observalos, digo, y verás cuan pocos momentos de su vida sacrifican á la indolencia. ¿Qué fruto sacaria el labrador de sus fértiles terrenos, si con su industria no los cultivase? ¿De que servicio puede ser el hombre á sus semejantes, si no pone en accion las potencias que le fuéron concedidas por el Omnipotente? Piensa, ¡O mortal! que haciendo-

te útil á los hombres, cumples uno de los fines por que fuiste puesto en este valle de miserias. ¿Como puedes pues hacerlo sin la actividad; como puedes cumplirla, si permitas que tus facultades esten adormecidas, y queden sepultadas en un profundo letargo, durante los preciosos momentos de tu vida?

Lesson 12.

LA RELIGION.

¿Quien sacó á los hombres de un estado de tinieblas y barbaridad? ¿Quien les inspiró aquellos sentimientos elevados y nobles que vemos espresados en tantas ocasiones? ¿Quien difundió por tanta parte del globo la civilizacion? ¿Quien hace temblar al malo, engolfar en un piélago de miserais al incrédulo, y elevar á tan alto grado el alma del justo? La religion. Ella pura, casta, y firme, al mismo tiempo que perfecciona nuestra naturaleza; nos inspira en nuestras perfidias, un pavor terrible, que cuanto le ocultamos con la cara, tanto nos roe el corazon. Si, tú, ¡O adorable religion! tan perseguida de los malos, eres la que les pones á sus ojos los medios de la eterna salvacion. Tú eres la que por tantos títulos debieran abrazarte; la que por los vinculos de la gratitud, debieran adorarte. ¡Que locura del hombre, despreciar al que le ofrece los medios de felicidad temporal y eterna! ¡Que ceguera, no ver la rapidez con que vuela al tiempo hacia la eternidad donde nuestra suerte se decidirá! Pero todavia mas ceguera, no querer seguir los santos dogmas que provienen del Eterno, para asegurar en esta vida la salvacion de la otra.

ON SPELLING.

According to the rules given, for the pronunciation of consonants: *c*, or *q*; *z*, or c; *g*, or *j*; &c. might be indiscriminately used in the syllables *cua*, *cuo*; *ge*, *gi*, &c. The best usage, however, has sanctioned the following rules, which must be observed by every accurate writer.

1st. C is always to be used in the syllables *ce*, *ci*, and not *z*; although c and *z* in these cases, sound alike; as, *celos*, and not *zelos*.

2nd. P is never to be followed by *h*, an *f* being substituted in place of these two letters; as, *falange*, and not *phalange*; but whenever it shall be found in books written long since, or in proper names of countries, places, &c. the *ph* is to be pronounced as in English.

3rd. Q is used only in the syllables *que*, *qui*; *quiero*, *quema*: *qua*, *qüe*, *qüi*, *quo*, are to be written with *c*; as, *cuanto*, *cuento*, *cuota*.

4th. X; this letter, when found in books, is to be pronounced according to the rules given, but now its palatical sound is supplied by *j* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and by *g*, before *e*, *i*; so that, the palatical sounds in Spanish, must always be spelled thus, *ja*, *jo*, *ju*, *ge*,* *gi*. The substitute of *x* before a consonant, must be an *s*; as, *estremo*, and not *extremo*; *escitar* and not *excitar*; and before a vowel with a circumflex accent on it a *cs*; as *ecsámen* and not *exâmen*.†

* Many persons write the syllables *ge*, *gi*, with j. Others write some words with g, and some with *j*. The most simple manner, and therefore the most consistent with the rules of the Spanish Orthography is, to write the syllables *ge*, *gi*, always with g.

† This letter *x* has therefore been exploded from the Spanish alphabet. We must say, however, that some persons do not, as yet, use the *cs* instead of x. In this case, they never place the cir-

5th. Heretofore the *y* has been used both as a consonant, and a vowel. Now, the most eminent Spanish writers, use it as a vowel only. Hence the syllables *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, *uy*,* are no longer written with a *y*, but with an *i*; as, *estai*, *rei*, *soi*, *mui*.

N. B. Words are to be written as they are pronounced.

A List of Words similar in Sound, but different in Spelling.

Acerbo,	harsh	*Ha*,	he has
Acervo,	a head	*A*,	to
Hala!	hallo!	*Halon*,	a halloo
Ala,	wing	*Alon*,	a pinion
Ahí,	there	*Hasta*,	until
Ai,	alas!	*Asta*	a haft

A consonant coming between two vowels, belongs to the vowel by which it is followed; as, *a-mor*, *pe-na*, *le-che.** *ga-llo.**

Two consonants, coming between two vowels, are divided; as, *al-zar*, *cas-tor*, *mur-tir.*

But should the first consonant be the semivowel *f*, or any of the mutes, and the second *l* or *r*, both the consonants are then joined to the vowel by which they are followed; *ta-bla*, *co-bre*, *la-cre*, *an-drajo.*

Except, *at-leta*, and *at-lante.*

When *s* is preceded by *b*, *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, and followed by another consonant at the same time, *s* must be joined to the consonant by which it is preceded; as, *Ams-terdam.*

Four consonants coming between two vowels are equally divided between them: as, *trans-cribir.*

Of some of the Marks used in Punctuation.

Note of Interrogation (?).

This mark is not only used at the conclusion; but also placed, inverted at the beginning of an interrogatory, in order to warn the reader; unless the preceding words convey a sufficient warning; as, "*¿Qué es lo que vmd. acostumbra comer?*" *pregunté al enfermo.*

"*Ahora bien,*" *me preguntó friamente el chalan,* "*cuanto pide vmd. por su mula?*"

Note of Admiration (!).

This note is also inverted at the beginning of ejaculations, when the preceding words are not sufficient to prepare the reader; as, *¡Mirándome con ternura esclamaba,* "o *que gracioso eres y que lindo!*" "*¡Pastas dulces*

* *Ch* and ll are deemed only single consonants.

y viandas suculentas!" esclamó suspenso y admirado el doctor.

Diæresis (¨).

This is used only over the *u* of *ue* and *ui*, when the *u* is to be sounded: as *ungüento*, *argüir*.

The Accent (′).

Accent, in orthography, is the mark which is placed over some letters to denote the manner of their pronunciation. In Spanish it is commonly placed over that vowel on which the stress is laid in pronouncing a word, if it cannot be ascertained without.

(1.) Monosyllables having only one signification are never accented; as, *cal*, *pan*, *coz*, *mal*.

(2.) Monosyllables, having more than one signification, should be accented when they are more slowly pronounced; as *mi*, me; *mi*, my; *tú*, thou; *tu*, thy; *él*, he; *el*, the, &c.

(3.) The vowels *é*, *é*, *ó*, *ú*, when used either as prepositions or conjunctions, should always be accented; as, *voi á Lóndres; padre* o *hijo; cruel é ingrato.*

(4.) Dissyllables and polysyllables ending in a vowel, may be accented on any vowel (the penultima excepted) whereon the stress is laid; as, *cántico*, *espíritu*, *santísimo*. *Bercebú*, *alla*.

(5.) But if to some person of a verb ending in an accented vowel the case of a pronoun should be added, the accent must be continued although it fall on the penultima; as, *temi*, *temile; enseñó*, *enseñola; miró*, *miróme*.

(6.) Dissyllables ending in a diphthong are never accented; as, *indio*, *Julio*, *agua*, *gloria*, *mutuo*, *fragüe*.

All words which end in *y* must not be accented; as, *Paraguay*,* *Rey*, *Comboy*.

(7.) Trisyllables and polysyllables ending in two vowels, must be accented on whichever of the two vowels the stress happens to be laid; as, *alegría*, *puntapié*, *ganzúa*, *continué:* see No. 9.

Except the first and third persons singular of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the subjunctive ending in *ia*, which are never accented; as, *temia*, *amaria*, *sufriria*, &c.

(8.) Trisyllables and polysyllables ending in any of these diphthongs. *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *ua*, *ue*, *uo*, must be accented on any vowel (the penultima excepted) whereon the stress is laid.

(9.) Words ending in *ae*, *ao*, *au*, *ea*, *oa*, *oe*, *oo*, (not being diphthongs) must not be accented; as, *pelea*, *Sarao*, *albacea*. But should these two vowels form a diphthong, the word must be accented on whatever vowel the stress is laid; as, *héroe*, *línea*, *etérea*.

(10.) Words ending in a consonant may be accented on any of the vowels (except the last) whereon the stress is laid; as, *árbol*, *virgen*, *metamorfósis*, *alférez*.

Except the second person singular and third plural of the future indicative, which are always accented on the last vowel; as, *amarás*, *vendrán*, and surnames ending in *ez*, which are never accented; as, *Sanchez*, *Fernandez*, *Martinez*.

(11.) Verbs or nouns which require to be accented in the singular generally retain the accent, on the same syllable, in the plural; as, *vendré*, *vendrémos*; *salió*, *saliéron*; *árbol*, *árboles*.

Except *carácter*, which changes into *caractéres* in the plural number.

* According to the new manner of spelling; these, and similar words, should be written with an *i*. See page 44, rule 5th.

(12.) If to an unaccented person of a verb, consisting only of two syllables, we affix one or more pronominal cases, the first vowel must then be accented; as, *oye, óyeme; compra, cómpramelo;* but if the person of the verb consist of more than two syllables, its penultima should be accented; as, *entrega, entrégalo, entrégaselo; comuniquemos, comuniquémoslo.*

(13.) If an adverb ending in *mente* be formed from an unaccented adjective, the adverb remains unaccented; as, *feliz, felizmente; humilde, humildemente;* but should the adjective be accented, the accent continues on the same vowel in the adverb; as, *fácil, fácilmente; difícil, difícilmente; inútil, inútilmente.*

(14.) If a dissyllable ending in two vowels be increased by the prefixing of a monosyllable, the penultima is then generally accented; as, *vía, desvía; lía, deslía.*

The other marks used in punctuation are employed in the same manner as they are in English.

List of Abbreviations used in Writing.

A. C.	*Año Cristiano*	Christian year
A.	*arrobas*	25 pounds weight
A. A.	*autores*	authors
Adm^{r}.	*administrador*	administrator
Ag^{to}.	*Agosto*	August
am^{o}.	*amigo*	friend
Ant^{o}.	*Antonio*	Anthony
App^{co}.	*apostólico*	apostolic
Art^{o}.	*artículo*	article
Arzbpo.	*arzobispo*	archbishop
B.	*beato*	blessed

b.
B^{r}.
B. L. M
B. L. P
B^{mo}. P.
C. M. I
C. P. B
Cám^{ra}.
Cap.
Cap.
Capp^{n}.
Col.
Comis^{o}.
Comp.
Corr^{te}.
Cons^{o}.
D^{n}.
D^{r}.
D^{r}.

Fran^{co}.	*Francisco*	Francis
Frnz.	*Fernandez*	a Spanish surname
G^{te}. *or* gūe	*guarde*	preserve
Q. D. G.	*que Dios guarde*	whom God preserve
Gra.	*gracia*	grace
Genl.	*general*	general
Ill^{r}.	*ilustre*	illustrious
Illmo.	*ilustrísimo*	most illustrious
Inq^{r}.	*inquisidor*	inquisitor
Jhs.	*Gesus*	Jesus
J^{n}.	*Juan*	John
Lib.	*libro*	book
Lib^{s}.	*libras*	pounds
Lin.	*línea*	line
Liz^{do}.	*licenciado*	licentiate
M. P. S.	*mui poderoso señor*	most powerful lord
M^{r}.	*madre*	mother
M^{r}.	*monsieur*	monsieur
M^{r}.	*mayor*	eldest
M^{s}. A^{s}.	*muchos años*	many years
Mag^{d}.	*magestad*	majesty
Man^{l}.	*Manuel*	Emanuel
May^{mo}.	*mayordomo*	steward
Mig^{l}.	*Miguel*	Michael
Minro	*ministro*	minister
Mrd.	*merced*	grace
Mrn.	*Martin*	Martin
Mrnz.	*Martinez*	a Spanish surname
Mro.	*maestro*	master
Mrs.	*maravedis*	mistress
M. S.	*manuscrito*	manuscript
M. S. S.	*manuscritos*	manuscripts

N. S.	*nuestro Señor*	our Lord.
N. S^{a}.	*nuestra Señora*	our Lady
Nro.	*nuestro*	our
Nov^{re}. 9^{r}.	*Noviembre*	November
Obpo.	*obispo*	bishop
Oct^{e}. 8^{e}.	*Octubre*	October
On.	*Onzas*	ounces
Orn.	*órden*	order
P. D.	*posdata*	postcript
P^{a}.	*para*	for
P^{e}.	*padre*	father
P^{e}.	*Pedro*	Peter
P^{r}.	*por*	for *or* by
P^{ta}.	*plata*	silver *or* plate
P^{te}.	*parte*	part
P^{to}.	*puerto*	port
Pág.	*página*	page
Pl^{a}.	*plana*	page
Pp^{co}	*público*	public
Pral.	*principal*	principal
Prōr.	*procurador*	solicitor *or* protector
Prov.	*provisor*	vicar general
Q^{e}.	*que*	that
Q^{n}.	*quien*	who
R^{l}. R^{les}.	*real, reales*	royal
R^{s}	*reales*	rials
Rev^{mo}.	*reverendísimo*	most reverend
R^{do}.	*reverendo*	reverend
R^{di}.	*recibí*	I received
S	*san* or *santo*	saint
S^{n}.	*san*	saint

V. S.	*vueseñoría* or *usía*	your lordship
V. S.	*vuestra santidad*	your holiness
V. S. S.	*vueseñorías*	your lordships
V. S. I.	*vueseñoría ilustrísima*	your grace
Vn.	*vellon*	bullion
Vol.	*volúmen*	volume
Vro.	*vuestro*	your
Xmo.	*diezmo*	tithe
Xptiano.	*Cristiano*	Christian
Xpto.	*Cristo*	Christ
Xptobal.	*Cristóbal*	Christopher

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of words and their derivations; enumerates their different species, and shows their various modifications.

Words are divided into primitive and derivative. A primitive word is that which is formed from no other word in the same language; as, *cielo*, heaven; *viento*, wind.

A derivative is derived from some other word in the language; as, *celeste*, heavenly; *ventoso*, windy.

The Spanish language is composed of nine different sorts of words, called parts of speech: namely, *Noun*, *Article*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, *Interjection*.

1. A noun is a word which presents to the mind the idea of any object, being, or thing whatever; as, *Nueva-York*, New-York; *Sol*, Sun; *ciudad*, city.

2. An article is a word placed before a noun, to denote the full extent of its signification; as, la *reina*, *the* queen; el *hombre*, *the* man.

3. An adjective is a word used to express the quality of a noun; as, *hombre* valeroso, a *valiant* man; *muger* virtuosa, a *virtuous* woman.

4. A pronoun is a word placed instead of a noun, to prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; as, "*el justo aborrece el pecado*, él le *detesta;*" the righteous man hates sin, *he* detests *it*.

5. A verb denotes the existence, action, or passion of things; that is, being, doing, or suffering; as, *el* ecsiste, he *exists; ella* escribe, she *writes; el* es herido, he *is wounded.*

6. Adverbs serve to modify the signification of verbs; as, *lee* bien, he reads *well; es* tarde, it is *late.*

7. Prepositions shew the relation that one word has with another; as, *él fué* de Baltimore á *Boston*, he went *from* Baltimore *to* Boston.

8. A conjunction connects words and sentences together; as, *tú* y *él sois felices*, porque *sois buenos*, thou *and* he are happy *because* you are good.

9. An interjection is a part of speech, which expresses the passions or emotions of the mind of the person who speaks; as, "*O hombre! cuan mudable eres!*" O man how changeable thou art!

OF THE NOUN.

A *noun* is a word which presents to the mind the idea of any object, being, or thing whatever; as, *Nueva-York*, New-York; *Sol*, Sun; *ciudad*, city. It is divided into three kinds, *proper*, *appellative* or *common*, and *abstract*.

A *Proper noun* is that which relates to an individual person or thing; as, *Lóndres*, London; *Sol*, Sun; *Filadelfia*, Philadelphia; *España*, Spain.

An *Appellative* is a name descriptive of a class of similar persons or things; as, *animal*, animal; *ciudad*, city; *hombre*, man; *mesa*, table.

An *Abstract* is a name which relates to an object, that exists in the mind only; as, cor*age*, courage; *tiempo*, time; *virtud*, virtue.

There are other nouns, which, although included in the foregoing classes, are distinguished by other names for greater grammatical perspicuity. These are: augmentative, diminutive, and collective nouns.

Of Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns.

There are in Spanish, some derivative nouns which are formed by the addition of certain terminations to their primitives. They are called augmentative and diminutive; because they denote increase or decrease in the noun from which they are formed.

The terminations adopted to denote *increase* are: *azo*, *on*, and *ote*—and those to express decrease are: *ico*, *illo*, *ito*, and *uelo;* as, from *hombre*, man, is derived *hombron*, *hombrazo*, *hombrote*, a large man; from *libro*, book, is derived *librillo*, *librito*, *libruelo*, a small book. *Illo*, sometimes, and *uelo*, almost always, denote contempt and disgust.

Of Collective Nouns.

Nouns singular, representing several persons or things, are called collectives. They are divided into definite and indefinite.

Definite collective nouns are those, which define the persons or things of which they are composed; as, *regimiento*, many soldiers; *arboleda*, many trees.

Indefinite collective nouns, denote a number of indetermined persons or things; as, *turba*, a crowd; *infinidad*, infinity; *muchedumbre*, multitude.

TO NOUNS BELONG GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE.

Gender.

Gender is the distinction of sex; there are properly speaking two genders only: masculine, denoting objects of the male kind, and the feminine, denoting objects of the female kind; as, *hombre*, man; *muger*, woman; *libro*, book; *mesa*, table.

Some nouns which are so indefinitely used, that their gender cannot be determined, are termed neuter; and they must always be preceded by the neuter article *lo;* as, *lo bueno*, the good, or that which is good; *lo malo*, the bad, or that which is bad.

Others which are equally applicable to objects denoting the male or female kind, and vary the article to show the distinction of genders, are called common; as, *el testigo*, the male witness; *la testigo*, the female witness; *el homicida*, the homicide *(man;) la homicida*, the homicide *(woman.)*

Others which, without varying the article, denote either the masculine or the feminine of a genus, are termed epicœn; as, *el raton*, the male or female mouse, *la rata*, the male or female rat; *el pato*, the duck, or drake.

Rules to distinguish the Gender of Nouns.

There are two methods of distinguishing the gender of Spanish nouns; first, by their meaning, and secondly, by their termination.

Rule 1. Nouns which signify males, or which denote dignities, professions, employments, &c. applicable to men, are masculine; and those which signify females,

or the dignities, professions, &c. generally applied to women, are feminine; as, *hombre*, man; *caballo*, horse, *emperador*, emperor; *monge*, monk; *sastre*, tailor, &c. and *muger*, woman; *gallina*, hen; *emperatriz*, empress; *monja*, nun; *costurera*, sempstress, &c.

N. B. *Haca*, a pony, is always feminine.

Rule 2. Nouns ending in *a*, *d*, *ion*, are feminine; nouns ending otherwise, are masculine; as, *ventana*, window; *salud*, health; *intencion*, intention; *talle*, shape; *aleli*, jilly-flower; *clavel*, pink.

Rule 3. All abstract nouns, ending in *ez*, are feminine; as, *estrechez*, narrowness; *redondez*, roundness; *palidez*, paleness.

Rule 4. The names of the alphabetic characters, as well as of the figures of rhetoric, poetry, and grammar, (except *metaplasmo*, *pleonasmo*, *hypérbaton*,) are feminine.

Rule 5. The names of sciences, arts, rivers, mountains, winds, and seasons, follow the rule of their termination, according to rule the 2nd: hence *Dibujo*, *Tajo*, *Helicon*, *Norte*, *Invierno*, are masculine; and *Teología*, *Escultura*, *Tramontana*, *Primavera*, are feminine; except *Etna*, which is masculine.

Rule 6. Nouns which are used only in the plural are of the gender to which they would belong, according to their termination, had they a singular number. Thus *viveres*, provisions, is masculine; and *tenazas*, tongs, is feminine; these being the genders to which *vivere*, and *tenaza*, would be referred, had the said nouns a singular number; except *efemérides*, *fásces*, *fauces*, *lláres*, *préces*, *trébedes*, which are feminine.

Rule 7. The names of the musical notes which compose the octave are masculine; as, *el re*, *el mi*, *el la*, *el fa*, *&c.*

Exceptions from Rule 2.

Feminine Nouns which do not end in a, d, ion.

Aguachirle	Slipslop; (*a kind of beverage*)	*catástrofe*	catastrophe
aguamiel	hydromel; (*honey and water*)	*certidumbre*	certainly
alache	shad	*cerviz*	cervix
alsine	chickweed	*churre*	grease
anagálide	pimpernel; (*a plant*)	*clase*	class
anagíris	beautrefoil	*clavazon*	row of nails
antiperístasis	antiperistasis*	*clave*	key
apoteósis	apotheosis; (*deification*)	*clematide*	climber; (*a plant*)
arrumazon	stowage	*clin* or *crin*	mane
ave	a fowl	*codorniz*	quail
azumbre	a measure	*cohorte*	cohort‡
Bacáris	flea-bane	*col*	cabbage
barbarie	barbarity	*colápiscis*	isinglass
		compáges	a joint
		corriente	stream
		corte	court
		costumbre	custom

niñez	childhood
noche	night
nube	cloud
nuez	nut
Palmacrísti	palmachrist
parafrase	paraphrase
paralícsis	parallax*
paralísis	palsy
paranésis	paranesis
paraselene	mock moon
parte	part
patente	patent
paz	peace
péplide	wild purslain
perdiz	partridge
pesadumbre	grief
peste	plague
pez	pitch
piel	skin
pirámide	pyramid
pígide	pix†
planicie	plain
plebe	rabble
plomazon	the gilders' cushion
podre	pus
polispástos	tackle of pulleys
pomez	pumice
progenie	progeny
prole	issue
Quiete	quietus
Raíz	root
raquítis	rickets; (*a sort of malady*)
razon	reason
res	head of cattle
Sangre	blood
sal	salt
salumbre	oxide of salt
salve	the salve regina
salsi fracs	saxifrage; (*a plant*)
sardónics	sardonyx; (*a precious stone*)
sarten	frying pan
sazon	season
sede	seat
segazon	reaping time
segur	axe
selenites	selenites‡
señal	signal
serie	series
serpiente	serpent
servidumbre	servitude
sien	temple
sinéresis	synæresis§
sindéresis	remorse
sinrazon	wrong
sintácsis	syntax
sirte	quicksand
sobrehaz	surface
sobrepelliz	surplice
suerte	chance
superficie	superfice
Tarde	afternoon
teame	a kind of stone
techumbre	roof
temperie	temperature
tésis	thesis
tez	complexion
tilde	tittle
tísis	phthisis
torre	tower
tos	cough
trabazon	juncture
trabe	beam or girder
tribu	tribe
trípode	tripod
troge	granary
troj	granary
Ubre	udder
urdiembre	warp
Varice	varix‖

**Parallax*, an astronomical term, signifying the distance between the true and the apparent place of any star viewed from the earth.

† A little box in which the consecrated host is kept.

‡ Crystalized gypsum

§ A figure by which two syllables are united into one.

‖ Dilation of a vein.

velambre	certain nuptial rights.	*vocal*	vowel
vez	time	*voz*	voice
vislumbre	glimmering	*Zoster*	shingles

Exceptions to Rule 2.

Masculine Nouns with Feminine terminations.

Acsioma	axiom	*dogma*	dogma
adalid	the chief of a band of warriors.	*drama*	drama‡
		Embrion	embryon
		enigma	enigma
adema	prop	*entimema*	enthymen§
alamud	a door bar	*epigrama*	epigram
albacea	executor	*esperma*	sperm
alamud	a measure containing about the 9th part of a bushel	*Gorrion*	sparrow; (*a bird*)
		guardacosta	a custom house cutter
		guardavela	maintop tackle
aluvion	alluvion*	*guion*	a standard
anagrama	anagram†	*Huesped*	guest
anbuvion	sudden shock	*Idioma*	language
aneurisma	aneurism, *a disease of the arteries*)	*Largomira*	telescope
		laud	lute
		lema	lemma‖
antípoda	antipode	*Maná*	manna
archilaud	species of lute	*mapa*	map
ardid	stratagem	*morrion*	murrain
ataud	coffin	*Paradigma*	paradigm
avion	martin; (*a bird*)	*paragua*	umbrella
Cesped	turf	*pentagrama*	musical staff
chirrion	tumbril or cart	*planeta*	planet
clima	climate	*poema*	poem
cometa	comet	*prisma*	prism; (*an instrument of opticks*)
crisma	chrism		
Dia	day	*problema*	problem
diafragma	midriff	*progimnasma*	essay
diagrama	diagram	*Sarampion*	measles
dilema	dilemma	*síntoma*	symptom
diploma	diploma	*sistema*	system

* A great swell of water.

† A transposition of the letters of a name, sentence or phrase.

‡ And also its compounds; as, *melo-drama.*

§ An imperfect syllogism, consisting only of an antecedent, and a consequential proposition.

‖ A proposition previously assumed.

sofa	sofa	
sofisma	sophism	*tap*
sud	south	*teo*
Talmud	talmud*	*Vi*
tema	theme	

Nouns used with e

Albalá	certificate	*He*
anatema	anathema, (*or excommunication*)	*hip* *Ma*
arte	art†	*má*
Canal	canal	*Ne*
cisma	schism	*órd*
cútis	skin	*Pe*
Dote	dowry	*pu*
Emblema	emblem	*Re*

Of Numb

Number is that property of note one or more of the same numbers; the singular, which *ciudad*, city; *rio*, river; and tl more than one; as, *ciudades*, ci

Formation of the Pl

The Spaniards form the plur ding an *s*, to the nouns ending ed; as, *libro*, a book; *libros*, boo *tinteros*, inkstands; and by ad end with an accented vowel or granary; *alholíes*, granaries; *árl*

If the final consonant be a *z*, *ces;* as, *luz*, a light; *luces*, light

* A book containing the doctrines
† It is almost always feminine in the
‡ All the compounds of *mar;* as, *háj*
§ When synonymous with comman

If it be an *i*, it must be changed into *yes;* as *rei*, a king; *reyes*, kings.

N. B. The following nouns undergo no change in the plural: *cortaplúmus*, penknife; *sacamuelas*, toothdrawer; *sacatrápos*, corkscrew; *Lunes*, Monday; *Martes*, Tuesday; *Miercoles*, Wednesday; *Jueves*, Thursday; *Viernes*, Friday.

These are used only in the plural:

Albricias, a gift; *alicátes*, pincers; *bófes*, lungs; *despabiladéras*, snuffers; *livianos*, lights; *llares*, pot-hangers; *púches*, pap; *tenázas*, tongs; *trébedes*, trevet, *vísperas*, vespers; *viveres*, provisions.

Of Case.

Case exhibits the different relations of nouns.

The Spanish nouns have two cases; the nominative and the objective.*

* In thus assigning two cases to Spanish nouns, the author has deviated from almost every Spanish grammarian, and even from the Academy at Madrid. Case, (from *casus*,) signifies, in its strictest sense, the manner or mode in which a word stands in a sentence, and thereby, the relation which it bears to any other word, unaided by any other part of speech. In Spanish, properly speaking, nouns can only have one case, or in other words, they can only stand in one manner, as their relation to other words, is entirely expressed by prepositions. Thus in the phrase, "*este libro es de Pedro*," (*this book is Peter's*) it would be impossible to say that the relation existing between *libro* and *Pedro* was expressed by either of the words, because it entirely depends on the preposition *de*.

In the Greek, Latin, and all other ancient languages, the substantives themselves either with, or without modification or inflection, are expressive of the relation which they bear to other words. They are therefore susceptible of cases, or of standing in as different manners as they have inflections or modifications. It is true these languages are not destitute of prepositions. This

The nominative case simply expresses the name of a thing, or the subject of a verb; as, *el padre*, the father; *el embajador escribe*, the ambassador writes.

The objective case expresses the object of an action, or of a relation; and generally follows a verb or a preposition; as, *con la pluma escribió el rei la carta*, with the pen did the king write the letter. In this sentence the nouns *pluma* and *carta* are both in the objective case; *pluma*, because it has the preposition *con* prefixed; and *carta*, because it is the object to which the action of the verb is transmitted.

circumstance, however, though it has misguided many grammarians, and has led them to the belief, that prepositions are nothing but mere modifications, is very strongly in favour of the Spanish nouns having but one case. If prepositions are but modifications, how does it happen, that they always, in the ancient languages, presuppose the necessity of inflection in the word they govern? The author cannot conceive how it could be possible that a word should be modified to express a relation, which was plainly and clearly pointed out by a preposition. Should it be taken for granted, as many have done, that prepositions are always understood; and that, to modify a word, and to employ a preposition to express the same relation, is merely to effect it in a more conspicuous or energetic manner, we must always come to the first conclusion, that substantives in ancient languages are susceptible of being modified; and of thus expressing, without the necessity of prepositions, their various relations. Now it is perfectly well known, that substantives of modern languages, the German and some other excepted, are not susceptible of any change, modification or inflection, which is the same as to say that they have no cases.

It is also erroneous to suppose that prepositions in modern languages are mere modifications, for the same reason stated above, that prepositions exist in ancient languages, in which, substantives are susceptible of modification. Besides, if we supposed prepositions to be modifications every one should govern or direct

Declension of Nouns.

Singular.

Nominative. *Mesa*, table.
Objective. *mesa*, table.

Plural.

Nom. *Mesas*, tables.
Object. *mesas*, tables.

OF THE ARTICLE.

An *article* is a word placed before a noun, to denote the full extent of its signification; as, la *reina*, *the* queen; el *hombre*, *the* man.

a new case, which the genius of any language cannot, in any manner, sanction.

With regard to pronouns and verbs, there is a much greater similarity between the modern and ancient languages. In English, Spanish, French, &c. we find that pronouns are susceptible of inflection and of modification. We say *who*, *whose*, *whom*; and in Spanish, *Yo*, *mi*, *me*, &c. As to the verbs, they undergo nearly the same variations in Spanish, French, &c. as in Latin and Greek. It is remarkable that English verbs are less susceptible of inflection, than those of any language known. However, the deficiencies of inflection are supplied by the constant use of personal pronouns, and by a variety of auxiliary particles. As verbs denote the existence of things and circumstances. together with the time of existence, verbs must have tenses and moods. The division of these in the ancient languages, being, so far, the most simple, is, perhaps better calculated for the modern languages than any other.

In regard to cases or the modifications undergone by substantives, adjectives, and pronouns, according to their relations with

The article, like nouns, has the variation of *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

The Spanish articles are;

el, the, for the masculine singular.

los, the, for the masculine plural.

la, the, for the feminine singular.

las, the, for the feminine plural.

lo, the, for the neuter, which has no plural; it being always prefixed to singular nouns.

Nouns declined with the Article.

MASCULINE.

Singular.

Nom. *El rei*, the king.
Object. **al rei*, to the king.

other words, the ancient, differ so *essentially* from the modern languages, that we can no longer follow, in this respect, the Latin grammar. As grammar is merely a collection of rules, gathered after a language has been formed, grammar must yield to the nature of the language it treats, and not the language to the caprices of grammarians. Hence, and be it said to the honour of Beattie and Murray, it has been found expedient to assign but two cases to all the languages, the substantives, adjectives, and pronouns of which, are susceptible of very limited modification. One of these cases is called the nominative, to express the subject of an action or relation, and the objective, to express the object of this action or relation through the medium of a verb or preposition.

This is the division of cases which the author of this grammar has adopted. He is fully convinced that it is the most consistent with the genius of the Spanish, and the only one which can render to Americans or Englishmen, the rules of this grammar perfectly clear and simple.

* *al*, to the, is a contraction of *á el;* and *del*, of the, of *de el*.

Nouns declined with Adjectives.

Singular.

Nom. *El hombre sabio*, the wise man.
Object. *al hombre sabio*, to the wise man.

Plural.

Nom. *Los hombres sabios*, the wise men.
Object. *á los hombres sabios*, to the wise men.

Singular.

Nom. *La muger buena*, the good woman.
Object. *á la muger buena*, to the good woman.

Plural.

Nom. *Las mugeres buenas*, the good women.
Object. *á las mugeres buenas*, to the good women.

Since the adjective expresses the quality of the substantive or noun, it is evident that it never can be used in a sentence without having a substantive, either expressed or understood, to which the quality implied in the adjective is applicable.

If to the noun understood we can ascribe a gender, the adjective is preceded by the article which the noun understood would require; as *el bueno ama la virtud*, a good man loves virtue. If the adjective qualifies some thing to which we cannot ascribe a gender, the adjective, in that case, is preceded by the neuter article; as, *él le dijo que no leyera, pero ella hizo* lo contrario, he told her not to read, but she did *the contrary*. Whenever therefore we can prefix to the adjective in English, *that which, or what*, we must use in Spanish, the neu-

ter, not the definite article. Thus we might have said, *she did that which* or *what* was the contrary.

N. B. The plural of adjectives is formed like the plural of substantives.

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

There are three degrees of comparison, termed the *positive*, the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is simply the adjective; as, *bueno*, good; *malo*, bad.

The *comparative* increases or lessens the quality of the positive, and is also used to compare one object with another; as, *grande*, great; *mas grande*, greater; *bueno*, good; *mejor*, better; *el sol es* mas brillante *que la luna*, the sun is *brighter* than the moon; *el sol es* mas brillante *que las piedras preciosas*, the sun is *brighter* than precious stones.

The *superlative* increases or diminishes the signification to the highest, or lowest degree; as, *el sol es un planeta mui brillante*, or *brillantisimo*, the sun is a very bright planet. When the superlative is to express comparison, we must prefix *el mas*, most; or *el ménos*, least, to the adjective, which must be followed by the preposition *de;* as, *Pedro es* el mas sabio *de todos los de su lugar*, Peter is *the wisest* of all in his village; *él es* el ménos erúdito *de todos*, he is the *least erudite* of all.

OF CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Some adjectives are termed *cardinal*, on account of their expressing numbers; as, three, six, eight, *tres*, *seis*, *ocho*, &c. Others, *ordinal*, because they denote order, such as, third, fourth, fifth, *tercero*, *cuarto*, *quinto*.

Cardinal Numbers.

*Uno**	one
dos	two
tres	three
cuatro	four
cinco	five
seis	six
siete	seven
ocho	eight
nueve	nine
diez	ten
once	eleven
doce	twelve
trece	thirteen

sesenta	sixty
*sesenta y uno**	sixty-one
setenta	seventy
*setenta y uno**	seventy-one
ochenta	eighty
*ochenta y uno**	eighty-one
noventa	ninety
*noventa y uno**	ninety-one
ciento	a hundred
*ciento y uno**	a hundred and one
*docientos**	two hundred
*trecientos**	three hundred
*cuatrocientos**	four hundred
*quinientos**	five hundred
*seiscientos**	six hundred
*setecientos**	seven hundred
*ochocientos**	eight hundred
*novecientos**	nine hundred
mil	a thousand
dos mil	two thousand
veinte mil	twenty thousand
cien mil	a hundred thousand
docientos mil*	two hundred thousand
un millon or *cuento*	a million
dos millones or *cuentos*	two millions
tres millones or *cuentos*	three millions
un cuento de cuentos	a billion
dos cuentos de cuentos, &c.	two billions

N. B. Every word in the cardinal numbers, which is marked with an asterisk, changes its last *o* into *a* whenever applied to a feminine noun.

Numeration.

Unidad	units
decena	tens
centena	hundreds
millar	thousands
decena de millar	tens of tho
centena de millar	hundreds
cuento	millions
decena de cuento, &c.	tens of mil

Ordinal Numbers.

Primero	first
segundo	second
tercero	third
cuarto	fourth

vigésimo tercio	twenty-third
trigésimo	thirtieth
cuadragésimo	fortieth
quincuagésimo	fiftieth
secsagésimo	sixtieth
septuagésimo	seventieth
octogésimo	eightieth
nonagésimo	ninetieth
centésimo	hundredth
docentésimo	two hundredth
trecentésimo	three hundredth
cuadragentésimo	four hundredth
quingentésimo	five hundredth
secsentésimo	six hundredth
septengentésimo	seven hundredth
octogentésimo	eight hundredth
nonagentésimo	nine hundredth
milésimo	thousandth

All the ordinal numbers are made feminine, by changing *o* into *a;* as, *primero, primera; décimo tercio, décima tercia.*

Nouns denoting Quantity.

La mitad	the half	*una docena*	a dozen
el tercio	the third	*una veintena*	a score
el cuarto	the fourth	*una centena*	a hundred
un par	a couple	*un millar*	a thousand
media docena	half a dozen	*un cuento*	a million
una decena	half a score		

OF PRONOUNS.

A pronoun is a word placed instead of a noun, to prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; as,

el justo aborrece, el *vicio*, él le *detesta;* a righteous man hates vice, *he* detests *it*. . .

There are six sorts of pronouns: namely, *personal, possessive, relative, interrogative, demonstrative, and indefinite.*

Of the Personal Pronouns.

Personal pronouns admit of number, person, gender and case.

The numbers of personal pronouns, like those of nouns, are two: the singular and the plural; *Yo*, I; *tú*, thou; *él*, he; *ella*, she; *ello*, it, for the singular. *Nosotros*, we; *vosotros*, ye; *ellos*, they, for the plural. *Ello*, it, has no plural.

The persons of pronouns are three in each number.

Yo, for the first person, *tú*, for the second, *él*, *ella*, *ello*, for the third.	Singular.
Nosotros, for the first person, *vosotros*, for the second, *ellos*, for the third.	Plural.

The pronouns of the first and second persons are used for the masculine and feminine, without changing their terminations. The feminine of the third person is formed by adding *la* to the masculine; as, *él*, *ella*; *ello* is the neuter.

In the plural, the pronouns of the first, second and third persons, form the feminine by changing *os* into *as;* as *nosotros*, *nosotras; vosotros*, *vosotras; ellos*, *ellas*.

Declension of the Personal Pronouns.

To the personal pronouns belong, for the sake of distinction, two objective cases. One of these is never preceded by a preposition, and the other always.

Third Person—Neuter.

Nom.	*Ello*, it.	no plural.
1*st Obj.*	*lo*, it.	
2*d Obj.*	*á ello*, to it.	

There is another personal pronoun, called the reciprocal pronoun; which is common to both numbers, and to the three genders. It has only the two objective cases; as,

1*st Obj.* *se**, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

2*d Obj.* *á sí*, to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves.

Of the Possessive Pronouns.

The possessive pronouns indicate possession or property. They are:

Mio, my, or mine,	for the singular.
tuyo, thy, or thine,	
suyo, his, its.	
Nuestro, our, or ours,	for the plural.
vuestro, your, or yours,	
suyo, their or theirs.	

They are declined thus:

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Nom.	*Mio*, my.	*Nom.*	*Mios*, my.
Obj.	*Mio*, my.	*Obj.*	*Mios*, my.

* As this pronoun has various meanings, and presents to persons learning the Spanish language, difficulties, which are often found insurmountable, it deserved, we thought, our mature investigation. This having been bestowed upon it, we made some observations which are inserted in the Syntax on personal pronouns. They will, we hope, unravel the intricacies of this difficult part of grammar; and render them perfectly intelligible to the comprehension of the student.

These pronouns change their final *o* into *a*, when they relate to feminine nouns.

Of the Relative Pronouns.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to some word or phrase going before, which is thence called the antecedent. They are:

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Quien,	who,	*Quienes*,	who,
Cual, *Que*,	who, which, and that,	*Cuales*, *Que*,	who, which and that,
*Cuyo-a**	whose or of which.	*Cuyos-as*,*	whose or of which.

These pronouns are declined thus:

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Nom.	*Quien*, who.	*Nom.*	*Quienes*, who.
Obj.	*á quien*, to whom.	*Obj.*	*á quienes*, to whom.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Nom.	*Que*, which.	*Nom.*	*Que*, which.
Obj.	*que*, which.	*Obj.*	*que*, which.

Of the Interrogative Pronouns.

When the relative pronouns are used in asking a question, they are called *Interrogatives;* as, *quien es vm?*. who are you? *cual de vosotros?* which of you?

Of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns are those which express, or point out some person, or thing. They are:

* These are contractions for *cuyo, cuya, cuyos, cuyas.*

Singular.				*Plural.*		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.	
Este,	*esta,*	*esto,*	this.	*Estos,*	*estas,*	these.
ese,	*esa,*	*eso,*	that.	*esos,*	*esas,*	those.
aquel,	*aquella,*	*aquello,*		*aquellos,*	*aquellas,*	

These pronouns are declined thus:

MASCULINE.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	*Este,* this.	*Nom.*	*Estos,* these,
Obj.	*este,* this.	*Obj.*	*estos,* these.

FEMININE.

Singular. *Plural.*

OF VERBS.

A *verb* denotes the existence, action, or passion of things; that is, being, doing, or suffering; as, *él* ecsiste, he *exists; ella* escribe, she *writes; el* es herido, he *is wounded.*

The verb is divided into three different kinds; *active, passive*, and *neuter*.

An *active verb* expresses an action; and it must necessarily have an *agent*, and an *object* to which this action may be transmitted; as, *él ama la verdad;* he loves truth. *El*, is the agent; *ama*, the action of the agent; and *verdad*, the object to which the action was transmitted.

A *passive verb*, affirms that its subject has been acted upon, or has suffered, or suffers; as, *la casa está acabada*, the house is finished; *su padre está encarcelado*, his father is imprisoned.

A *neuter verb* expresses the condition, or situation of its subject; as, *fué*, he was; *moramos*, we dwell; *él vive*, he lives.

Active verbs have been divided into *transitive* and *intransitive.*

An *active transitive verb*, expresses an action, which its subject transmits to another object, called the objective, or object of the verb; as, *el virtuoso* ama *á Dios*, a virtuous man *loves* God; *el sillero* pintó *las sillas*, the chair-maker *painted* the chairs.

An *active intransitive verb* denotes an action by which the agent or subject alone can be affected, as, *mis hermanós bailáron*, my sisters danced; *él saltó*, he jumped.

Almost all *active transitive verbs* may be changed, in Spanish, into reflective verbs.

A verb is called *reflective*, when the agent is the individual to whom the action of the verb is transmitted; as, *el capitan se alabó*, the captain praised himself.

Active intransitive verbs are sometimes changed into transitive, by adding to them the objective case of some noun which is generally formed from them; as, *bailar un baile*, to dance a dance; *vivir una buena vida*, to live a good life.

To verbs belong number, person, tense and mood.

Of Number.

Verbs, like nouns, require a singular and a plural number; as, *el niño llora*, the child cries; *los niños lloran*, the children cry.

Of Person.

Verbs have three persons in each number.

Singular.

First person, *Yo amo*, I love.
Second person, *Tú amas*, thou lovest.
Third person, *El*, or *ella ama*, he or she loves.

Plural.

First person, *Nosotros-as amamos*, we love.
Second person, *Vosotros-as amais*, ye love.
Third person, *Ellos-as aman*, they love.

Of Tenses.

The being, doing, and suffering, expressed by a verb, may be limited to three tenses or different periods of time: *past*, or having taken place; *present*, or taking place; *future*, or being to take place.

These three tenses or periods, are subdivided in the following manner:

*Present, imperfect, perfect indefinite, perfect definite, pluperfect, future imperfect, future perfect.**

Of Moods.

Mood expresses the particular manner in which the being, doing, or suffering of verbs, is represented. The verbs have, in the Spanish language, four moods; *infinitive, indicative, imperative, subjunctive.*

The *infinitive*, affirms in a general, unlimited and indefinitive manner, without any distinction of number or person; as, *venir*, to come; *ir*, to go; *conceder*, to grant; *perdonar*, to forgive.

The *indicative*, affirms the execution of the action denoted by the verb, in a positive and unconditional manner; as, *nosotros damos*, we give; *ellos vienen*, they come.

The *imperative*, orders or entreats the execution of the action; as, *id vosotros*, go ye; *concedednos*, grant us; *perdóname*, forgive me.

The *subjunctive*, always speaks of the action as contingent; as, *si fuéremos mañana*, if we happen to go tomorrow; *si viniera aqui*, were he to come here; *aunque lo conceda*, though he may grant it.

Of the Participle.

A participle is a word derived from a verb, and, in its properties, it resembles both verbs and adjectives.

A participle (so called from its participating of the nature of the verb from which it is derived) resembles its primitive, because it denotes being, action, or suffering; as, *he* sido *pobre*, I have *been* poor; *tú has* escri-

* All these tenses are fully explained in the Syntax, to which the student is referred.

to *los nombres*, thou hast *written* the names; *se han* impreso *varias obras*, several works have *been* printed. And it has also the properties of an adjective, because it qualifies the noun to which it is applied with the variations of gender, number, and case; as, *los nombres* escritos, the *written* names; *en las obras* impresas, in the *printed* works.

Spanish verbs have two participles, called the present and the past participles. The latter, from its being used to form passive verbs, has obtained the name of the passive participle.

All verbs have not a present participle, and in many verbs it retains only its adjective property. The present participle ends in *ante* for the first, and in *iente*, for the second or third conjugation.

The only present participles which are used in the Spanish language are: *obediente*, obedient; *habiente*, possessing; *teniente*, holding; *participante*, participating, *amante*, lover; *semejante*, alike; *tocante*, touching; *concerniente*, concerning; and perhaps a few others.

Of the Gerund.

The Spanish gerund is, in all respects, like the English present participle. It is therefore a certain form of the verb, which, as it has been already observed, possesses the properties of verbs and adjectives. The gerund, like the English present participle, not having any determined time assigned to it, may refer to the past, present, or future; as, *le ví* perorando, I saw him *speaking;* practicando *la virtud, sera feliz, practising* virtue, he will be happy.

Gerund.

Habiéndo	Having.

Compound of the Geru

Habiéndo habído,	Having ha

Participle.

Habído,	Had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—Singu

1. *Yo he,*	I have.
2. *Tú has* or *Vmd.* ha,*	Thou hast
3. *El ha,*	He has.

Plural.

1. *Nosótros hémos,*	We have.

Perfect Indefinite or *Preterite.*

1. *Yo húbe,*	I had.
2. *Tú hubíste,*	Thou hadst.
3. *El húbo,*	He had.
1. *Nosótros hubímos,*	We had.
2. *Vosótros hubísteis,*	Ye had.
3. *Ellos hubiéron,*	They had.

Perfect Definite.

1. *Yo he habído,*	I have had.
2. *Tú has habído,*	Thou hast had.
3. *El ha habído,*	He has had.
1. *Nosótros hémos habído,*	We have had.
2. *Vosótros habéis habído,*	Ye have had.
3. *Ellos han habído,*	They have had.

Pluperfect.

1. *Yo húbe,* or *había, habído,*	I had had.
2. *Tú hubíste,* or *habías, habído,*	Thou hadst had.
3. *El húbo,* or *había, habído,*	He had had.
1. *Nosótros hubímos,* or *habíamos, habído,*	We had had.
2. *Vosótros hubísteis,* or *habíais habído,*	Ye had had.
3. *Ellos hubiéron,* or *habían, habído,*	They had had.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Yo habré,*	I shall *or* will have.
2. *Tú habrás,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt have.
3. *El habrá,*	He shall *or* will have.
1. *Nosótros habrémos,*	We shall *or* will have.
2. *Vosótros habréis,*	Ye shall *or* will have.
3. *Ellos habrán,*	They shall *or* will have.

Future Perfect.

1. *Yo habré habído,*	I shall *or* will have had.
2. *Tú habrás habído,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt have had.
3. *El habrá habído,*	He shall have had.

1. *Nosótros habrémos habído,*	We shall
2. *Vosótros habréis habido,*	Ye shall l
3. *Ellos habrán habído,*	They shal

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Presènt.

1. *Yo háya,*	I may hav
2. *Tú háyas,*	Thou may
3. *El háya,*	He may l
1. *Nosótros hayámos,*	We may
2. *Vosótros hayáis.*	Ye may h
3. *Ellos háyan,*	They may

Imperfect.

1. *Yo hubiéra, habría, hubiése,*	I should
2. *Tú hubiéras, habrias, hubiéses,*	Thou sho have.

1. *Nosótros hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos habído,*	We should, would, might have had.
2. *Vosótros hubiérais, hubríais, hubiéseis habído,*	Ye should, would, might have had.
3. *Ellos hubiéran, habrían, hubiésen habído,*	They should, would, might have had.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Si yo hubiére,*	If I should have.
2. *Si tú hubiéres,*	If thou shouldst have.
3. *Si él hubiére,*	If he should have.
1. *Si nosótros hubiéremos,*	If we should have.
2. *Si vosótros hubiéreis,*	If ye should have.
3. *Si ellos hubiéren,*	If they should have.

Future Perfect.

1. *Si yo hubiére habído,*	If I should have had.
2. *Si tú hubiéres habído,*	If thou shouldst have had.
3. *Si él hubiére habído,*	If he should have had.
1. *Si nosótros hubiéremos habído,*	If we should have had.
2. *Si vosótros hubiéreis habído,*	If ye should have had.
3. *Si ellos hubieren habído;*	If they should have had.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, *tenér*, to have or to hold.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Tenér,	To have.*

Perfect.

Habér tenído,	To have had.

Gerund.

Teniéndo,	Having.

* *To have*, used as an active verb, is translated *tenér;* and as an auxiliary, *habér:* as, *to have* books, tener *libros; to have* written, haber *escrito; we had* spoken, habíamos *hablado.*

Compound of the Geru

Habiéndo tenído,	Having ha

Participle.

Tenído,	Had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. *Yo téngo,*	I have.
2. *Tú tiénes,* or *Vmd. tiéne,*	Thou hast,
3. *El tiéne,*	He has.
1. *Nosótros tenémos,*	We have.
2. *Vosótros tenéis,* or *Vmds. tiénen,*	Ye have.
3. *Ellos tiénen,*	They have.

Imperfect

Pluperfect.

1. *Yo hube*, or *había tenído*,	I had had.
2. *Tú hubíste*, or *habías tenído*,	Thou hadst had.
3. *El hubo*, or *había tenido*,	He had had.
1. *Nosótros hubímos*, or *habíamos tenído*,	We had had.
2. *Vosótros hubísteis*, or *habíais tenído*,	Ye had had.
3. *Ellos hubiéron*, or *habían tenído*,	They had had.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Yo tendré*,	I shall *or* will have.
2. *Tú tendrás*,	Thou shalt *or* wilt have.
3. *El tendrá*,	He shall *or* will have.
1. *Nosótros tendrémos*,	We shall *or* will have.
2. *Vosótros tendréis*,	Ye shall *or* will have.
3. *Ellos tendrán*,	They shall *or* will have.

Future Perfect.

1. *Yo habré tenído*,	I shall *or* will have had.
2. *Tú habrás tenído*,	Thou shalt *or* wilt have had.
3. *El habrá tenído*,	He shall have had.
1. *Nosótros habrémos tenído*,	We shall have had.
2. *Vosótros habréis tenido*,	Ye shall have had.
3. *Ellos habrán tenído*,	They shall have had.

Imperative.

1. *Ten tú*,	Have thou.
2. *Ténga él*,	Let him have.
1. *Tenéd vosótros*,	Have ye.
2. *Téngan éllos*,	Let them have.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

1. *Yo ténga*,	I may have.
2. *Tú téngas*,	Thou mayest have.
3. *El Ténga*,	He may have.

1. *Nosótros tengámos,*	We may have.
2. *Vosótros tengáis,*	Ye may have.
3. *Ellos Téngan,*	They may have.

Imperfect.

1. *Yo tuviéra, tendría, tuviése,*	I should, would, might have.
2. *Tú tuviéras, tendrías, tuviéses,*	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst have.
3. *El tuviéra, tendría, tuviése,*	He should, would, might have.
1. *Nosótros tuviéramos, tendríamos, tuviésemos,*	We should, would, might have.
2. *Vosótros tuviérais, tendríais tuviéseis,*	Ye should, would, might have.
3. *Ellos tuviéran, tendrían, tuviésen,*	They should, would, might have.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. *Yo soi,*	I am.
2. *Tú éres, ó Vmd. es,*	Thou art, *or* you are.
3. *El es,*	He is.
1. *Nosótros sómos,*	We are.
2 *Vosótros sóis, Vmds. son,*	Ye are.
3. *Ellos són,*	They are.

Imperfect.

1. *Yo éra,*	I was.
2. *Tú éras,*	Thou wast.
3. *El éra,*	He was.
1. *Nosótros éramos,*	We were.
2. *Vosótros érais,*	Ye were.
3. *Ellos éran,*	They were.

Perfect Indefinite, or *Preterite.*

1. *Yo fuí,*	I was.
2. *Tú fuíste,*	Thou wast.
3. *El fué,*	He was.
1. *Nosótros fuímos,*	We were.
2. *Vosótros fuísteis,*	Ye were.
3. *Ellos fuéron,*	They were.

Perfect Definite.

1. *Yo he sído,*	I have been.
2. *Tú has sído,*	Thou hast been.
3. *El ha sído,*	He has been.
1. *Nosótros hemos sído,*	We have been.
2. *Vosótros habéis sído,*	Ye have been.
3. *Ellos han sído,*	They have been.

Pluperfect.

1. *Yo húbe,* or *había sído,*	I had been.
2. *Tú hubíste,* or *habías sído,*	Thou hadst been.
3. *El húbo,* or *había sído,*	He had been.

1. *Nosôtros hubîmos*, or *habîamos sîdo*,	We had been.
2. *Vosôtros hubîsteis*, or *habîais sîdo*,	Ye had been.
3. *Ellos hubiéron*, or *habîan sîdo*,	They had been.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Yo seré*,	I shall *or* will be.
2. *Tú serás*,	Thou shalt *or* wilt be.
3. *El será*,	He shall *or* will be.
1. *Nosôtros serémos*,	We shall *or* will be.
2. *Vosôtros seréis*,	Ye shall *or* will be.
3. *Ellos serán*,	They shall *or* will be.

Future Perfect.

1. *Yo habré sîdo*,	I shall *or* will have been.
2. *Tú habrás sîdo*,	Thou shalt *or* wilt have been.
3. *El habrá sîdo*,	He shall *or* will have been.
1. *Nosôtros habrémos sîdo*,	We shall *or* will have been.
2. *Vosôtros habréis sîdo*,	Ye shall *or* will have been.
3. *Ellos habrán sîdo*,	They shall *or* will have been.

Imperative.

1. *Se tú*,	Be thou.
2. *Séa él*,	Let him be.
1. *Sed vosôtros*,	Be ye.
2. *Séan éllos*,	Let them be.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

1. *Yo séa*,	I may be.
2. *Tú séas*,	Thou mayst be.
3. *El séa*,	He may be.
1. *Nosôtros seámos*,	We may be.
2. *Vosôtros seáis*,	Ye may be.
3. *Ellos séan*,	They may be.

Imperfect.

1. *Yo fuéra, sería, fuése,*	I should, would, might be.
2. *Tú fuéras, serías, fuéses.*	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst be.
3. *El fuéra, sería, fuése,*	He should, would, might be.
1. *Nosótros fuéramos, seríamos, fuésemos,*	We should, would, might be.
2. *Vosótros fuérais, seríais, fuéseis,*	Ye should, would, might be.
3. *Ellos fuéran, serían, fuésen.*	They should, would, might be.

Perfect.

1. *Yo háya sído,*	I may have been.
2. *Tú háyas sído,*	Thou mayst have been.
3. *El háya sído,*	He may have been.
1. *Nosótros hayámos sído,*	We may have been.

Perfect Indefinite, or *Preterite.*

1. *Yo estúve,*	I was.
2. *Tú estuvíste,*	Thou wast.
3. *El estúvo,*	He was.
1. *Nosótros estuvímos,*	We were.
2. *Vosótros estuvísteis,*	Ye were.
3. *Ellos éstuviéron,*	They were.

Perfect Definite.

1. *Yo he estádo,*	I have been.
2. *Tú has estádo,*	Thou hast been.
3. *El ha estádo,*	He has been.
1. *Nosótros hémos estádo,*	We have been.
2. *Vosótros habéis estádo,*	Ye have been.
3. *Ellos han estádo,*	They have been.

Pluperfect.

1. *Yo húbe*, or *había estádo,*	I had been.
2. *Tú hubíste*, or *habías estádo,*	Thou hadst been.
3. *El húbo*, or *había estádo,*	He had been.
1. *Nosótros hubímos*, or *habíamos estádo,*	We had been.
2. *Vosótros hubísteis*, or *hubíais estádo,*	Ye had been.
3. *Ellos hubiéron*, or *habían estádo,*	They had been.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Yo estaré,*	I shall *or* will be.
2. *Tú estarás,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt be.
3. *El estará,*	He shall *or* will be.
1. *Nosótros estarémos,*	We shall *or* will be.
2. *Vosótros estaréis,*	Ye shall *or* will be.
3. *Ellos estarán,*	They shall *or* will be.

Future Perfect.

1. *Yo habré estádo,*	I shall *or* will have been.
2. *Tú habrás estádo,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt have been.
3. *El habré estádo,*	He shall *or* will have been.

1. *Nosótros habrémos estádo,*	We shall *or* will have been.
2. *Vosótros habréis estádo,*	Ye shall *or* will have been.
3. *Ellos habrán estádo,*	They shall *or* will have been.

Imperative.

1. *Está tú,*	Be thou.
2. *Esté él,*	Let him be.
1. *Estád vosótros,*	Be ye.
2. *Estén éllos,*	Let them be.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

1. *Yo esté,*	I may be.
2. *Tú estés,*	Thou mayst be.
3. *El esté,*	He may be.
1. *Nosótros estémos,*	We may be.
2. *Vosótros estéis,*	Ye may be.
3. *Ellos estén,*	They may be.

Imperfect.

1. *Yo estuviéra, estaría, estuviése,*	I should, would, might be.
2. *Tú estuviéras, estarías, estuviéses,*	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst be.
3. *El estuviéra, estaría, estuviése,*	He should, would, might be.
1. *Nosótros, estuviéramos, estaríamos, estuviésemos,*	We should, would, might be.
2. *Vosótros, estuviérais, estaríais, estuviéseis,*	Ye should, would, might be.
3. *Ellos estuviéran, estarían, estuviésen,*	They should, would, might be.

Perfect.

1. *Yo háya estádo,*	I may have been.
2. *Tú háyas estádo,*	Thou mayst have been.
3. *El háya estádo,*	He may have been.
1. *Nosotros hayámos estádo,*	We may have been.
2. *Vosótros hayáis estádo,*	Ye may have been.
3. *Ellos háyan estádo,*	They may have been.

Pluperfect.

1. *Yo hubiéra, habría, hubiése estádo,*	I should, would, might have been.
2. *Tú hubiéras, habrías, hubiéses estádo,*	Thou shouldst, wouldst, might have been.
3. *El hubiéra, habría, habiése estádo,*	He should, would, might have been.
1. *Nosótros hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos estádo,*	We should, would, might have been.
2. *Vosótros hubiérais, habríais, hubiéseis estádo,*	Ye should, would, might have been.
3. *Ellos hubiéran, habrían, hubiésen estádo,*	They should, would, might have been.

Future Imperfect.

1. *Si yo estuviére,*	If I should be.
2. *Si tú estuviéres,*	If thou shouldst be.
3. *Si él estuviére,*	If he should be.
1. *Si nosótros estuviéremos,*	If we should be.
2. *Si vosótros estuviéreis,*	If ye should be.
3. *Si éllos estuviéren,*	If they should be.

Future Perfect.

1. *Si yo hubiére estádo,*	If I should have been.
2. *Si tú hubiéres estádo,*	If thou shouldst have been.
3. *Si él hubiére estádo,*	If he should have been.
1. *Si nosótros hubiéremos estádo,*	If we should have been.
2. *Si vosótros hubiéreis estádo,*	If ye should have been.
3. *Si éllos hubiéren estádo,*	If they should have been.

OF REGULAR VERBS.

The Spanish verbs, as it has been said before, are divided into three conjugations; the first ends in *ar*, the second in *er*, and the third in ir.

The letters of which the verb is composed, not including the termination, are called radical letters because they never change; for instance, in am-*ar*, to love; the radical letters are *am;* and the termination is *ar*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

a,	as	hābl-*a*,	Speak thou.
e,		hābl-*e*,	Let him speak.
ād,		habl-*ād*,	Speak ye.
en,		hābl-*en*,	Let them speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

e,	as	hābl-*e*,	I may speak.
es,		hābl-*es*,	Thou mayest speak.
e,		hābl-*e*,	He may speak.
ēmos,		habl-*ēmos*,	We may speak.
ēis,		habl-*ēis*,	Ye may speak.
en,		hābl-*en*,	They may speak.

Imperfect.

āra, *arīa*, *āse*,	as	habl-*āra*, habl-*arīa*, habl-*āse*,	I should, would, might speak.
āras, *arīas*, *āses*,		habl-*āras*, habl-*arīas*, habl-*āses*,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst speak.
āra, *arīa*, *āse*,		habl-*āra*, habl-*arīa*, habl-*āse*,	He should, would, might speak.
āramos, *arīamos*, *āsemos*,		habl-*āramos*, habl-*arīamos*, habl-*āsemos*,	We should, would, might speak.
ārais, *arīais*, *āseis*,		habl-*ārais*, habl-*arīais*, habl-*āseis*,	Ye should, would, might speak.
āran, *arīan*, *āsen*,		habl-*āran*, habl-*arīan*, habl-*āsen*,	They should, would, might speak.

Future.

ăre,	as	habl-*ăre,*	I should speak.
ăres,		habl-*ăres,*	Thou shouldst speak.
ăre,		habl-*ăre,*	He should speak.
ăremos,		habl-*ăremos,*	We should speak.
ăreis,		habl-*éreis,*	Ye should speak.
ăren,		habl-*ăren,*	They should speak.

Second conjugation in er; *as,* beber, *to drink.*

The tenses of the verbs of the second conjugation, are formed from the infinitive, by changing the termination *er,* into the following letters, to form the

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

o,	as	bēb-*o,*	I drink.
es,		bēb-*es,*	Thou drinkest.
e,		bēb-*e,*	He drinks.
émos,		beb-*émos,*	We drink.
éis,		beb-*éis,*	Ye drink.
en,		bēb-*en,*	They drink.

Imperfect.

ía,	as	beb-*ía,*	I did drink.
ías,		beb-*ías,*	Thóu didst drink.
ía,		beb-*ía,*	He did drink.
íamos,		beb-*íamos,*	We did drink.
íais,		beb-*íais,*	Ye did drink.
ían,		beb-*ían,*	They did drink.

Preterite.

í,	as	beb-*í,*	I drank.
íste,		beb-*íste,*	Thou drankest.
ió,		beb-*ió,*	He drank.
ímos,		beb-*ímos,*	We drank.
ísteis,		beb-*ísteis,*	Ye drank.
iéron,		beb-*iéron,*	They drank.

Future.

erē,	as	beb-*erē,*	I shall *or* will drink.
erās,		beb-*erās,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt drink.
erā,		beb-*erā*	He shall *or* will drink.
erēmos,		beb-*erēmos*	We shall *or* will drink.
erēis,		beb-*erēis,*	Ye shall *or* will drink.
erān,		beb-*erān,*	They shall *or* will drink.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

e,	as	bēb-*e,*	*D*rink thou.
a,		bēb-*a,*	Let him drink.
ēd,		beb-*ēd,*	*D*rink ye.
an,		bēb-*an,*	Let them drink.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

a,	as	bēb-*a,*	I may drink.
as,		bēb-*as,*	Thou mayest drink.
a,		bēb-*a,*	He may drink.
āmos,		beb-*āmos,*	We may drink.
āis,		beb-*āis,*	Ye may drink.
an,		bēb-*an,*	They may drink.

Imperfect.

iēra,	as	beb-*iēra*	I might, could, would *or* should drink.
erīa,		beb-*erīa,*	
iēse,		beb-*iēse,*	
iēras,		beb-*iēras,*	Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst *or* shouldst drink.
erīas,		beb-*erīas,*	
iēses,		beb-*iēses,*	
iēra,		beb-*iēra,*	He might, could, would *or* should drink.
erīa,		beb-*erīa,*	
iēse,		beb-*iēse,*	

Imperfect.

ía,	as	sub-*ía,*	I walked up.
ías,		sub-*ías,*	Thou walkedst up.
ía,		sub-*ía,*	He walked up.
íamos,		sub-*íamos,*	We walked up.
íais,		sub-*íais,*	Ye walked up.
ían,		sub-*ían,*	They walked up.

Preterite.

í,	as	sub-*í,*	I did walk up.
íste,		sub-*íste,*	Thou didst walk up.
ió,		sub-*ió,*	He did walk up.
ímos,		sub-*ímos,*	We did walk up.
ísteis,		sub-*ísteis,*	Ye did walk up.
iéron,		sub-*iéron,*	They did walk up.

Future Indefinite.

iré	as	sub-*iré*	I shall *or* will walk up.
irás,		sub-*irás,*	Thou shalt *or* wilt walk up.
irá,		sub-*irá,*	He shall *or* will walk up.
irémos,		sub-*irémos,*	We shall *or* will walk up.
iréis,		sub-*iréis,*	Ye shall *or* will walk up.
irán,		sub-*irán,*	They shall *or* will walk up.

IMPERATIVE.

e,	as	sub-*e,*	Walk thou up.
a,		sub-*a,*	Let him walk up.
id,		sub-*id,*	Walk ye up.
an,		sub-*an,*	Let us walk up.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

a,	as	sub-*a,*	I may walk up.
as,		sub-*as,*	Thou mayest walk up.
a,		sub-*a,*	He may walk up.
ámos,		sub-*ámos,*	We may walk up.
ais,		sub-*ais,*	Ye may walk up.
an,		sub-*an,*	They may walk up.

Imperfect.

iéra, *iría*, *iése*,	as	sub-*iéra*, sub-*iría*, sub-*iése*,	I should, would, might walk up.
iéras, *irías*, *iéses*,		sub-*iéras*, sub-*irías*, sub-*iéses*,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst walk up.
iéra, *iría*, *iése*,		sub-*iéra*, sub-*iría*, sub-*iése*,	He should, would, might walk up.
iéramos, *iríamos*, *iésemos*,		sub-*iéramos*, sub-*iríamos*, sub-*iésemos*,	We should, would, might walk up.
iérais, *iríais*, *iéseis*,		sub-*iérais*, sub-*iríais*, sub-*iéseis*,	Ye should, would, might walk up.
iéran, *irían*, *iésen*,		sub-*iéran*, sub-*irían*, sub-*iésen*,	They should, would, might walk up.

Future.

iére,	as	sub-*iére*,	I should walk up.
iéres,		sub-*iéres*.	Thou shouldst walk up.
iére,		sub-*iére*,	He should walk up.
iéremos,		sub-*iéremos*,	We should walk up.
iéreis,		sub-*iéreis*,	Ye should walk up.
iéren,		sub-*iéren*,	They should walk up.

FORMATION OF THE PARTICIPLE AND GERUND.

The *passive participle* is formed from the infinitive, by changing its *termination* into *ado*, for the first conjugation, as,

From am-*ar*, to love, is formed *amado*, loved.

From habl-*ar*, to speak, is formed *hablado*, spoken, &c.

The *gerund* of the first conjugation is formed from the infinitive also, by changing its termination into *ando;* as,

From am-*ar*, to love, is formed *amando*, loving.

From habl-*ar*, to speak, is formed *hablando*, speaking.

The *passive participle* of the *second* and *third* conjugations, is formed from their infinitive, by changing its termination into *ido;* as,

From beb-*er*, to drink, *bebido*, drunk.
From sub-ir, to walk up, *subido*, walked up.

The *gerund* of the *second* and *third* conjugations, is also formed from their infinitive, by changing its termination into *iendo;* as,

From beb-*er*, to drink, *bebiendo*, drinking.
From sub-ir, to walk up, *subiendo*, walking up.

Observation.

When the termination, in both numbers, of the third person of the perfect indefinite, in the second or third conjugation, is preceded by *a*, *e*, or *ü*, the i is changed into *y;* as, *caer*, *cayó*, *cayéron; leer*, *leyó*, *leyéron; argüir*, *arguyo*, *arguyéron*. The same change takes place in all the persons of the first and third imperfects of the subjunctive, in the future of the same mood, and in the gerund; as, *cayére*, *cayéres*, *&c. cayese*, *cayeses*, *&c. cayendo*. When the last of the radical letters is a *u*, and the i of the termination belongs to the same syllable, the i is retained; as, *seguir*, *siguió*, *siguiésen*, *&c.*

Some verbs require a change in their *radical* letters, in order that the final consonant may retain in all the tenses, the harsh or soft pronunciation which it has before the infinitive: this alteration cannot occur, unless the radicals end in *c*, in g, in *gu*, or in *qu*, and the changes, which then take place, are as follows:—

				Examples.
c *into*	qu *before*	e *in*	I.	*buscar*, *busquemos.*
c	z	a *or* o,	II. III.	*vencer*, *venza*, *zurcir*, *zurzo.*
g	gu	e	I.	*llegar*, *lleguen.*
g	j	a *or* o,	II. III.	*coger*, *cojan*, *fingir*, *finjo.*
gu	g	a *or* o,	III.	*seguir*, sigo, *sigan.*
qu	c	a *or* o,	III.	*delinquir*, *delinco*, *delincamos.*

The first column shows in what manner the radicals must end to require the alteration; the second, the letters substituted; the third, what letters must begin the termination to admit the change; and the fourth, the conjugations wherein these several deviations are found.

Perfect.

Amé,	I loved.
Amáste,	Thou lovedst.
Amó,	He loved.
Amámos,	We loved.
Amásteis,	Ye *or* you loved.
Amáron,	They loved.

Perfect Definite.

He amádo,	I have loved.
Has amádo,	Thou hast loved.
Ha amádo,	He has loved.
Hémos amádo,	We have loved.
Habéis amádo,	Ye *or* you have loved.
Han amádo,	They have loved.

Pluperfect.

Húbe or *había amádo,*	I had loved.
Hubíste or *habías amádo,*	Thou hadst loved.
Húbo or *había amádo,*	He had loved.
Hubímos or *habíamos amádo,*	We had loved.
Hubísteis or *habíais amádo,*	Ye *or* you had loved.
Hubiéron or *habían amádo,*	They had loved.

Future Imperfect.

Amaré,	I shall *or* will love.
Amarás,	Thou shalt *or* wilt love.
Amará,	He shall *or* will love.
Amarémos,	We shall *or* will love.
Amaréis,	Ye *or* you shall *or* will love.
Amarán,	They shall *or* will love.

Future Perfect.

Habré amádo,	I shall *or* will have loved.
Habrás amádo,	Thou shalt *or* wilt have loved.
Habré amádo,	He shall *or* will have loved.
Habrémos amádo,	We shall *or* will have loved.
Habréis amádo,	Ye *or* you shall *or* will have loved.
Habrán amádo,	They shall *or* will have loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ama tú,	Love thou *or* do thou love.
Ame él,	Let him love.
Amad vosótros,	Love ye or you, *or* do you love
Amen éllos,	Let them love.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Ame,	I may love.
Ames,	Thou mayst love.
Ame,	He may love.
Amémos,	We may love.
Améis,	Ye *or* you may love.
Amen,	They may love.

Imperfect.

Amára, amaría, amáse,	I should, would, might love.
Amáras, amarías, amáses,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst love.
Amára, amaría, amáse,	He should, would, might love.
Amáramos, amaríamos, amásemos,	We should, would, might love.
Amárais, amaríais, amáseis,	Ye *or* you should, would, might love.
Amáran, amarían, amásen,	They should, would, might love.

Perfect.

Háya amádo,	I may have loved.
Hayas amádo,	Thou mayst have loved.
Háya amádo,	He may have loved.
Hayamos amádo,	We may have loved.
Hayais amádo,	Ye *or* you may have loved.
Hayan amádo,	They may have loved.

Pluperfect.

Hubiéra, habría, hubiése, amádo,	I should, would, might have loved.
Hubiéras, habrías, hubiéses, amádo,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst have loved.
Hubiéra, habría, hubiése, amado,	He should, would, might have loved.

Hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos, amádo,	We should, would, might have loved.
Hubiérais, habríais, hubiéseis, amádo,	Ye *or* you should, would, might have loved.
Hubiéran, * *habrían, hubiésen, amádo,*	They should, would, might have loved.

Future Imperfect.

Si amáre,	If I should love.
Si amáres,	If thou shouldst love.
Si amáre,	If he should love.
Si amáremos,	If we should love.
Si amáreis,	If ye *or* you should love.
Si amáren,	If they should love.

Future Perfect.

Si hubiére amádo,	If I should have loved.
Si hubiéres amádo,	If thou shouldst have loved.
Si hubiére amádo,	If he should have loved.
Si hubiéremos amádo,	If we should have loved.
Si hubiéreis amádo,	If ye *or* you should have loved.
Si hubiéren amádo,	If they should have loved.

Second Conjugation—Yendér, *to sell.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Vendér,	To sell.

Perfect.

Habér vendído,	To have sold.

Gerund.

Vendiéndo,	Selling.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Vénda,	I may sell.
Véndas,	Thou mayst sell.
Vénda,	He may sell.
Véndámos,	We may sell.
Vendáis,	Ye *or* you may sell.
Véndan,	They may sell.

Imperfect.

Vendiéra, vendería, vendiése,	I should, would, might sell.
Vendiéras, venderías, vendiéses,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst sell.
Vendiéra, vendería, vendiése,	He should, would, might sell.
Vendiéramos, venderíamos, vendiésemos,	We should, would, might sell.
Vendiérais, venderíais, vendiéseis,	Ye *or* you should, would, might sell.
Vendiéran, venderían, vendiésen,	They should, would, might sell.

Future Imperfect.

Si vendiére,	If I should sell.
Si vendiéres,	If thou shouldst sell.
Si vendiére,	If he should sell.
Si vendiéremos,	If we should sell.
Si vendiéreis,	If ye *or* you should sell.
Si vendiéren,	If they should sell.

Third Conjugation—Unir, *to unite.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Unír,	To unite.

Perfect.

Habér unído,	To have united.

Gerund.

Uniéndo,	Uniting.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Uno,	I unite *or* do unite.
Unes,	Thou unitest *or* dost unite.
Une,	He unites *or* does unite.
Unímos,	We unite *or* do unite.
Unís,	Ye *or* you unite *or* do unite.
Unen,	They unite *or* do unite.

Imperfect.

Unía,	I did unite.
Unías,	Thou didst unite.
Unía,	He did unite.
Uníamos,	We did unite.
Uníais,	Ye *or* you did unite.
Unían,	They did unite.

Perfect Indefinite, or *Preterite.*

Uní,	I united.
Uníste,	Thou unitedst.
Unió,	He united.
Unímos,	We united.
Unísteis,	Ye *or* you united.
Uniéron,	They united.

Future Imperfect.

Unirá,	I shall *or* will unite.
Unirás,	Thou shalt *or* wilt unite.
Unirá,	He shall *or* will unite.
Unirémos,	We shall *or* will unite.
Uniréis,	Ye *or* you shall *or* will unite.
Unirán,	They shall *or* will unite.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Une tū,	Unite thou *or* do thou unite.
Una él,	Let him unite.
Unid vosōtros,	Unite ye *or* you *or* do ye unite.
Unan éllos,	Let them unite.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Una,	I may unite.
Unas,	Thou mayst unite.
Una,	He may unite.
Unāmos,	We may unite.
Unāis,	Ye *or* you may unite.
Unan,	They may unite.

Imperfect.

Uniéra, unirīa, uniése,	I should, would, might unite.
Uniéras, unirías, uniéses,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst unite.
Uniéra, unirīa, uniése,	He should, would, might unite.
Uniéramos, unirīamos, uniésemos,	We should, would, might unite.
Uniérais, unirīais, uniéseis,	Ye *or* you should, would, might unite.
Uniéran, unirían, uniésen,	They should, would, might unite.

Future Imperfect.

Si uniére,	If I should unite.
Si uniéres,	If thou shouldst unite.
Si uniére,	If he should unite.
Si uniéremos,	If we should unite.
Si uniéreis,	If ye *or* you should unite.
Si uniéren,	If they should unite.

Perfect Indefinite, or *Preterite.*

Fuī herīdo,	I was wounded.
Fuīste herīdo,	Thou wast wounded.
Fué herīdo,	He was wounded.
Fuīmos heridos,	We were wounded.
Fuīsteis heridos,	Ye *or* you were wounded.
Fuéron herīdos,	They were wounded.

Perfect Imperfect.

Seré herīdo,	I shall *or* will be wounded.
Serás herīdo,	Thou shalt *or* wilt be wounded.
Será herīdo,	He shall *or* will be wounded.
Serémos herīdos,	We shall *or* will be wounded.
Seréis herīdos,	Ye *or* you shall *or* will be wounded.
Serán herīdos,	They shall *or* will be wounded.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Se tū herīdo,	Be thou wounded.
Séa él herīdo,	Let him be wounded.
Sed vosōtros herīdos,	Be ye *or* you wounded.
Séan éllos herīdos,	Let them be wounded.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Séa herīdo,	I may be wounded.
Séas herīdo,	Thou mayst be wounded.
Séa herīdo,	He may be wounded.
Seāmos herīdos,	We may be wounded.
Seāis herīdos,	Ye *or* you may be wounded.
Séan herīdos,	They may be wounded.

Imperfect.

Fuéra, sería, fuése, herīdo,	I should, would, might be wounded.
Fuéras, serías, fuéses, herīdo,	Thou shouldst, wouldst, mightst be wounded.
Fuéra, sería, fuése, herīdo,	He should, would, might be wounded.

Fuéramos, seríamos, fuésemos, herídos,	We should, would, might be wounded.
Fuérais, seríais, fuéseis, herídos,	Ye *or* you should, would, might be wounded.
Fuéran, serían, fuésen, heridos,	They should, would, might be wounded.

Future Imperfect.

Si fuére herído,	If I should be wounded.
Si fuéres hérido,	If thou shouldst be wounded.
Si fuére herído,	If he should be wounded.
Si fuéremos heridos,	If we should be wounded.
Si fuéreis heridos,	If ye *or* you should be wounded.
Si fuéren heridos,	If they should be wounded.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE VERB.

Alabárse, *to praise one's self.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Alabárse,	To praise one's self.

Perfect.

Habérse alabádo,	To have praised one's self.

Gerund.

Alabándose,	Praising one's self.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiéndose alabádo,	Having praised one's self.

Participle.

Alabádo,	Praised one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Yo me alábo,	I praise myself.
Tú te alábas,	Thou praisest thyself.
El se alába,	He praises himself.

Nosōtros nos alabāmos,	We praise ourselves.
Vosōtros os alabāis,	Ye *or* you praise yourselves.
Ellos se alāban,	They praise themselves.

Imperfect.

Me alabāba,	I did praise myself.
Te alabābas,	Thou didst praise thyself.
Se alabāba,	He did praise himself.
Nos alabābamos,	We did praise ourselves.
Os alabābais,	Ye *or* you did praise yourselves.
Se alabāban,	They did praise themselves.

Perfect Indefinite, or *Preterite.*

Me alabé,	I praised myself.
Te alabāste,	Thou praisedst thyself.
Se alabō,	He praised himself.
Nos alabāmos,	We praised ourselves.
Os alabāsteis,	Ye *or* you praised yourselves.
Se alabāron,	They praised themselves.

Future Imperfect.

Me alabaré,	I shall praise myself.
Te alabarās,	Thou shalt praise thyself.
Se alabarā,	He shall praise himself.
Nos alabarémos,	We shall praise ourselves.
Os alabaréis,	Ye *or* you shall praise yourselves.
Se alabarán,	They shall praise themselves.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Alābate tū,	Praise thyself, *or* do thou praise thyself.
Alābese el,	Let him praise himself.
Alabāos vosōtros,	Praise ye *or* you *or* do ye praise yourselves.
Alābense éllos,	Let them praise themselves.

The following are some of the most useful regular verbs, which will serve as examples for the student to exercise himself.

1st CONJUGATION.

Llorar, to weep.
Estudiar, to study.
Soplar, to blow.
Silbar, to whistle.
Escuchar, to listen.
Mirar, to look
Pellizcar, to pinch.
Arroparse, to cover one's self.
Desnudarse, to undress.
Descansar, to repose.
Retrogradar, to retrograde.
Estornudar, to sneeze.
Ayunar, to fast.
Almorzar, to breakfast.
Espavilar, to snuff.
Ridicularizar, to ridicule.
Gritar, to shout.
Olvidarse, to forget.
Saludar, to salute.
Lisongear, to flatter.
Perdonar, to pardon.
Aliviar, to alleviate.
Bajar, to descend.
Entrar, to enter.
Enviar, to send.
Mejorar, to improve.
Navegar, to navigate.
Trabajar, to work.
Estrechar, to render narrower.
Dibujar, to draw.
Danzar, to dance.
Suplicar, to supplicate.
Enderezar, to straighten.
Agugerear, to make holes.
Ser accusado, to be accused.
Ser hallado, to be found.

2d CONJUGATION.

Recoger, to gather.
Barrer, to sweep.
Romper, to break.
Coger, to catch.
Deber, to owe.
Someterse, to submit one's self.
Aprender, to learn.
Leer, to read.
Responder, to answer.
Comer, to eat.
Emprender, to undertake.
Toser, to cough.
Atreverse, to dare.
Creer, to believe.
Ceder, to yield.
Antever, to foresee.
Correr, to run.
Sorber, to swallow.
Socorrer, to succour.
Prometer, to promise.
Egercer, to exercise.
Temer, to fear.

3d CONJUGATION.

Escribir, to write.
Vivir, to live.
Persistir, to persist.
Desistir, to desist.
Pulir, to polish.
Incurrir, to incur.
Infundir, to infuse.
Insistir, to insist.
Disuadir, to dissuade.
Partir, to depart.
Descubrir, to discover.
Curtirse, to be tanned.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the general rules of conjugation, given from page 101 to page 108.

As the Spanish language abounds in this kind of verbs, they claimed, we thought, a considerable portion of our attention. It is for this reason that we have spared no trouble or study in collecting all the irregular verbs which could possibly be found. We are happy to say, that our researches have not been unsuccessful. For, independently of the many verbs which we have gathered from an attentive perusal of the latest edition of the Dictionary of the Spanish academy; others, not to be found in it, have been added to our number. We are, therefore, enabled to present to the public, all, or very nearly all, the anomalous verbs which the Spanish language now contains.

On the arrangement of these verbs, we also bestowed much of our attention. And we hope, that the advantages resulting from that which we have adopted, will prove it to be judicious.

The Spanish language contains thirty-one different irregular verbs;* but, like these, many others are conjugated. We thought that the best plan we could adopt, would be, to arrange systematically these thirty-one, presenting to the view their full conjugation; and exhibiting, by italick characters, their irregular persons or tenses—then to place in alphabetic columns all the irregular verbs which we have collected, including the thirty-one; with references to the model after which they are to be conjugated. By this means, should a person find a verb and be doubtful whether it be regular or irregular, he possesses immediately, and without trouble, all that is necessary. For, should this verb not be found among the irregular, he must immediately take it for granted that it is regular, and accordingly conjugated after the regulations given from page 101 to page 108.

The irregular verbs, most undoubtedly, constitute one of the greatest difficulties of the Spanish language; and when the members of the Spanish Academy said: "*Nuestra*† *lengua abunda en*

* Without including the auxiliary, which are also irregular.

† Gramática de la lengua Castellana, preface, page xvi.

*verbos irregulares, que, aunque la hacen mas agradable y armoniosa por la variedad que permiten, tambien la hacen mas dificil, por lo que se apartan de los comunes en la conjugacion;** they were perfectly convinced of it.

If, therefore, as we anxiously anticipate, our labours and researches in collecting and arranging the irregular verbs of the Spanish language, in the manner we have done, tend to render this part of grammar easy and intelligible, we shall consider all our toils fully successful and amply repaid.

* Our language abounds in irregular verbs, which, by their variety, render it more agreeable and harmonious. But the great difference existing between them and the regular verbs, renders its acquisition much more difficult.

Infinitive.	*Pensar*,	to think.
Gerund,	*Pensando*,	thinking.
Participle.	*Pensado*,	thought.

This verb takes the letter *i* before the radical *e*, in all the singular, and the third person plural of the three presents.

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present*,	*pienso*	*piensas*	*piensa;*	pensamos	pensais	*piensan.*
	Imperfect,	pensaba	pensabas	pensaba;	pensábamos	pensábais	pensaban.
	Preterite,	pensé	pensáste	pensó;	pensámos	pensásteis	pensáron.
	Future,	pensaré	pensarás	pensará;	pensarémos	pensaréis	pensarán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	*piensa*	*pie;*	———	pensad	*pien.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present*,	*piense*	*pienses*	*nie;*	pensemos	penseis	*piensen.*
	Imperfect,	pensara / pensaria / pse	pensaras / pensarias / pses	pensara; / pensaria; / pensase;	pensáramos / pos / pensásemos	pensárais / pensaríais / pensáseis	pensarian. / pensasen.
	Future.	pensare.	pensares	pensare;	pensáremos	pensáreis	pensaren.

Infinitive.	*Andar,*	to walk.
Gerund.	*Andando,*	walking.
Participle.	*Andado,*	walked.

This verb is irregular in all the persons of the preterite, in all those of the first and third imperfects of the subjunctive, and in all those of the future of the same mood. In general, all the verbs that are irregular in the third person singular of the preterite, are also irregular in the tenses found irregular in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	ando	andas	anda;	andamos	andais	andan.
	Imperfect,	andaba	andabas	andaba;	andábamos	andábais	andaban.
	Preterite,	*anduve*	*anduviste*	*anduvo;*	*anduvimos*	*anduvísteis*	*anduviéron.*
	Future,	andaré	andarás	andará;	andarémos	andaréis	andarán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	anda	ande;	———	andad	anden.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	ande	andes	ande;	andemos	andeis	anden.
	Imperfect,	*anduviera*	*anduvieras*	*anduviera;*	*anduviéramos*	*anduviérais*	*anduvieran.*
		andaria	andarias	andaria;	andaríamos	andaríais	andarian.
		anduviese	*anduvieses*	*anduviese;*	*anduviésemos*	*anduviéseis*	*anduviesen.*
	Future,	*anduviere*	*anduvieres*	*anduviere;*	*anduviéremos*	*anduviéreis*	*anduvieren.*

Infinitive.	*Dar,*	to give.
Gerund.	*Dando,*	giving.
Participle.	*Dado,*	given.

This verb, independently of its being irregular in its first person of the indicative present, is also irregular in all the tenses exhibited in the preceding example.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*doi*	das	da;	damos	dais	dan.
	Imperfect,	daba	dabas	daba;	dábamos	dábais	daban.
	Preterite,	*dí*	*diste*	*dio;*	*dimos*	*dísteis*	*dieron.*
	Future,	daré	darás	dará;	darémos	daréis	darán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	da	de;	——	dad	den.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	de	des	de;	demos	deis	den.
	Imperfect,	*diera* / dadia	*dieras* / darias	*diera;* / daria;	*diéramos* / daríamos	*diérais* / daríais	*dieran.* / darian.
		diese	*dieses*	*diese;*	*diésemos*	*diéseis*	*diesen.*
	Future,	*diere*	*dieres*	*diere;*	*diéremos*	*diéreis*	*dieren.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	*Apetecer,*	to long for.
Gerund.	*Apeteciendo,*	longing for.
Participle.	*Apetecido,*	longed for.

All the verbs ending in *acer*, *ecer*, or *ocer*;* as *desplacer*, to displease; *conocer*, to know; *crecer*, to grow, require a *z* before the radical letter *c*, whenever the termination begins with either an *a* or an *o*. This only takes place, in the first person indicative present, in the last of both numbers of the imperative, and in all those of the subjunctive present.

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*apetezco*	apetes	apete;	apetemos	apetecís	apetecen.
	Imperfect,	apetecia	apetecías	apetecía;	apetecíamos	apetecíais	apetecían.
	Preterite,	apetecí	apetecíste	apeteció;	apetecimos	apetecísteis	apetecieron.
	Future,	apeteceré	apetecerás	apetecerá;	apeteceremos	apeteceréis	apetecerán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	apete	*apetezca;*	———	apeteced	*apetezcan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*apetezca*	*apetezcas*	*apetezca;*	*apetezcamos*	*apetezcais*	*apetezcan.*
	Imperfect,	apeteciera / apeteciera	apeteciera / apetecieras	apeteciera;	apeteciéramos	apeteciérais	apeteciéran.
		apetecia / apetecia	apetecerias	apeteceria;	apeteceríamos	apeteceríais	apetecerían.
	Future,	apeteciere	apetecieses	apeteciese;	apeteciésemos	apeteciéseis	apetecieseen.
		apeteciere	apetecieres	apeteciere;	apeteciéremos	apeteciéreis	apetecieren.

* Except *cocer*, to cook; *hacer*, to do or make: and their compounds.

Infinitive.	*Hacer,*	to make.
Gerund.	*Haciendo,*	making.
Participe.	*Hecho,*	made.

This verb and its compounds* are irregular in the tenses exhibited in the annexed conjugation.

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*hago*	haces	hace;	hacemos	haceis	hacen.
	Imperfect,	*hacia*	hacias	hacia;	*hacíamos*	*hacíais*	*hacian.*
	Preterite,	*hice*	*hiciste*	*hizo;*	*hicimos*	*hicisteis*	*hicieron.*
	Future,	*haré*	*harás*	*hará;*	*haremos*	*haréis*	*harán.*
IMPERATIVE.		—	*haz*	*haga;*	—	haced	*hagan*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*haga*	*hagas*	*haga;*	*hagamos*	*hagais*	*hagan.*
	Imperfect,	*hiciera* / *hacia* / *hiciese*	*hicieras* / *harias* / *hicieses*	*hiciera;* / *haria;* / *hiciese;*	*hiciéramos* / *haríamos* / *hiciésemos*	*hiciérais* / *haríais* / *hiciéseis*	*hicieran.* / *harian.* / *hiciesen.*
	Future,	*hiciere*	*hicieres*	*hiciere;*	*hiciéremos*	*hiciéreis*	*hicieren.*

*The compounds of hacer, are: *rehacer*, to do over again; *deshacer*, to undo; *contrahacer*, to counterfeit; and *satisfacer*, to satisfy. In the second person imperative of this last verb, we may say either *satisfaz* or *satisface*.

Infinitive.	*Morder,*	to bite.
Gerund.	*Mordiendo,*	biting.
Participle.	*Mordido,*	bitten.

This verb changes the radical *o* into *ue* in the three persons singular and third plural of the three presents.

		Singular.			*Plural.*		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*muerdo*	*muerdes*	*muerde;*	*muerdemos*	*muerdeis*	*muerden.*
	Imperfect,	mordia	mordias	mordia;	mordíamos	mordíais	mordian.
	Preterite,	mordí	mordíste	mordió;	mordímos	mordísteis	mordiéron.
	Future,	morderé	morderás	morderá;	morderémos	morderéis	morderán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	*muerde*	*muerda;*	———	*muerdid*	*muerdan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*muerda*	*muerdas*	*muerdas;*	mordamos	mordais	*muerdan.*
	Imperfect,	mordiera / mordiera	mordieras / morderias	mordiera; / morderia;	mordiéramos / mordiéramos	mordiérais / mordiérais	mordieran. / morderian.
	Future,	mordiese / mordiere	mordieses / mordieres	mordiese; / mordiere;	mordiésemos / mordiéremos	mordiéseis / mordiéreis	mordiesen. / mordieren.

Infinitive.	*Caer,*	to fall.
Gerund.	*Cayendo,*	falling.
Participle.	*Caido,*	fallen.

This verb and its compounds* require *ig* after their radicals, in the first person singular indicative, in the third person of both numbers of the imperative, and in all those of the subjunctive present.

		Singular.			*Plural.*		
		1	2	3.	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*caigo*	aes	cae;	aemos	caeis	caen.
	Imperfect,	caia	caias	caia;	caíamos	caíais	caian.
	Preterite,	caí	caíste	cayó;	caímos	caísteis	cayéron.
	Future,	caeré	caerás	caerá;	caerémos	caeréis	aeránc
IMPERATIVE.		——	cae	*caiga;*	——	caed	*caigan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*caiga*	*caigas*	*caiga;*	*caigamos*	*caigais*	*caigan.*
	Imperfect,	cayera	cayeras	cayera;	cayéramos	cayérais	cayeran.
		caeria	caerias	caeria;	caeríamos	caeríais	caerian.
		cayese	cayeses	cayese;	cayésemos	cayéseis	cayesen.
	Future,	cayere	cayeres	cayere;	cayéremos	cayéreis	cayer n.

* *Decaer,* to decay; *recaer,* to relapse.

Infinitive.	*Caber,*	to be contained, to hold, to contain, to fall to a person's lot, &c.
Gerund,	*Cabiendo,*	being contained, &c.
Participle.	*Cabido,*	been contained, &c.

This verb and its compounds are irregular in the tenses and persons, shown in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*quepo*	cabes	cabe;	cabemos	cabeis	caben.
	Imperfect,	cabia	cabias	cabia;	cabíamos	cabíais	cabian.
	Preterite,	*cupe*	*cupiste*	*cupo;*	*cupimos*	*cupisteis*	*cupieron.*
	Future,	cabré	cabrás	cabrá;	cabremos	cabréis	cabrán.
IMPERATIVE.		—	abe	[illegible]pa;	—	cab d	*quepan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*quepa*	*quepas*	*quepa;*	*quepamos*	[illegible]pais	*quepan.*
	Imperfect,	*cupiera* / *cabria* / *cupiese*	*cupieras* / *cabrias* / *cupieses*	*cupiera;* / *cabria;* / *cupiese;*	*cupiéramos* / *cabríamos* / *cupiésemos*	*cupierais* / *cabríais* / *cupiéseis*	*cupieran.* / *cabrian.* / *cupiesen.*
	Future.	*cupiere*	*cupieres*	*cupiere;*	*cupiéremos*	*cupiereis*	*cupieren.*

Infinitive.	*Poder,*	to be able.
Gerund.	*Pudiendo,*	being able.
Participle.	*Podido,*	been able.

This verb is irregular in the tenses e hibited in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*puedo*	*puedes*	*puede;*	podemos	podeis	*pueden.*
	Imperfect,	podia	podias	podia;	podíamos	podíais	podian.
	Preterite,	*pude*	*pudiste*	*pudo;*	*pudimos*	*pudísteis*	*pudiéron.*
	Future,	podré	podrás	podrá;	podrémos	podréis	podrán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	*puede*	*pueda;*	——	podéd	*pueden.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*pueda*	*puedas*	*pueda;*	podamos	podais	*puedan.*
	Imperfect,	*pudiera* / podria / *pudiese*	*pudieras* / podrias / *pudieses*	*pudiera;* / podria; / *pudiese;*	*pudiéramos* / podríamos / *pudiésemos*	*pudiérais* / podríais / *pudiéseis*	*pudieran.* / podrian. / *pudiesen.*
	Future,	*pudiere*	*pudieres*	*pudiere;*	*pudiéremos*	*pudiéreis*	*pudieren.*

Infinitive,	*Querer,*	to be willing.
Gerund.	*Queriendo,*	being willing.
Participle.	*Querido,*	been willing.

This verb is irregular in the tenses and persons exhibited in the following model.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*quiero*	*quieres*	*quiere;*	*queremos*	*queréis*	*quieren.*
	Imperfect,	queria	querias	queria;	queríamos	queríais	querian.
	Preterite,	*quise,*	*quisiste*	*quiso;*	*quisímos*	*quisísteis*	*quisiéron.*
	Future,	*querré*	*querrás*	*querrá;*	*querrémos*	*querréis*	*querrán.*
IMPERATIVE.		——	*quiere*	*quiera;*	——	quered	*quieran.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*quiera*	*quieras*	*quiera;*	*queramos*	querais	*quieran.*
	Imperfect,	*quisiera* / *querria* / *quisiese*	*quisieras* / *querrias* / *quisieses*	*quisiera;* / *querria;* / *quisiese;*	*quisiéramos* / *querríamos* / *quisiésemos*	*quisiérais* / *querrías* / *quisiéseis*	*quisieran.* / *querrian.* / *quisiesen.*
	Future,	*quisiere*	*quisieres*	*quisiere;*	*quisiéremos*	*quisiéreis*	*quisieren.*

Saber to know

Infinitive.	*Morder,*	to bite.
Gerund.	*Mordiendo,*	biting.
Participle.	*Mordido,*	bitten.

This verb changes the radical *o* into *ue* in the three persons singular and third plural of the three presents.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*sé*	*sabes*	*sabe;*	*sabemos*	*sabeis*	*saben.*
	Imperfect,	sabia	sabias	sabia;	sabíamos	sabíais	sabian.
	Preterite,	*supe*	*supiste*	*supo;*	*supimos*	*supisteis*	*supieron.*
	Future,	*sabré*	*sabrás*	*sabrá;*	*sabremos*	*sabréis*	*sabrán.*
IMPERATIVE.		——	sabe	*sepa;*	——	sabed	*sepan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*sepa*	*sepas*	*sepa;*	*sepamos*	*sepais*	*sepan.*
	Imperfect,	*supiera* / sabria / *supiese*	*supieras* / sabrias / *supieses*	*supiera;* / sabria; / *supiese;*	*supiéramos* / sabriamos / *supiésemos*	*supierais* / sabríais / *supieseis*	*supieran.* / sabrian. / *supiesen.*
	Future,	*supiere*	*supieres*	*supiere;*	*supiéremos*	*supiereis*	*supieren.*

Infinitive.	*Traer,*	to bring.
Gerund.	*Trayendo,*	bringing.
Participle.	*Traido,*	brought.

This verb and its compounds have the irregularities seen in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*traigo*	traes	trae;	traemos	traeis	traen.
	Imperfect,	traia	traias	traia;	[illegible]mos	traíais	[illegible]an.
	Preterite,	*trage*	*tragíste*	*trajo;*	*tragímos*	*tragísteis*	*tragéron.*
	Fut,	traerē	traerás	traerá;	traerémos	traeréis	traerán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	trae	*traiga;*	——	traed	*traigan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Pres ent,*	*traiga*	*traigas*	*traiga;*	*traigamos*	*traigais*	[illegible]n.
	Imperfect,	*tragera*	*trageras*	*tragera;*	*tragéramos*	*tragérais*	*trageran.*
		traeria	traerias	traeria;	treríamos	traeríais	traerian.
		tragese	*trageses*	*tragese;*	*tragésemos*	*tragéseis*	*tragesen.*
	Future,	*tragere*	*trageres*	*tragere;*	*tragéremos*	*tragéreis*	*trageren.*

Infinitive.	*Ver,*	to see.
Gerund.	*Viendo,*	seeing.
Participle.	*Visto,*	seen.

This verb and its compounds, require an *e* after the radi cal *v* in the first person indicative present, in all the persons of the imperfect, in the third persons of both numb ers of the imperative, and in all those of the subjunctive present.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*veo*	ves	ve;	vemos	veis	ven.
	Imperfect,	*veia*	*veias*	*veia;*	*veíamos*	*veis*	*ven.*
	Preterite,	vi	vie	vió;	vimos	vístéis	vín.
	Future,	veré	verás	verá;	verémos	veréis	verán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	ve	*vea;*	——	ved	*ven.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*vea*	*veas*	*vea;*	*eamos*	*eais*	*an.*
	Imperfect,	viera / veria / viese	vieras / verias / vieses	viera; / veria; / viese;	viéramos / veríamos / viéramos	viérais / veríais / viéseis	vieran. / verian. / vien.
	Future,	viere	vieres	viere;	iéremos	iéreis	vieren.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	*Concluir,*	to conclude.
Gerund.	*Concluyendo,*	concluding.
Participle.	*Concluido,*	concluded.

All the verbs of the third conjugation, the last radical letter of which is a *u* not dotted, and not preceded by *g* or *y*, take a *y* after it, before terminations beginning with an *a*, *e*, or *o*, as will be seen in the annexed conjugation.

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*concluyo*	*concluyes*	*concluye;*	concluimos	concluis	*concluyen.*
	Imperfect,	concluia	concluias	concluia;	concluíamos	concluíais	concluian.
	Preterite,	concluí	concluíste	*concluyó;*	concluímos	concluísteis	*concluyéron.*
	Future,	concluiré	concluirás	concluirá;	concluirémos	concluiréis	concluirán.
IMPERATIVE.		—	*concluye*	*concluya;*	—	concluid	*concluyan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*concluya*	*concluyas*	*concluya;*	concluyamos	*concluyais*	*concluyan.*
	Imperfect,	*concluyera* / concluiria	*concluyeras* / concluirias	*concluyera;* / concluiria;	*concluyéramos* / concluiríamos	*concluyérais* / concluiríais	*concluyeran.* / concluirian
	Future,	*concluyese* / *concluyere*	*concluyeses* / *concluyeres*	*concluyese;* / *concluyere;*	*concluyésemos* / *concluyéremos*	*concluyéseis* / *concluyéreis*	*concluyesen.* / *concluyeren.*

Infinitive.	*Lucir,*	to shine.
Gerund.	*Luciendo,*	shining.
Participle.	*Lucido,*	shined.

All the verbs ending in *ucir*, preceded by any other letter except a *d*, as *lucir*, require a *z* before the radical letter *c*, whenever the termination begins with either an *a* or an *o* This only takes place in the first person indicative present, in the last of both numbers of the imperative, and in all those of the subjunctive present.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*luzco*	luces	luce;	l mos	luis	lucen.
	Imperfect,	lucia	lucias	lucia;	lucíamos	lucíais	lucian.
	Preterite.	lucí	lucíste	lucío;	l mos	lucísteis	luciéron,
	Future,	lucirē	lucirás	lucirá;	lucirémos	luciréis	lucirán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	luce	*luzca;*	—— ——	lucid	*luzcan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE	*Present,*	*luzca*	*luzcas*	*luzca;*	*luzcamos*	1 *adis*	*an.*
	Imperfect,	luciera	lucieras	luciera;	luciéramos	luciérais	ian.
		luciria	lucirias	luciria;	luciríamos	lu iríae	lucirian.
		luciese	lucieses	luciese;	luciésemos	1 ídis	luciesen.
	Future,	luciere	lucieres	luciere;	luciéremos	iareis	lucieren.

Infinitive.	*Sentir,*	to feel.
Gerund.	*Sintiendo,*	feeling.
Participle,	*Sentido,*	felt.

This verb requires, in some tenses, an *i* before its radical letter *e*, and in some others, changes its radical *e* into *i*, as it will be seen in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			*Plural.*		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*siento*	*sientes*	*siente;*	sentimos	sentís	*sienten.*
	Imperfect,	sentia	sentias	sentia;	sentíamos	sentíais	sentian.
	Preterite,	sentí	sentiste	*sintió;*	sentimos	sentísteis	*sintiéron.*
	Future,	sentiré	sentirás	sentirá;	sentirémos	sentiréis	sentirán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	*siente*	*sienta;*	——	sentid	*sientan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*sienta*	*sientas*	*sienta;*	*sintamos*	*sintais*	*sientan.*
	Imperfect,	*sintiera* / sentiria / *sintiese*	*sintieras* / sentirias / *sintieses*	*sintiera;* / sentiria; / *sintiese;*	*sintiéramos* / sentiríamos / *sintiésemos*	*sintiérais* / sentiríais / *sentiéseis*	*sintieran.* / sentirian. / *sintiesen.*
	Future,	*sintiere*	*sintieres*	*sintiere;*	*sintiéremos*	*sentiéreis*	*sintieren.*

Infinitive.	*Dormir*,	to sleep.
Gerund.	*Durmiendo*,	sleeping.
Participle.	*Dormido*,	slept.

This verb changes its last radical *o* sometimes into *ue*, and others into *u*; as,

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present*,	*duermo*	*duermes*	*[illegible]*;	dormimos	dormis	[illegible].
	Imperfect,	dormia	dormias	dormia;	dormíamos	dormíais	dormian.
	Preterite,	dormí	dormiste	*durmió*;	dormimos	dormisteis	*durmiéron*.
	Future,	dormiré	dormirás	dormirá;	dormirémos	dormiréis	dormirán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	[illegible]	*duerma*;	———	dormid	*duerman*.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present*,	*duerma*	*duermas*	*duerma*;	*durmamos*	*durmais*	*duerman*.
	Imperfect,	*durmiera*	*durmieras*	*durmiera*;	*durmiéramos*	*durmiérais*	*durmieran*.
		dormiria	dormirias	dormiria;	dormiríamos	dormiríais	[illegible].
		durmiese	*durmieses*	*durmiese*;	*durmiésemos*	*durmiéseis*	*durmiesen*.
	Future,	*durmiere*	*durmieres*	*durmiere*;	*durmiéremos*	*durmiéreis*	[illegible].

Infinitive.	*Pedir,*	to demand.
Gerund.	*Pidiendo,*	demanding.
Participle.	*Pedido,*	demanded.

This verb changes its last radical *e* into *i*, in the tenses and persons to be seen in the following conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*pido*	*pides*	*pide;*	pedimos	pedis	*piden.*
	Imperfect,	pedia	pedias	pedia;	pedíamos	pedíais	pedian.
	Preterite,	pedí	pedíste	*pidió;*	pedimos	pedísteis	*pidiéron.*
	Future,	pediré	pedirás	pedirá;	pedirémos	pedís	pedirán.
IMPERATIVE.		—	*pide*	*pida;*	—	pedid	*pidan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*pida*	*pidas*	*pida;*	*pidamos*	*pidais*	*pidan.*
	Imperfect,	*pidiera* / pediria / *pidiese*	*pidieras* / pedirias / *pidieses*	*pidiera;* / pediria; / *pidiese;*	*pidiéramos* / pediriamos / *pidiésemos*	*pidis* / pediriais / *pidis*	*pidieran.* / pedirian. / *pidiesen.*
	Future,	*pidiere*	*pidieres*	*pidiere;*	*pidiéremos*	*pidiéreis*	*pidieren.*

Infinitive.	*Asir,*	to seize.
Gerund.	*Asiendo,*	seizing.
Participle.	*Asido,*	seized.

This verb requires a *g* after its radical *s*, before terminations beginning with *a* or *o*. This only takes place in the first person indicative present, in the last of both numbers of the imperative, and in all those of the subjunctive present.

		Singular.			*Plural.*		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*asgo*	ases	ase;	asimos	asis	asen.
	Imperfect,	asia	asias	asia;	asíamos	asíais	asian.
	Preterite,	así	asíste	asió;	[illegible]mos	asísteis	asiéron.
	Future,	asiré	asirás	asirá;	asirémos	asiréis	asirán.
IMPERATIVE.		——	ase	*asga;*	——	asid	*asgan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*asga*	*asgas*	*asga;*	*asgamos*	*asgais*	*asgan.*
	Imperfect,	asiera	asieras	asiera;	asiéramos	asiérais	asieran.
		asiria	asias	asiria;	[illegible]mos	asiríais	asirian.
		asiese	asieses	asiese;	asiésemos	asiéscis	asiesen.
	Future,	asiere	asieres	asiere;	asiéremos	asiéreis	asieren.

Infinitive.	*Decir,*	to say.
Gerund	*Diciendo,*	saying.
Participle.	*Dicho,*	said.

This verb, and some of its compounds, have the irregularities to be seen in the following conjugation.*

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*digo*	*dices*	*dice;*	decimos	decis	*dicen.*
	Imperfect,	decia	[illegible]ias	decia;	decíamos	decíais	[illegible]n.
	Preterite,	*dige*	*digiste*	*dijo;*	*digimos*	*digísteis*	*digéron.*
	Future,	*diré*	[illegible]ás	*dirá;*	[illegible]mos	*dirés*	*dirán.*
IMPERATIVE.		—	*di*	*diga;*	—	decid	*digan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*diga*	*digas*	*diga;*	*digamos*	*igais*	*digan.*
	Imperfect,	*digera*	*digeras*	*digera;*	*digéramos*	*digis*	*digeran.*
		diria	*dias*	*diria;*	*diríamos*	*diríais*	[illegible]n.
		digese	[illegible]ses	*digese;*	*digésemos*	*digéseis*	*digesen.*
	Future.	*digere*	*digeres*	*digere;*	*digéremos*	*digéreis*	*digeren.*

* *Contradecir,* to contradict; *desdecirse,* to retract; and *predecir,* to predict, are compounds of *decir,* and conjugated like it, except that in every one of them, the 2d person singular of the imperative ends in *ice;* as, *contradice, desdice, predice.*

Although *bendecir,* to bless, and *maldecir,* to curse, are compounds of *decir,* notwithstanding they are conjugated differently, as it will be seen in the next example.

Infinitive.	*Bendecir,*	to bless.
Gerund.	*Bendiciendo,*	blessing.
Participle.	*Bendecido,*	blessed.

This verb, and *maldecir*, have the following irregularities:

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*bendigo*	*bendices*	*bendice;*	bendecimos	*bendecís*	*bendicen.*
	Imperfect,	bendecia	bendecias	bendecia;	bendecíamos	bendecíais	bendecian.
	Preterite,	*bendige*	*bendigiste*	*bendijo;*	*bendigimos*	*bendigísteis*	*bendigéron.*
	Future,	bendecirē	bendecirás	bendecirá;	bendecirémos	bendecirēis	bendecirán.
IMPERATIVE.		———	bendice	*bendiga;*	———	bendecid	*bendigan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*bendiga*	*bendigas*	*bendiga;*	*bendigamos*	*bendigais*	*bendigan.*
	Imperfect,	*bendigera* / bendeciria	*bendigeras* / bendecirias	*bendigera;* / bendeciria;	*bendigéramos* / bendeciríamos	*bendigérais* / bendeciríais	*bendigeran.* / bendecirían.
	Future,	*bendigese* / *bendigere*	*bendigeses* / *bendigeres*	*bendigese;* / *bendigere;*	*bendigésemos* / *bendigéremos*	*bendigéseis* / *benaigéreis*	*bendigésen.* / *bendigeron.*

Infinitive.	*Salir,*	to go out.
Gerund.	*Saliendo,*	going out.
Participle.	*Salido,*	gone out.

This verb and its compound, *sobresalir*, to surpass, are conjugated after the following model.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*salgo*	sales	sale;	salimos	salis	salen.
	Imperfect,	salia	salias	salia;	salíamos	salíais	salian.
	Preterite,	salí	saliste	salió;	salimos	salísteis	salieron.
	Future,	*saldré*	*saldrás*	*saldrá;*	*saldremos*	*saldréis*	*saldrán.*
IMPERATIVE.		——	sal	*salga;*	——	salid	*salgan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*salga*	*salgas*	*salga;*	*salgamos*	*salgais*	*salgan.*
	Imperfect,	sdra / *sdria*	salieras / *saldrias*	saliera; / *saldria;*	saliéramos / *saldríamos*	saliérais / *saldríais*	saliéran. / *saldrian.*
		saliese	salieses	saliese;	saliésemos	saliéseis	saliesen.
	Future,	iere	ieres	saliere;	saliéremos	saliéreis	salieren.

Infinitive.	*Ir,*	to go.
Grund.	*Yendo,*	going.
Participle.	*Ido,*	gone.

This verb has the irregularities to be seen in the annexed conjugation.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE.	*Present,*	*voi*	*vas*	*va;*	*vamos*	*vais*	*van.*
	Imperfect,	*iba*	*ibas*	*iba;*	*ībamos*	*ībais*	*iban.*
	Preterite,	*fuī*	*fuīste*	*fué;*	*fuimos*	*fuīsteis*	*fuéron.*
	Future,	irē	irās	irā;	irēmos	irēis	irān.
IMPERATIVE.		—	*ve*	*vaya;*	—	*id*	*vayan.*
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present,*	*vaya*	*vayas*	*vaya;*	*vayamos**	*vayais*	*vayan.*
	Imperfect,	*fuera* / iria / *fuese*	*fueras* / irias / *fueses*	*fuera;* / iria; / *fuese;*	*fuéramos* / iríamos / *fuésemos*	*fuérais* / iríais / *fuéseis*	*fueran.* / irian. / *fuesen.*
	Future,	*fuere*	*fueres*	*fuere;*	*fuéremos*	*fuéreis*	*fueren.*

* *Vayamos*, is now almost exploded, *vamos* being substituted in its place.

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

Of all the irregular verbs, in the Spanish language, with references to the example after which they are to be conjugated.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Page.		Page.
Acordar, to agree.	125	*Aterrar*, to terrify,	126
Acrecentar, to increase,	126	*Atestar*, to cram,*	ib.
Acertar, to guess,	ib.	*Atravesar*, to cross,	ib.
Acordarse, to remember,	125	*Atronar*, to thunder,	125
Acostarse, to lie down,	ib.	*Aventar*, to fan,	126
Adestrar, to make dexterous,	126	*Avergonzarse*, to be ashamed,	125
Agorar, to divine,	125	*Bregar*, to contend,	126
Alentar, to encourage,	126	*Calentar*, to warm,	ib.
Almorzar, to breakfast,	125	*Cegar*, to blind,	ib.
Amolar, to whet,	ib.	*Cerrar*, to shut,	ib.
Andar, to walk,	127	*Cimentar*, to lay foundations,	ib.
Apacentar, to feed cattle,	126	*Colar*, to strain,	ib.
Aporcar, to cover with earth,	125	*Colgar*, to hang up,	ib.
Aportar, to arrive at a point,	ib.	*Comenzar*, to commence,	ib.
Apostar, to lay wages,	ib.	*Comprobar*, to corroborate,	125
Aprobar, to approve,	ib.	*Concertar*, to agree,	ib.
Apretar, to tighten,	126	*Concordar*, to agree,	ib.
Arrendar, to hire,	ib.	*Confesar*, to confess,	129
Asentar, to set down,	ib.	*Consolar*, to give consolation,	125
Aserrar, to saw,	ib.	*Gonsonar*, to agree in tone,	ib.
Asestar, to take aim,	ib.	*Contar*, to relate,	ib.
Asoldar, to keep troops in pay,	125	*Costar*, to cost,	ib.
Asolar, to raze,	ib.	*Dar*, to give,	128
Asonar, to make sounds agree,	ib.	*Decentar*, to make the first cut,	ib.
Atentar, to attempt,	126	*Decimentar*,† the reverse of *cimentar*,	126
		Degollar, to behead,	125

* When it signifies *to attest* it is regular.

† When the verb consists of two radical *e*, the additional i is placed before the second: as, decimiento, decimientas, &c.

	Page.
Fregar, to scour,	126
Frezar, to freeze,	ib.
Gobernar, to govern,	ib.
Helar, to freeze,	ib.
Herrar, to shoe horses,	ib.
Holgar, to rest from labour,	125
Hollar, to trample,	ib.
Infernar, to damn,	126
Insertar, to insert,	ib.
Invernar, to winter,	ib
Jugar, to play,	129
Manifestar, to manifest,	126
Mentar, to mention,	ib.
Merendar, to take a luncheon,	ib.
Mostrar, to show,	125
Negar, to deny,	126
Nevar, to snow,	ib.
Pensar, to think,	ib.
Perniquebrar, to break legs,	ib.
Plegar, to plait,	ib.
Poblar, to people,	125
Probar, to prove,	ib.
Quebrar, to break,	126
Recomendar, to recommend,	ib.
Recordar, to remind,	125
Recostar, to recline,	ib.
Reforzar, to reinforce,	ib.
Regar, to water,	126
Regoldar, to belch,	125
Remendar, to mend clothes,	126
Renegar, to abjure,	ib.
Renovar, to renew,	125
Replegar, to fall back,*	126
Reprobar, to reprove,	125
Requebrar, to cajole,	126
Rescontrar, to balance in accounts,	125
Resollar, to breathe,	ib.
Resonar, to resound,	ib.
Retemblar, to vibrate,	126
Retentar, to threaten a relapse,†	ib.
Reventar, to burst,	ib.
Revolar, to fly again,	125
Revolcarse, to wallow,	ib.
Rodar, to move on wheels,	ib.
Rogar, to pray,	ib.
Segar, to reap corn,	126
Sembrar, to saw,	ib.
Sentarse, to sit,	ib.
Serrar, to saw,	ib.
Solar, to sole,	125
Soldar, to solder,	ib.
Sonar, to sound,	ib.
Soñar, to dream,	ib.
Sosegarse, to become tranquil,	126
Soterrar, to bury,	ib.
Temblar, to tremble,	ib.
Tentar, to tempt,	ib.
Tostar, to toast,	125
Trascolar, to percolate,	ib.
Trascordarse, to forget,	ib.
Trasegar, to decant,	126
Trasoñar, to dream,	125
Trocar, to barter,	ib.
Tronar, to thunder,	ib.
Tropezar, to stumble,	126
Volar, to fly,	125
Volcar, to overset,	ib.

* Speaking of the former position of an army.

† Alluding to sickness.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

	Page.
Abastecer, to furnish provisions,	130
Aborrecer, to hate,	ib.
Absolver, to absolve,	132
Abstraer, to abstract,	140
Acaecer, to happen,	130
Acontecer, to come to pass,	ib.
Adolecer, to sicken,	ib.
Adormecerse, to grow drowsy,	ib.
Agradecer, to thank,	ib.
Amanecer, to dawn,	ib.
Amortecerse, to be in a swoon,	ib.
Anochecer, to grow dark,	ib.
Anteponer, to prefer,	137
Antever, to foresee,	142
Aparecer, to appear,	130
Apetecer, to long for,	ib.
Ascender, to ascend,	133
Atender, to attend,	ib.
Atenerse, to stand to,	89
Atraer, to attract,	140
Bermegecer, to become red,	130
Caber to contain,	135
Caer, to fall,	134
Canecer, to become grey,*	130
Carecer, to be deprived of,	ib.
Cerner, to sift,	133
Cocer, to cook,	132
Compadecerse, to justify,	130
Comparecer, to come before,	ib.
Complacer, to give pleasure,	ib.
Componer, to compose,	137
Condescender, to condescend,	133
Condoler, to condole,	132
Conmover, to excite commotions,	ib.
Conocer, to be acquainted,	130
Contender, to contend,	133
Contener, to contain,	89
Contrahacer, to counterfeit,	131
Contraer, to contract,	140
Convalecer, to be convalescent,	130
Crecer, to grow,	ib.
Decaer, to decay,	134
Defender, to defend,	133
Demoler, to demolish,	132
Deponer, to depose,	137
Desabastecer, not to supply,	130
Desadormecer, to rouse from sleep,	ib.
Desaparecer, to disappear,	ib.
Desatender, to neglect,	133
Desatraer, to disjoin,	140
Descaecer, to droop,	130
Descender, to descend,	133
Descomponer, to discompose,	137
Desconocer, to disown,	130
Desentenderse, to feign ignorance,	133
Desentorpecer, to free from numbness,	130
Desenvolver, to unroll,	132
Desfallecer, to pine,	130

* In allusion to the hair.

Page.

Desflaquecerse, to become emaciated, 130
Desguarnecer, to take off trimming, ib.
Deshacer, to undo, 131
Desobedecer, to disobey, 130
Desplacer, to displease, ib.
Destorcer, to untwist, 132
Desvanecerse, to vanish away, 130
Detener, to detain, 89
Detraer, to vilify, 140
Devolver, to restore, 132
Disolver, to dissolve, ib.
Disponer, to dispose, 137
Distraer, to distract, 140
Doler, to ache, 132
Embebecerse, to be struck with amazement, 130
Embravecerse, to become furious, ib.
Embrutecerse, to become brutal, ib.
Emplumecer, to become fledged, ib.
Empobrecer, to empoverish, ib.
Encabellecer, to be getting a nice head of hair, ib.
Encalvecer, to become bald, ib.
Encallecer, to render callous, ib.
Encanecer, same as *canecer*, ib.
Encarecer, to become dearer, ib.
Encender, to light, 133
Encrudecerse, to become raw, 130
Encruelecer, to instigate to cruelties, ib.
Endentecer, to cut the teeth, ib.
Endurecer, to harden, ib.
Enflaquecer, to grow lean, ib.

Page.

Enfurecerse, to become furious, 130
Engrandecer, to aggrandize, ib.
Enloquecer, to become mad, ib.
Enmocecer, to become younger in appearance, ib.
Enmohecerse, to grow mouldy, ib.
Enmudecer, to become dumb, ib.
Enegrecer, to blacken, ib.
Enoblecer, to ennoble, ib.
Enrarecer, to rarify, ib.
Enriquecer, to enrich, ib.
Ensoberbecerse, to become haughty, ib.
Entallecer, to sprout, ib.
Entender, to understand, 133
Enternecer, to soften, 130
Entomecer, to swell, ib.
Entontecerse, to become silly, ib.
Entorpecerse, to become less active, ib.
Entretener, to entertain, 89
Entristecerse, to become sad, 130
Entullecer, to become crippled, ib.
Entumecer, same as *entomecer*, to swell, ib.
Envegecer, to grow old, ib.
Enverdecer, to grow green, ib.
Envolver, to wrap, 132
Equivaler, to be equivalent, 141
Escarnecer, to scoff, 130
Esclarecer, to light, ib.
Escocer, to smart, ib.
Espavorecer, to frighten, ib.
Establecer, to establish, ib.
Estremecerse, to shudder, ib.
Esponer, to expose, 137

	Page.		Page.
Reverter, to overflow,	133	*Tener*, to hold,	89
Revolver, to revolve,	132	*Torcer*, to twist,	133
Saber, to know,	139	*Traer*, to bring,	140
Satisfacer, to satisfy,	131	*Transcender*, to transcend,	133
Ser, to be,	93	*Trascender*, to penetrate,	ib.
Sobreponer, to place over,	137	*Transponer*, to transpose,	137
Soler, to be wont,	132	*Trasponer*, to remove,	ib.
Solver, to decide,	ib.	*Valer*, to be worth,	141
Sostener, to sustain,	89	*Ver*, to see,	142
Substraer, to substract,	140	*Verter*, to shed,	133
Suponer, to suppose,	137	*Volver*, to return,	132
Tender, to tend,	133		

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Page.		Page.
Adherir, to adhere,	146	*Concebir*, to conceive,	148
Adquerir,* to acquire,	ib.	*Concluir*, to conclude,	143
Advertir, to advert,	ib.	*Conducir*, to conduce,	145
Apercebir, to provide,	148	*Conferir*, to confer,	146
Argüir, to argue,	143	*Conseguir*, to obtain,	148
Arrecirse, to become numb with cold,	ib.	*Consentir*, to consent,	146
Arrepentirse, to repent,	146	*Constituir*, to constitute,	143
Asentir, to assent,	ib.	*Constreñir*, to constrain,	148
Aterirse, to be benumbed with cold,	ib.	*Construir*, to construe,	143
Asir, to seize,	150	*Contradecir*, to contradict,	151
Atribuir, to attribute,	143	*Contravenir*, to oppose,	149
Avenirse, to agree,	149	*Contribuir*, to contribute,	143
Bendecir, to bless,	152	*Controvertir*, to controvert,	146
Ceñir, to gird,	148	*Corregir*, to correct,	148
Colegir, to collect,	ib.	*Decir*, to say,	151
Comedirse, to grow moderate,	ib.	*Deducir*, to infer,	145
Competir, to contend,	ib.	*Deferir*, to defer,	146
		Derretir, to melt,	148
		Desavenir, to disagree,	149

* This verb takes an *e* after the i, in the same tenses that *perder* takes an *i* before the *e*; as, *adquiero*, &c. see *perder*.

	Page.
Desceñir, to ungird,	148
Descomedirse, to grow rude,	ib.
Desconsentir, to dissent,	146
Desservir, not to perform one's duty to the sovereign,	ib.
Desdecirse, to retract,	151
Desleir, to dilute,	148
Deslucir, to tarnish,	144
Desmentir, to give the lie,	146
Despedir, to dismiss,	148
Desteñir, to discolour,	ib.
Destruir, to destroy,	143
Diferir, to differ,	146
Digerir, to digest,	ib
Disminuir, to diminish,	143
Distribuir, to distribute,	ib.
Divertir, to divert,	146
Dormir, to sleep,	147
Elegir, to elect,	148
Embestir, to assail,	ib.
Engreirse, to become haughty,	ib.
Enlucir, to white-wash,	144
Entrelucir, to glimmer,	ib.
Entreoir, to hear indistinctly,	153
Envestir, to invest,	148
Erguir,* to hold up the head,	146
Estreñir, to produce astringency,	148
Escluir, to exclude,	143
Espedir, to expedite,	148
Fluir, to flow,	143
Freir, to fry,	148
Gemir, to groan,	148
Herir, to wound,	146
Hervir, to boil,	ib.
Huir, to flee,	143
Imbuir, to imbue,	ib.
Impedir, to impede,	148
Inadvertir, to be inattentive,	146
Incluir, to include,	143
Inducir, to induce,	145
Inferir, to infer,	146
Instituir, to institute,	143
Instruir, to instruct,	ib.
Intervenir, to intervene,	149
Introducir, to introduce,	145
Invertir, to invert,	146
Investir, to invest,	148
Ingerir, to graft,	146
Ir, to go,	155
Lucir, to shine,	144
Luir, to wear by friction,	143
Maldecir, to curse,	152
Medir, to measure,	148
Mentir, to lie,	146
Morir, to die,	147
Muir,† to milk,	143
Obstruir, to obstruct,	ib.
Oir, to hear,	153
Pedir, to ask,	148
Perseguir, to persecute,	ib.
Pervertir, to pervert,	146
Predecir, to predict,	151
Preferir, to prefer,	146
Presentir, to have a presentiment,	ib.

* All the irregular persons of this verb are written with an *h*; as, *hiergo*. *hierga*, &c.

† A term peculiar to the province of *Arragon*.

	Page.		Page.
Prevenir, to prevent,	149	*Retribuir*, to compensate,	143
Producir, to produce,	145	*Revenir*, to recover,	149
Proferir, to utter,	146	*Revestir*, to revest,	148
Proseguir, to prosecute,	148	*Salir*, to go out,	154
Prostituir, to prostitute,	143	*Seducir*, to seduce,	145
Provenir, to originate,	149	*Seguir*, to follow,	148
Recluir, to cloister,	143	*Sentir*, to feel,	146
Reducir, to reduce,	145	*Servir*, to serve,	148
Referir, to refer,	146	*Sobresalir*, to surpass,	154
Regir, to rule,	148	*Sobrevenir*, to happen,	149
Reir, to laugh,	ib.	*Sonreirse*, to smile,	148
Relucir, to shine,	148	*Substituir*, to substitute,	143
Rendir, to yield,	144	*Sugerir*, to suggest,	146
Reñir, to quarrel,	ib.	*Teñir*, to dye,	148
Repetir, to repeat,	ib.	*Traducir*, to translate,	145
Requerir, to require,	146	*Venir*, to come,	149
Resentirse, to resent,	ib.	*Vestir*, to clothe,	148
Restituir, to restore,	143	*Zaherir*, to upbraid,	146
Reteñir, to dye again,	148		

N. B. The verbs not to be found in the preceding list, are regular, and for their conjugation, the student is referred from page 101 to 108.

IMPERSONAL VERBS,

Or Verbs, which are conjugated in the Third Person Singular of each Tense only.

Nevar.

INFINITIVE.

Present,	*nevar*,	to snow.
Gerund,	*nevando*,	snowing.
Participle,	*nevado*,	snowed.

Amanecer.

INFINITIVE.

Present,	*amanecer*,	to grow light.
Gerund,	*amaneciendo*,	growing light.
Participle,	*amanecido*,	grown light.

INDICATIVE.

Present,	*amanece*,	it grows light.
Imperfect,	*amanecia*,	it did grow light.
Perfect Indef.	*amaneció*,	it grew light.
Future Imp.	*amanecerá*,	it will grow light.
IMPERATIVE,	*amanezca*,	let it grow light.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	*aunque*, &c. *amanezca*,	although, &c. it may grow light.
Imperfect,	*amaneciera*,	it should grow light.
	amaneceria,	it would grow light.
	amaneciese,	it might grow light.
Future Imp.	*si amaneciere*,	if it should grow light.

Observation.

These last two verbs are sometimes used with all the persons, and, in these cases, they may be considered as neuter-passive verbs, denoting merely the situation or condition of their subject at the time; as, *anochecímos en el campo*, night closed in upon us whilst we were in the country; or, we were in the country when it grew dark; *amanecímos en Lóndres*, the day broke upon us when we were in London; or, we were in London when it grew light; *amanecío el campo de batalla cubierto de heridos*, the wounded were seen, covering the field of battle, at break of day. In some phrases, *amanecer* may be properly translated, to awake, or to arise; and, *anochecer*, to go to sleep, or to lie down; as, *anochecí bueno, y amanecí malo*, I went to sleep well, and I awoke ill; *mi padre, anocheció, pero no amaneció*, my father lay down, but he rose no more.

Haber.

INFINITIVE.

Present,	*haber*,*	
Gerund,	*habiendo*,	there being.
Participle,	*habido*,	been.

INDICATIVE.

Present,	*hai*,	there is, *or* there are.
Imperfect,	*habia*,	there was, *or* there were.
Perfect Indef.	*hubo*,	there was, *or* there were.
Future Imp.	*habra*,	there will be.
IMPERATIVE,	*haya*,	let there be.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	*aunque*, *&c.* *haya*,	though, &c. there may be.
Imperfect,	hub*iera*,	there should be.
	*hab*ria,	there would be.
	hub*iese*,	there might be.
Future Imp.	*si* hub*iere*,	if there should be.

Example:—*There is* an author who says, hai *un autor que dice; there are* philosophers who deny it, hai *filosofos que lo niegan; there have been* men who have believed it, ha habido *hombres que lo han creido.*

Hacer.

INFINITIVE.

Present,	*hacer*,	to be.
Gerund,	*haciendo*,	being.
Participle,	*hecho*,	been.

INDICATIVE.

Present,	*hace*,	it is.
Imperfect,	*hacia*,	it was.

* This tense cannot be construed in English without circumlocution.

Perfect Indef.	hizo,	it was.
Future Imp.	hará,	it will be.
IMPERATIVE,	*haga*,	let it be.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	*aunque*, &c. *haga*,	though, &c. it may be.
Imperfect,	hic*iera*,	it should be.
	haria,	it would be.
	hic*iese*,	it might be.
Future Imp.	*si* hic*iere*,	if it should be.

N. B. This verb is used with nouns of number, in chronological calculations;* as, it is ten years since his father died? *¿hace diez años que murió su padre?* it will be ten years to-morrow, *mañana hará diez años.* It is also employed to express the state of the weather; as, it is cold, *hace frio;* though it may be warm to-morrow, *aunque haga calor mañana;* it has been very windy to-day, *ha hecho mucho viento hoi.*

The following are the remainder of the impersonal verbs.

Helar,	to freeze,	like *nevar*.
Llover,	to rain,	like *morder*.
Escarchar,	to freeze,	regular.
Granizar,	to hail,	regular.
Lloviznar,	to drizzle,	regular.
Relampaguear,	to lighten,	regular.

*The impersonal *haber* is sometimes found used in this kind of calculations; as, *it was* fifteen months since he had retired to the country, *se habia retirado al campo quince meses* habia.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	3d person sing.	*plegue*,*	it may please.
Imperfect,	———	*plugiera*,*	it would please.
	———	*plugiese*,*	it might please.
Future Imp.	———	*plugiere*,*	it should please.

* The Spanish Academy observes that these persons are used in the following expressions only: *plegue*, or *plugiera*, or *plugiese á Dios;* would to God; and *si me plugiere*, if it should please me.

Yacer, *to lie dead.*

No part of this verb is used except the third persons of the present indicative, *yace* and *yacen*, which are generally inscribed on tombstones.

INFINITIVE,		*Soler*,	to be wont.
INDICATIVE.	Present,	*suelo*,	I am wont.
		sueles,	thou art wont.
		suele,	he is wont.
		solemos,	we are wont.
		soleis,	ye are wont.
		suelen,	they are wont.
	Imperfect,	*solia*,	I was wont.
		solias,	thou wast wont.
		solia,	he was wont.
		soliamos,	we were wont.
		solíais,	ye were wont.
		solian,	they were wont.

A LIST OF VERBS,

Having the Participle irregularly formed.

Infinitive.	Meaning.	Irreg. Particip.	Reg. Particip.
Abrir	to open	*abierto*	———
absolver	to absolve	*absuelto*	———
ahitar	to overload the stomach	*ahito*	ahitado
anteponer	to prefer	*antepuesto*	———
antever	to foresee	*antevisto*	———
bendecir	to bless	*bendito*	bendecido
compeler	to compel	*compulso*	compelido
componer	to compose	*compuesto*	———
concluir	to conclude	*concluso*	concluido
confundir	to confound	*confuso*	confundido
contradecir	to contradict	*contradicho*	———
contrahacer,	to counterfeit	*contrahecho*	———
convencer	to convince	*convicto*	convencido
convertir	to convert	*converso*	convertido
cubrir	to cover	*cubierto*	———
decir	to say	*dicho*	———
deponer	to depose	*depuesto*	———
descomponer	to discompose	*descompuesto*	———
descubrir	to discover	*descubierto*	———
desdecirse	to retract	*desdicho*	———
desenvolver	to unroll	*desenvuelto*	———
deshacer	to undo	*deshecho*	———
despertar	to awake	*despierto*	despertado
disolver	to dissolve	*disuelto*	———
disponer	to dispose	*dispuesto*	———
elegir	to elect	*electo*	elegido
encubrir	to conceal	*encubierto*	———
envolver	to wrap	*envuelto*	———

Infinitive.	*Meaning.*	Irreg. Particip.	Reg. Participle.
enjugar	to dry	*enjuto*	enjugado
escribir	to write	*escrito*	———
escluir	to exclude	*escluso*	escluido
espeler	to expel	*espulso*	espelido
esponer	to expose	*espuesto*	———
espresar	to express	*espreso*	espresado
estinguir	to extinguish	*estincto*	estinguido
fijar	to fix	*fijo*	fijado
freir	to fry	*frito*	freido
hacer	to make	*hecho*	———
hartar	to satiate	*harto*	hartado
imponer	to impose	*impuesto*	———
imprimir	to print	*impreso*	———
incluir	to include	*incluso*	incluido
incurrir	to incur	*incurso*	incurrido
indisponer	to indispose	*indispuesto*	———
insertar	to insert	*inserto*	insertado
invertir	to invert	*inverso*	invertido
ingerir	to graft	*ingerto**	ingerido
juntar	to join	*junto*	juntado
maldecir	to curse	*maldito*	maldecido
manifestar	to manifest	*manifesto*	manifestado
marchitar	to fade	*marchito*	marchitado
morir	to die	*muerto*	———
omitir	to omit	*omiso*	omitido
oponer	to oppose	*opuesto*	———
oprimir	to oppress	*opreso**	oprimido
perfeccionar	to perfect	*perfecto*	perfeccionado
poner	to place	*puesto*	———
predecir	to predict	*predicho*	———
prender	to seize	*preso**	prendido
preponer	to place first	*prepuesto*	———

Properties of some Participles.

The following participles have an active signification, and are used also as verbal adjectives.

Agradecido, thanked, and thankful.
Atrevido, dared, and bold.
Callado, unmentioned, and reserved.
Cansado, tired, and tiresome.
Comedido, mused, and gentle.
Desesperado, despaired, and despairing.
Disimulado, dissembled, and crafty.
Entendido, understood, and intelligent.
Esforzado, encouraged, and resolute.
Fingido, feigned, and hypocritical.
Leido, read, and learned.
Medido, measured, and unassuming.
Mirado, looked at, and circumspect.
Moderado, moderated, and moderate.
Ocasionado, caused and provoking.
Osado, dared, and bold.
Parado, stopped, and idle.
Partido, divided, and munificent.
Pausado, paused, and quiet.
Porfiado, contented, and pertinacious.
Preciado, valued, and precious.
Presumido, presumed, and arrogant.
Recatado, concealed, and cautious.
Sabido, known, and clever.
Sentido, felt, and sensible.
Sufrido, suffered, and patient.
Transcendido, transcended, and acute.
Valido, availed, and mighty, and confident.

The participles of *cenar*, *comer*, and *hablar*, when preceded by the adverb *bien* or *mal*, belong to this kind; as, *un hombre bien hablado*, a well-spoken man; *un muchaco mal cenado*, a boy that has not supped well.

Examples.

El está cansado *de trabajar*, he is *tired* of working; *él vió claramente que yo estaba* cansado *de oirle, pero sin embargo el* cansado *prosiguió*, he clearly saw, that I was *tired* of hearing him, but still the *tiresome* went on; *nosotros le hemos* callado *el secreto, porque sabemos que no es hombre* callado, we have *concealed* the secret from him, because we know that he is not a *reserved* man.

ON THE ANCIENT AND MODERN TERMINATIONS OF VERBS.

The terminations of Spanish verbs, have, like the language itself, undergone various changes, and improvements. These were not effected until the works of the greatest authors, had already made their appearance. The difference between the ancient and modern terminations is not, however, so great, as to render the meaning of them, in all instances, obscure to the student; for this may, very often, be gathered from the context of the sentence. Nor can it be said, that it presents to him no difficulties. For, he being accustomed to read and say *amábais*, to denote, ye loved; and finding *amábades*, although he may guess at its meaning, he, very often, conscious of his deficiency, will not trust to his own judgment. And as the object of his doubt cannot be found in any book of reference, he is left in a state of uncertainty. The new editions of the greatest authors, have also been printed according to their original; and, therefore, a knowledge of

the various modifications and additions in the tenses of verbs, is rendered necessary to the learner.

The modern terminations of verbs, are, according to our opinion, far superior to the ancient. In the Spanish language, the sound of the combination of two or three vowels, in which the *i* is included, is always melodious and sonorous; and this is the case in the newly adopted terminations.

As it has been the object of the author to make this grammar as useful as study and research would enable him, he has endeavoured to present to the view of the learner, the ancient and modern terminations of those tenses of verbs, which have undergone any variation, in a manner, he indulges the hope, attainable, in a glance, by any common capacity.

VARIATION OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

It is only the second person plural of all the tenses, of regular verbs, which have undergone any variation. This will be seen in the following columns.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ancient terminations.		Modern terminations.
Am*ades*,	ye love,	Am*ais*.
Am*ábades*,	ye did love,	Am*ábais*.
Am*ástedes*	ye loved,	Am*ásteis*.
Am*arédes*,	ye will love,	Am*aréis*.
Am*édes*,	ye may love,	Am*eis*.
Am*arédes*,	ye should love,	Am*árais*.
Am*aríades*,	ye would love,	Am*ariais*.
Am*ásedes*,	ye might love,	Am*aseis*.
Am*áredes*,	ye should love,	Am*áreis*.

S*o*,	I am,	S*oi*.
D*ó*,	I give,	D*oi*.
V*o*,	I go,	V*oi*.

Some of the persons of those irregular verbs, which, at present, terminate in *igo*, and *iga*, formerly terminated in *yo*, *ya;* and those in *go* and *ga*, in *o* and *a;* as,

Ca*yo*.	I fall,	Ca*igo*.
Ca*ya*,	I may fall,	Ca*iga*.
O*yo*,	I hear,	O*igo*.
Tr*ayo*,	I bring,	Tr*aigo*.
Tr*aya*,	I may bring,	Tr*aiga*.
Val*o*,	I am worth,	Val*go*.
Val*a*,	I may be worth,	Val*ga*.

Those which before had an *o*, in the radical letters, have at present a *u;* as,

C*o*brió,	he covered,	C*u*brió.
C*o*po,	he was contained,	C*u*po.
*O*vo,	he had,	H*u*bo.*
M*o*rió,	he died,	M*u*rió.
D*o*rmió,	he slept,	D*ur*mió.
P*o*só,	he placed,	P*u*so.
S*o*po,	he knew,	S*u*po.

OF VERBS USED INTERROGATIVELY OR NEGATIVELY.

In asking questions, the verb is always placed before its nominative or subject; as,

¿ Amo *yo?*	*Do*† I *love?*
¿ Amas *tú?*	*Dost* thou *love?*

* The verb, *haber*, to have, is now written with an *h*.

† When the English auxiliary verb, *to do*, is used to ask a question, or to express a negation, it is never translated in Spanish.

¿ Amó *él?*	*Did* he *love?*
¿ Amaréis *vosotros?*	*Shall* you *love?*
¿ Vendrá *mi padre?*	*Will* my father *come?*
¿ Serán *ellos felices?**	*Will* they *be* happy?

When the verb is negatively used, the negative adverb *no*, *not*, must always precede the verb; as,

Ellos no *saldran*,	They will *not* go out.
Su abuelo no *estaba allí*,	Her grand-father was *not* there.
No era *vmd. el que me invito?*	Was it *not* you, who invited me?
No *ayunan ellas hoi?*	Do they *not* fast to-day?

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs serve to modify the signification of verbs; as, *lee bien*, he reads well; *es tarde*, it is late.

Adverbs are divided into simple and compound; compound adverbs are those which are compounded of adjectives, or other adverbs, by the addition of a word or syllable; as, *felizmente*, happily, from *feliz*, happy; *fácilmente*, easily, from *fácil*, easy; and simple adverbs are those from which the compounds are formed; as, *cerca*, near; *dentro*, within.

The adverbs are divided into nine classes; viz—adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, *quantity*, *comparison*, *order*, *affirmation*, *negation*, and *doubt*.

* Sometimes, to render the expression more elegant, the verb is placed before the nominative, in sentences where a question is not asked; as, *Vivia entónces su* padre, his *father* was then alive; *Vino* él y *sus* secuaces, *he* and his *followers* came.

Of Place.

Donde, where.
Adonde? whither?
Aquí, here.
Allí, there.
Allá, yonder.
Por aquí, this way.
Hasta aquí, hitherto.
Fuera, abroad.
Léjos, far.
Cerca, near.
Aparte, aside.
Arriba, above.
Sobre, over.
Encima, upon.
Bajo, underneath.
Abajo, under.
De bajo, from below.
De adelante, from before.
De atras, from behind.
Cerca, nigh.
En alguna parté, somewhere.
En ninguna parte, no where
En cualquiera parte, any where.
En alguna otra parte, somewhere else.
En otra parte, elsewhere.
En ninguna otra parte, no where else.

Of Time.

Cuando? when.
Entónces, then.
Hoi, to-day.
Ayer, yesterday.
Cada dia, every day.
Ayer mañana, yesterday morning.
Ayer tarde, yesterday evening.
Anóche, last night.
Mañana, to-morrow.
Despues de mañana, after to-morrow.
Mañana á la noche, to-morrow night.
El otro dia, the other day.
La semana pasada, last week.
Ultimamente, lately.
Za, already.
Aun, still.
Luego, presently.
Próntamente, quickly.
Brévemente, shortly.
Tarde, late.
Temprano, early.
Presto, soon.
Con tiempo, betimes.
Antiguamente. formerly.
En tiempo atras, heretofore
En lo sucesivo, hereafter.
Ahora, now.

Of Affirmation.

Sí, yes.
Aun, even.
Sin duda, without doubt.
Ciertamente, surely.
De todos modos, by all means.

Of Negation.

Ne, no.
Ni, nor.
Tampoco, neither.
De ningun modo, by no means.
De ninguna suerte, in no wise.

Of Doubt.

Acaso, perhaps.
Apénas, scarce.
Probablemente, probably.
Es dudoso, 'tis doubtful.

A COLLECTION OF ADVERBS,

Requiring *de* before the nouns which come after them.

Acerca de; as, *acerca de lo que me dijo*, concerning what he told me.
A cubierto de; as, *á cubierto de la lluvia*, under shelter of the rain.
Ademas de; as, *ademas de lo que oí*, besides what I heard.
Al lado de; as, *ponga vmd. esto al lado de ella*, place this along side of her.
Antes de; as, *ántes del sermon*, before the sermon.
A pesar de; as, *á pesar de él*, in spite of him.
Cerca de; as, *cerca de casa*, near home.
Debajo de; as, *debajo de la silla*, under the chair.
Delante de; as, *delante del rei*, before the king.
Dentro de; as, *dentro de la iglesia*, within, or inside of the church.
Despues de; as, *despues de comer*, after dinner.

Detras de; as, *detras de la pared,* behind the wall.
Encima de; as, *encima del árbol,* above the tree.
Enfrente de; as, *enfrente del capitolio,* opposite the capitol.
Fuera de; as, *fuera del puerto,* outside of, or without the harbour.
Léjos de; as, *léjos de mi país,* far from my country.
Mas acá de; as, *mas acá de la bolsa,* on this side of the exchange.
Mas allá de; as, *mas allá del parque,* beyond the park.

Adverbs requiring *á* after them:—
Conforme á; as, *conforme á las leyes de los Estados Unidos,* according to the laws of the United States.
Junto á; as, *junto á la iglesia,* close to the church.
Tocante á; as, *tocante á las reglas se observará, &c.* concerning the rules, it will be observed.*

Adverbial Phrases.

A lo hondo, to the bottom.
A tiro de bala, at one's breast.
A cuestas, on one's back.
Andar á gatas, to go on all fours.
——— *á la coz cogita,* on one foot.
——— *á mas no poder,* with all speed.
——— *á la sordina,* slily.
——— *á escondidas,* by stealth.
——— *de puntillas,* on tiptoe.
A saltos y córcovos, by fits and starts.

*There are, no doubt, more words of this kind. It is hoped, however, that this collection will be found sufficient for learners, as they are those which are mostly used, and by means of which, the rest may be easily acquired.

A ojos cerrados, headlong.
A tientas, groping along.
A tuerto y derecho, } at random.
A bulto y sin tino, }
A solas, in private (conversation.)
Caer nieve á grandes copos, to snow in great flakes.
De tropel, pellmell.
De un golpe, at one stroke.
De repente, suddenly.
De rodillas, on one's knees.
De lance, second hand.
De improviso, unexpectedly.
En derechura, strait.
En el último apuro, at bay.
En tropel, in a crowd.
En un abrir y cerrar de ojos, in a twinkling of an eye.
Llover á cántaros, to rain as fast as it can pour.
——— *á chorros*, in streams.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions show the relation that one word has with another; as, *él fué*, de *Baltimore*, á *Boston*, he went *from* Baltimore *to* Boston.

The following are the prepositions, which the Spanish Academy has deemed such:—

A, to.	*Hácia*, towards.
Ante, before.	*Hasta*, till.
Con, with.	*Para*, for.
Contra, against.	*Por*, by or for.
De, of or from.	*Segun*, according to.
Desde, from.	*Sin*, without.
En, in.	*Sobre*, upon.
Entre, between.	*Tras*, behind.

For, *para;* as, this flower is *for* her, *está flor es* para *ella;* I bought yesterday, cloth *for* my son, *ayer compré paño* para *mi hijo;* it cannot be denied that *for* a man like him, such an expression was unbecoming, *no se pueda negar, que* para *un hombre como él, semejante espresion no le estaba bien.*

For, meaning for the sake of, *por;* as, he died *for* his country, *murió* por *su patria.*

For, in behalf of, *por;* as, he betted *for* his brother, *él apostó* por *su hermano.*

For, on account of, *por;* as, he died *for* our sins, *murió* por *nuestros pecados.*

For, during, *por;* as, I shall stay here *for* three weeks, *estaré aqui* por *tres semanas.*

For, in the room of, *por;* as, he came *for* his father, *vino él* por *su padre.*

For, in exchange for, *por;* as, I'll give you my book *for* your watch, *le daré mi libro* por *su muestra;* I shall sell my furniture *for* twenty dollars, *venderé mis muebles* por *veinte pesos.*

For, meaning to fetch, *por;* as, he goes *for* bread, and I went *for* wine, *él va* por *pan, y yo fuí* por *vino.*

From, *de;* as, I come *from* France, *vengo* de *Francia.*

From, speaking of distances, is translated by *desde;* as, there are thirty-six miles *from* Baltimore to Washington, *hai treinta y seis millas* desde *Baltimore á Washington.*

In, after superlatives, is rendered by *de;* as, the sun is the brightest planet *in* the universe, *es el sol el planeta mas brillante* del *universo.*

In, or *into*, *en* or *por;* as, *in* the Spring, en *la primavera; in* the evening, por *la tarde;* put your papers *into* the drawer, *pon tus papeles* en *el cajon.*

Into, followed by a verb of motion, to enter excepted, is rendered by *á;* as, go *into* the hall, and as you come, enter *into* the dining room to see whether dinner is on the table, *ve* á *la sala, y cuando vuelvas entra* en *el comedor, á ver si la comida está en la mesa.*

On, or *upon*, *sobre;* as, *on*, or *upon* the table, *sobre la mesa.*

On, after the verbs *to live, to subsist, &c.* is rendered by *de;* as, he feeds *on* bread, *se alimenta* de *pan.*

On, when found before the days of the week, or of the month, is never translated in Spanish; as, he arrived there *on* the twelfth of January, and he will come back *on* Tuesday, the twenty-eighth, *él llegó allí el doce de Enero, y volverá el martes veinte y ocho.*

Over, *encima de;* as, *over* the door, encima de *la puerta.*

Through, *por;* as, I passed *through* Market-street, *pasé* por *la calle del Mercado.*

Through, denoting the reason why an action was performed, is rendered by *de;* as, they surrendered *through* hunger, *se entregáron* de *hambre.*

Till, or *until*, *hasta;* he will not set off for New-York, *till* next week, *no quiere salir para Nueva-York* hasta *la semana que viene.*

To, *á;* as, I delivered the letter *to* my father, *entregué la carta* á *mi padre.*

To, is rendered *en*, when preceded by from, in phrases like the following:—from door *to* door, *de puerta* en *puerta;* from house *to* house, *de casa* en *casa.*

Towards, *hácia;* as, towards Madrid, hacia *Madrid.*

Under, *debajo de*, or *bajo;* as, *under* the chair, debajo de *la silla;* under the table, bajo *la mesa.*

With, *con;* as, *with* the knife, con el *cuchillo; with* mildness, con *dulzura.*

Within, *dentro de;* as, he is *within* the well, *él está* dentro *del pozo.*

Without, *sin;* as, he was walking through the streets *without* a hat, *se paseaba por las calles* sin *sombrero.*

Without, when meaning opposite to within, is translated by *fuera de;* as, at ten o'clock in the morning, we were *without* the harbour, *á las diez de la mañana estábamos* fuera del *puerto.*

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction connects words and sentences together; as, thou *and* he are happy because you are good, *tú y él sois felices porque sois buenos.*

The Spanish conjunctions are divided into eight kinds, viz.—*conjunctive*, *disjunctive*, *conditional*, *causal*, *continuative*, *comparative*, *adversative*, and *objective.*

Conjunctive, { *y*,* and; *ni*, nor; *que*, that; } as, *yo ví á él*, y *á ella*, I saw him *and* her; *ni reir ni lloror puedo*, I can neither laugh nor weep; *los hombres dicen* que *no apetecen*, *riquezas*, men say *that* they do not long for riches.

Disjunctive, *ó*† or, either; as, *vendrá el padre ó el hijo*, either the father or the son will come.

* When the word following this conjunction y, begins with an *i*, or *hi*, the conjunction *y* is changed into *é; Escocia é Irlanda*, Scotland *and* Ireland; *padre é hijo*, father *and* son.

† This *ó* is changed into *ú*, when the word that follows it begins with an *o;* as, *siete ú ocho*, seven or eight.

those which are formed of more than one word; as, *para que*, that; *á fin de que*, to the end that.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection is a part of speech, which expresses the passions or emotions of the mind of the person who speaks; as, *O hombre! caan mudable eres!* O man! how changeable thou art!

The words which are to be considered in the Spanish language as interjections, are the following:—*ah*, *ai*, *ce*, *chito*, *chiton*, *ca*, *ete*, *fu*, *ha*, *he*, *ho*, *holo*, *ó*, *pu*, *ta*, *tate*, *ah*, *ó*; expressing grief, joy, indignation, and admiration, they may be said to correspond with the English hey! ah! Oh! ho! hah!

Ce, *ete*, *ha*, *he*, *hola*, are used to call the attention, and consequently correspond with hem, lo, hip, holla, in English; *hola*, is also used to express wonder, and *he*, to demand a repetition of something that has been said us, and which we did not exactly understand; *he*, sometimes is expressed in English, by the word what! *chito*, *chiton*, are similar to hush, mum; *ea*, serves to encourage; *fu*, is the same as pshaw! *pu*, as, foh! *ta* and *tate*, are employed to stop; as, halt, hold!

PART III.

SYNTAX.

Syntax, is the proper arrangement of the parts of speech, in order to form correct sentences.

A sentence is an assemblage of words, forming a complete sense.

Syntax consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Government*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in gender, number, case, or person.

In Spanish, there are four kinds of concords, viz:—1st, between the article and noun; as, *el monte*, the mount; *las montañas*, the mountains: 2d, between the noun and the adjective; as, *soldado valeroso*, a valiant soldier; *tropas valerosas*, valiant troops: 3d, between the antecedent and the relative; as, *la carta que yo le escribí. y la cual vmd. no quiso recibir*, the letter I wrote to you, and which you did not wish to receive: 4th, between the subject and the verb; as, *yo escribo*, I write; *ellos saltan*, they leap.

Government is that power which one word has over another, in directing its mood, tense, or case; as, *te amaré*, I shall love thee. Here, *amaré* is an active transitive verb, governing the pronoun in the objective case.

The different kinds of words of which the Spanish language is composed, being shown and defined, as many rules, notes, and observations, as are required to produce a correct agreement, and right arrangement in a sentence, will now be laid down. But as theory alone cannot perfect us in any art or science whatever, it would be impossible that rules alone could enable us to form a correct sentence. Persuaded of this truth, the author has not only illustrated the *rules*, *notes*, and *observations*, by a great many examples, but he has also placed under every one of them, a course of *practical exercise*, which, together with the rules, will, it is hoped, teach at once, both how to *speak* and *write* the Spanish language with accuracy and precision.

An explanation of some marks used in the course of the exercises.

This horizontal line, ——— which is to be found under some English words, implies that they are spelled in the same manner in Spanish, with this exception, that a soft *t*, must be changed into c, and that the *s* is never to be doubled.

When a parenthesis ( ) encloses two or more words, the words above or below, are equivalent to the whole enclosure.

Words having this mark † underneath, are not to be translated in Spanish.

These figures, 1, 2, 3, &c. which are to be found at the end of English words, show in what order they must be placed in Spanish.

EXERCISES.

The sun is brilliant. The ox ploughed the land.
*sol es brillante. buei aró tierra.**
The sailors† bent the sails. The bee stung the
marinero amarraron vela abeja picó
girl. The nightingale sings delightfully.
muchacha. ruiseñor canta deliciosamente.
The writing master made an excellent pen.
(maestro de escribir) hizo una escelente pluma.
The zephyrs were delightful. The clouds covered the
céfiros eran deliciosos. nube cubrian
sun, and the day was enveloped in the darkness
sol y dia estaba envuelto obscuridad
of night. She stood motionless admiring the
(de la) noche. ella estaba (sin movimiento) admirando
beauties of the fields. The Spanish[2] language[1] is
hermosura de campo. Española léngua se
called the language of the gods.
llama dios.

(*Note* 1.) The valour of the General was great. The
valor ——— fué grande.
success of the army was unexpected. They went
acierto egército era inesperado. ellos fueron
to the temple, and there they saw the relics of the
templo, allí † vierón, reliquias
martyr. He sent the culprit to the king.
mártir. él embió reo rei.

* For a perfect knowledge of the gender of nouns, the student is referred to pages 58, 59, &c. particularly to page 59, rule 2.

† For the formation of the plural of nouns, we refer the student to pages 64, and 65.

(*Note* 2.) His virtue raised[2] him[1] to the high station
su virtud levantó le alta situacion
which he now occupies. The eagle flew through
que él ahora ocupa. águila voló por
the liquid air. The bird sang on the tree. The mis-
líquido aire. ave cantó en árbol. a-
tress reprimanded the servant. The hunger of the
ma reprehendió al criado. hambre
besieged made[2] them[1] surrender.
sitiados hizo les rendir.

USE OF THE ARTICLE.

RULE II.

Nouns taken in a general sense, or used in their most unlimited acceptation, are always preceded by the article;* as, "*La industria de los Americanos es mucha,*" the industry of the Americans is great. "*La virtud*

* We have, in the course of our instruction, perceived that some persons have been led into great mistakes for the want of a proper knowledge of this rule. To obviate this as much as possible, we shall make the following observations, which, we trust, will render it perfectly intelligible.

When we speak of "*nouns taken in a general sense,*" or, "*used in their most unlimited acceptation,*" we mean that we speak of the *whole* of an object, or a class of objects, without reference to any of its parts. Thus, for instance, if we say, "the earth is round," we have relation to no particular part of this object; we only say, that as a whole it is round. Did we not refer to the whole planet, it would be impossible to say it was round; for, some parts of it are square, others angular, &c. Again, if we say, "men are bad," we mean, that men, taken as a body, are bad, because the aggregate of their goodness is more than counterbalanced by that of their wickedness.

debe ser amada, y el vicio aborrecido," virtue ought to be loved, and vice hated.

Speaking of the sun as a whole, we say, "the sun is bright;" in the same manner, "the north wind is cold;" "vice is hateful;" "knowledge and wisdom are the support of liberty;" "cloth is used for men's garments;" "wheat in America is abundant," "it came from heaven," &c.

It is necessary to observe, that a whole, is, sometimes, divided into parts, and any one of these parts, may be taken as a whole. We observed, for instance, that in saying, "men are bad," *men* constituted a whole. Now, we also say, that this *whole*, or any other *whole*, may be divided into many classes, each constituting a whole. For example, if we say, "good men are rare, but bad men abundant," we divide men into two classes, each of which constitutes a whole. After the same manner, we say, "learned men;" "wise men;" "shrewd men;" "bad land;" "good land," &c. In all these instances, therefore, it is plain, that, according to the above rule, the article must be employed in Spanish.

On the other hand, many of the preceding sentences might have been taken in a limited sense. Had we said, "we shall not have sun to-day," we should have had no relation to the whole body of the sun, but to that part turned towards us only; and, therefore, the article in Spanish would not have been employed. In one of the above exercises, we say, "printers make use of moveable characters." The word *printers*, in this sentence, is taken in a general sense; because *all* printers are here supposed to constitute a body, and we have reference to the whole of this body; taking, at the same time, for granted, that some of them may use other characters than those which are moveable; in the same manner as when speaking of the earth, we said that some parts of it were angular, &c. But the noun *characters* is, in this sentence, taken in a limited sense, and it cannot be used in any other. For, the meaning is, and must be, that printers make use of some of those characters, which constitute the whole. It being obvious, that the whole of the moveable characters in existence are not, nor they cannot, be used at once; and we must, therefore, necessarily have reference to that part of the whole which printers use.

and *seasons;* but if the *empires*, *kingdoms*, *countries*, or *provinces*, be preceded by a preposition, or bear the name of their capitals, the article is not used; for example, "La Alemania, y la Inglaterra *tienen gran comercio* con Estados Unidos;" *Germany* and *England* have great commerce with the United States. "*El clima* de Francia *aprueba á muchos;*" the climate of France agrees with many.

Note 1. *China*, *Brazil*, *Japan*, *Ferrol*, *Havana*, and *Coruña:*—all those nations considered very remote:—and all personified places, take always the article, whether they be preceded or not by a preposition; or whether the capitals bear or not the name of the *kingdoms*, *provinces*, &c. as, "*El vino* de la China;" he came from *China*. "*Los naturales* de la Persia *son hermosos;*" the natives *of Persia* are beautiful. "*Los ojos* de la Europa *estan sobre mí, dijo Bonaparte á Escoiquiz;*" the eyes *of Europe* are upon me, said Bonaparte to Escoiquiz.

EXERCISES.

France and Italy abound in vineyards. The United
Francia Italia abundan viña Estados
States are as populous as Spain. The world is
Unidos son tan populosos como España mundo (está
divided into four* parts; viz: Europe, Asia, Africa,
dividido) en parte (á saber) Europa —— ——
and America. Tagus, Duero, Ebro, and Guadalquivir,
—— *Tajo* —— —— ——
are the four largest[2] rivers[1] that water Spain. North
son mayores rio que riegan Norte
South, East and West are the four principal[2] points[1] of
Sud Este Oeste son cardinales punto

* For the cardinal or ordinal numbers, see pages 72, 73, &c.

the compass. The trade[2] winds[1] always blow from
aguja generales viento siempre soplan de
East to West. America (is bounded on the North by)
confina por el Norte con
the Frozen[2] Ocean[1], on the West, by the Pacific, on
Helado Oceano por con Pacífico por
the South, by the Southern, and on the East, by the
con meridional por con
Atlantic. Winter, Spring, Summer, and Autumn
Atlántico Invierno Primavera Verano Otoño
are the four seasons of the year. Parnassus, Pindus,
son estacion año Parnaso Pindo
and Helicon, are the favourite[2] mountains[1] of the poets.
——— *son predilectos monte poeta.*
Do* you[2] intend[1] to stay long in Prussia?
† *vmd. intenta (estar mucho tiempo) Prusia*
(*Note* 1.) England defended Spain against the at-
Inglaterra defendió contra a-
tacks of France. The eyes of the United[2] States[1]
taque Francia ojo unidos estados
watched the movements of England. Naples is a
observaban movimiento Inglaterra Nápoles es un
delightful[2] country.[1] Havana is a very[2] unhealthy[3]
delicioso país ——— es un mui (mal sano)
place[1] for foreigners. A great quantity of rum
país para estrangero. † *gran cantidad ron*
formerly[2] came[1] from Brazil to Baltimore, but
antiguamente venia de —— ——— pero
now this article (is supplied) by New England. The
ahora este artículo se suple por nueva

*The verb *to do*, when used to ask a question, or to express a negation, is never translated in Spanish.

best and the handsomest silk pocket
mejores † *(mas hermosos) (pañuelos de faltriquera*
handkerchiefs (are imported) from China.
de seda) *se importan de*

RULE IV.

The definite article, or the preposition *por*, is to be placed before nouns of *measure*, *weight*, *bulk*, *time*, and *number*, when they are preceded by the price; as, "*Compró la historia de Roma á tres pesos el* tomo, or por tomo," he bought the history of Rome at three dollars *a volume*. "*El azafran se vende á diez y seis pesos* la libra, or por libra," saffron sells at sixteen dollars *a pound*.

EXERCISES.

Good[3] Madeira[2] wine[1] sells at five dollars a gallon,
bueno Madera (vino de) (se vende á) peso galon
wheat at (a dollar and fifty cents) a bushel, and flour
trigo á peso y medio fanega harina
at seven dollars a barrel. Superfine[2] cloth[1] can be
barril superfino paño (se puede
bought in Baltimore, at ten dollars a yard, and the
comprar) á vara
best Canton[2] crape[1] at fifteen dollars and (thirty-
mejor ——— (crespon de) á
seven and a half cents*) a piece. He took lessons (on
tres reales pieza † tomó leccion de

* In New Spain, the money is counted by *pesos*, *reales*, and *medio reales;* thus: a *peso*, dollar, is divided into *cuatro pesetas megicanas*, four quarters of a dollar; every *peseta* into *dos reales*, two rials; and every rial into *dos medios*, two halves. Copper coin, or lower than a *medio*, is not known there. The South American coin, is

omitted; as, "*Franceses, Portugueses, Ingleses, y Africanos, todos son hombres,*" French, Portuguese, English, and Africans, are all men.

CORROBORATION.

La critica, *la* prudencia, *la* gravedad y *la* majestad son á manera de compañeras inseparables del juicio: y *la* elevacion, *la* invencion, *el* entusiásmo y *la* sutileza son casi otros tantos ramos de la agudeza.

JUAN FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.

Criticism, prudence, gravity and majesty, are like the inseparable companions of judgment, and the elevation of soul, invention, enthusiasm and acuteness, the concomitants of wit.

JUAN FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.

EXERCISES.

Temperance, modesty, and prudence, are virtues
templanza modestia prudencia son virtud
essential to the character of an accomplished youth.
essencial carácter (jóven bien educado.)
Thus fell the Roman[2] empire[1], and involved in its
así cayó Romano imperio envolvió sus
ruins, the arts and sciences. (No body) (is ignorant of)
ruina arte ciencia nadie ignora
the prudence, wisdom, and valour of Washington.
prudencia, sabiduría, valor

(*Note* 1.) Women, children, (old men) flocks, huts,
muger niño anciano rebaño cabaña
houses, palaces, (all were swallowed up) by the waves
casa palacio todo fué sumergido por ola
of the sea.
mar.

RULE VI.

The article is placed before the days of the week, and before numerals, denoting either the day of the

month, or the hour of the day; as, "*El mártes,*" Tuesday. "*El domingo,*" Sunday. "*El cuatro de Julio, á las once de la mañana,*" the fourth of July, at eleven o'clock in the morning.- "*Son las dos ménos cuarto,*" it is a quarter before two. "*Son las cuatro y diez minutos,*" it is ten minutes after four.

Note 1. The article is never placed before the dates; and instead of ordinal, we use cardinal numbers, except in the first day of the month; as, "*Mahon, 23 de Enero, de* 1822," Mahon, 23d January, 1822. "*Baltimore* 1° *de Julio de* 1824;" Baltimore, July 1*st*, 1824.

CORROBORATIONS.

Estando así díjome: tú mozo, ¿has comido? No, señor, dige yo, que no eran dadas *las ocho,* cuando con vuestra merced encontré.

DIEGO HURTADO DE MENDOZA.

Being in this situation, he said, tell me, young man, hast thou dined? No, sir, I replied, for it was not yet eight o'clock *when I met with you.*

DIEGO HURTADO DE MENDOZA.

En Bolonia, á *ventidos* de Octubre de 1777. Mui Señor mio y mi dueño:* recibí la mui estimada de vmd. con fecha de *diez y ocho* del pasado. JOSÉ DE ISLA.

Bolonia, October 22*d*, 1777. *My dear sir, I received your favour, dated the* eighteenth *of the last month.* JOSÉ DE ISLA.

EXERCISES.

On the twenty-third of March, (at thirty minutes
† *Marzo á las tres*
after three o'clock) in the afternoon, (it will be sold)
y† treinta minutos de tarde se venderá
at auction. On the twenty-eighth of February, the
en almoneda. *Febrero*

* *Dueño*, master; is an expression of regard often used after the *Mui Señor mio.*

† Literally, at *the three and thirty minutes.* All other sentences of this kind, must be translated in the same manner.

sun rises in Baltimore, at thirty-four[3] minutes[4] before[2]
sol sale — *ménos*
seven[1], and (it sets) at thirty-four[3] minutes[2] after five.[1]
se pone *y*
They entered happily into Barcelona, at about
† *entráron felizmente en* — *(á cosa de)*
half[3] after[2] three[1] in the afternoon. Sunday is a day
media y de tarde domingo es un dia
which we (ought to) consecrate to our Lord. He went
que † debemos consagrar á nuestro Señor † fué
thither on Saturday, and he (will return) on Thursday,
allí † Sábado † volverá † jueves
or Friday. Should you come this way next[3]
viernes si vmd. pasare por aquí (que viene)
Monday[1] or Tuesday[2] (call in) to (see me.)
lúnes mártes entre á verme

(*Note* 1.) Dantzic, first September, one thousand,
Dancique Setiembre
seven hundred and twenty-one. New-York, seventh
Nueva
of December, eighteen hundred and sixteen. (It is with
Diciembre con
great pleasure that I reply) to your favours of the first
mucho gusto contesto á sus apreciada
and tenth of March.
Marzo

RULE VII.

The article is placed before *Señor-a-ito-ita*, and before their plurals, when they are used in the third person, but never in the second; as, "*El Senor Montejo,*" Mr. Montejo. "*La Senora Gimenez dijo;*" Mrs. Gimenez said.

remember to have seen this face? One of my slaves
da vmd. de) haber visto esta cara uno de mis esclavo
(said to me) sir, (look to yourself.)
me dijo señor mire por sí.

(*Note* 1 & 2.) The words of a veteran[2] soldier[1] to Mar-
palabra un veterano soldado á Ma-
shal Ney, induced[2] him[1] to (seek for) the comforts
riscal —— indugéron le á buscar consuelo
of religion. Father Feijoo wrote on every
—— padre —— escribió en (todo género de
subject. King Ferdinand is the son of Charles the
materias.) rei Fernando es † de Cárlos †
Fourth. Father Isla translated (a great many) French[2]
—— tradujo muchas Francesa
works.[1] Doctor Rush distinguished[2] himself[1] in the
obra. —— —— distinguió se en
yellow[2] fever[1] which prevailed in Philadelphia in the
amarilla fiebre que reinó en Filadelfia en
year one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three: his
año † su
panegyric was written by Doctor Ramsay. General
panegirico fué escrito por —— —— ——
Harrison forced the British[2] and Indians to
—— hizo (á los Británicos) (á los Indios) †
retire[1] from before Fort Meigs.
salir de (delante del) fuerte ——

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

RULE VIII.

The article is not placed before those nouns, which, contrary to the preceding rules, are taken in a *limited*, *definite*, or *partitive* sense. When a noun is taken in

this sense, the words *some* or *any* might be supplied without injuring the meaning; as, "Maryland produces *excellent flour*," that is, some excellent flour; *El Maryland produce* harina escelente. "Has not chemistry made *rapid advances?*" that is, any or some rapid advances; *¿No ha hecho la química* rápidos adelantamientos?

Note. 1. *Some*, may be translated by *alguno-a*, in the singular, and by *algunos-as*, *unos-as*, in the plural; as, "*Tiene* algun *crédito*," he has *some* credit. "*Le hizo* unas *promesas*," he made him *some* promises.

Note 2. *Some*, before a singular noun, which means something to eat, or drink, is generally expressed by *un poco de;* as, "*Tráigame* un poco de *agua*," bring me *some* water.

Note 3. *Any*, interrogatively used, before a singular noun, which expresses something to eat, or drink, is generally suppressed entirely; as, "*¿Hai vino en la botella?*" is there *any* wine in the bottle? Should *any* precede any other kind of nouns, it may be either suppressed entirely, or expressed like *some;* as, "*¿Tiene vmd.* algunos *libros*," or, *tiene vmd. libros?* have you *any* books?

CORROBORATIONS.

Es abundante (España) en *oro*, *plata*, *azogue*, *hierro*, *piedras*, *aguas*, *minerales*, *ganados* de escelentes calidades y *pescas* tan abundantes como deliciosas.

JOSÉ CADALSO.

Spain abounds in gold, silver, quicksilver, iron, stones, water, minerals, cattle of excellent quality, and fisheries as abundant as they are delicious.

JOSÉ CADALSO.

Los Catalanes son los pueblos mas industriosos de España *Manufacturas*, *pescas*, *navegacion*, *comercio*, son *cosas* apénas conocidas en otras provincias de la península, respecto de los Catalanes.

JOSÉ CADALSO.

The Catalans are the most industrious people in Spain. Manufactures, fisheries, navigation, commerce, are scarcely known in other provinces of the peninsula, when compared with the Catalans.

JOSÉ CADALSO.

EXERCISES.

(Independently of) gold, silver, quick-silver, lead
ademas de oro plata azogue plomo
and copper, Mexico produces: sugar, cotton, pepper,
cobre Mégico produce azúcar algodon pimienta
cocoa, wheat, and (a great many) other commodities,
cacao trigo muchas otras comodidad
for the comfort of man. The world abounds in snares,
para ausilio mundo abunda en lazo
difficulties, and dangers. (There are) authors in
dificultad peligro hai autor
whose writings we discover more rhetoric than elo-
cuyos escrito † descubrimos mas retórica que elo-
quence.
cuencia.

(*Note* 1.) Without reckoning* some rials that I had
sin contar real que † habia
received from my uncle. I had some idea last
recibido de mi tio † tenia —— (la semana
week of going to France.
pasada) de ir Francia.

(*Note* 2.) The Doctor attributed his indisposition to
—— atribuyó su —— á
some (roast meat) which (he had eaten.) (It is requisite)
asado que † habia comido. es menester
to rub the bruises with some vinegar.
† frotar cardenal con vinagre.

(*Note* 3.) (Has he bought) any chairs? Is there any
ha comprado silla hai

*It is a general rule, without any exception, that when the English present participle is preceded by a preposition, it must always be translated in Spanish by the infinitive.

York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore, are three famous
York Filadelfia ——— son famosa
cities. In July and August, the springs of Bedford and
en Julio Agosto fuente ———
Saratoga are much frequented. December, January,
——— son mui frucuentadas Diciembre Enero
and February, are three very[2] severe[3] months,[1] in the
Febrero son mui severos mes en
Northern[2] States[1] of America.
Septentrionales estado ———

(*Note* 1.) The Augustines, the Chrysostomes, and
Augustino Crisóstomo
the Basils, showed how human[2] eloquence[1]
Basilio (hicieron ver) como humana elocuencia
(could be made) subservient to the preaching of re-
podia ser servicial predicaciones re-
vealed[2] truths.[1] Garcilaso and Vega (will always be)
veladas verdad. ——— ——— siempre serán
the delight of the Spaniards.
deleite Español.

(*Note* 2.) (No body) (ought to) excite commotions in
nadie debe escitar conmocion
the house of those who live peacefully. He took
casa los que viven (con tranquilidad) llevó
the disconsolate orphan to the house of his father, and
desconsolado huérfano á casa su padre
there he treated[2] him[1] with the tenderness of an affec-
allí ỉ trató le con ternura cari-
tionate[2] parent.[1]
ñosa madre.

(*Note* 3.) (It is better) (to be loved) with respect
vale mas ser amado con respeto

than with tenderness. (We ought to) suffer with pa-
que ternura debemos sufrir pa-
tience the inconveniences of this life. (It is not) a
ciencia incomodidad esta vida. no es †
great merit to read with propriety, but a great defect
gran mérito † *leer propiedad pero* † *gran defecto*
(to do it) incorrectly.
leer incorrectamente.

RULE X.

The article never precedes nouns in apposition;* as, "La ciudad *de Washington*, capital *de los Estados Unidos*, asiento *del gobierno*, *y* residencia *del Presidente;*" *the* City of Washington, *the capital* of the United States, *the seat* of government, and *the residence* of the President. "*Salamanca recinto de Sabios;*" Salamanca, the retreat of wise men. "*Lóndres*, santuario *de las artes y de las ciencias,*" London, *the sanctuary* of the arts and sciences.

Note I. The article is never placed before a noun exhibiting a degree of consanguinity, or kindred; as, "*Alejandro era hijo de Felipe,*" Alexander was the son of Philip.

* Nouns used in apposition, are those which immediately follow the one which they qualify. Thus, for instance; "Annapolis. the capital of the state of Maryland." *Capital* is certainly a noun which immediately follows and qualifies Annapolis. *Capital*, is said, therefore, to be used in apposition. Again, saying, "Bonaparte, the slave of ambition, and the victim of his own talents;" we shall observe, that *slave* and *victim* are also used in apposition, because they immediately follow and qualify Bonaparte.

CORROBORATIONS.

Sevilla, CAPITAL del reino de Andalucia, era en aquel tiempo una parte del imperio de Marruecos. JOSÉ DE ISLA.

Seville, the capital of Andalusia, was, at that time, a part of the Moorish empire. JOSÉ DE ISLA.

O envidia, RAIZ de infinitos males, y CARCOMA de los virtudes! MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

O envy, the root of so many evils, and the destroyer of so many virtues! MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

EXERCISES.

Hope, the balm of life, sooths[2] us[1] under
Esperanza bálsamo vida suaviza nos en
every misfortune. Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles,
todo infortunio. Pablo apóstol ———
was eminent for his zeal and knowledge. Religion
era eminente por su celo sabiduría. ———
the support of adversity, adorns prosperity. God,
apoyo adversiad adorna prosperidad. Dios
the source of all greatness, and the spring of all
orígen toda grandeza manàntial
goodness, (will reward[2]) us[1] (according to) our
bondad premiará nos segun nuestros
merits.
mérito.

(*Note* 1.) I am Telemachus, the son of Ulysses, king
† *soi Telemaco hijo* ——— *rei*
of Ithaca. The Jupiter of the heathens, was the son
Itaca ——— *pagano era hijo*
of Saturn, and the father of the gods.
Saturno padre

RULE XI.

The article is never placed in Spanish, before the numeral adjective, which expresses the title of sove-

third, chapter the xxxii.; Cervántes makes a beautiful
capítulo ——— *hace un hermoso*
parallel between an injury and an affront. Mr.
paralelo entre un agravio una afrenta.
Capmany has written an excellent work, on the
——— *ha escríto una escelente obra sobre la*
philosophy of eloquence, entitled: "The philosophy
filosofía de elocuencia intitulada
of eloquence." The life of Cervántes is found (at the)
vida ——— *se halla al*
beginning of his best work, entitled: "The life of
principio su mejor obra intitulada
Don Quijote.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

The peace of society depends on justice; the
paz sociedad depende (de la) justicia
happiness of individuals, (on the) safe enjoyment
felicidad individuo del pacífico goce
of all their possessions. Ignorance is the mother of
todas sus posesion. Ignorancia es madre
admiration, error, and superstition. Truth is the bond
——— —— ——— *verdad es vínculo*
of union, and the basis of human[2] happiness;[1] without
—— *base humana sin*
it (there is no) confidence in friendship, (and no)
ella no hai confianza en amistad ni
security in promises. The ambassador received, by the
seguridad promesa. embajador recibió por
courier of the queen, the letters from the minister of
correo reina carta de ministro

the king, to the emperor of the East. Abraham saw
rei emperador oriente. ——— vio*
the ram entangled by the horns, among the brambles
carnero enredado por asta entre abrojo
on the mount. The anchorites in the deserts, are
en monte. anacoreta desierto estan
free from the effects of the vexations of the world. The
libres de efecto vecsacion mundo.
love of the subjects, and the efforts of the nations, are
amor vasallo esfuerzo ——— son
the succours of the kings of the earth, in the
socorro rei tierra*
disturbances of the state. The Israelites whom Moses
disturbio estado. Israelitas que Moises
delivered from the bondage of the king of the Egyptians,
sacó de servidumbre Egipcio
were six hundred thousand, without counting the
fueron sin contar
(old men,) the women, and the children. Peace,
ancianos muger niño. paz
of all worldly blessings, is the most valuable.
(de todas las felicidades mundanas) es mas apreciable.
(Are not) discourse, manhood, learning, gentleness,
no son discurso virilidad conocimiento suavidad
virtue, and liberality, the spice and salt that
liberalidad especia sal que
season a man?
sazonan al hombre

*To form the plural of nouns ending in i, see page 65.

USE OF THE NEUTER ARTICLE *LO*.*

RULE XII.

Lo, is placed before those adjectives used as substantives, to which we can prefix *that which*, or *what;* as, "*Lo bueno*," the good, or that which, or what is good. "*Pocos pueden prever* lo futuro;" few can foresee *the future.* "*Se deleita en* lo rojo;" he delights in the *red*, i. e. in *what is red.*

Note I. Adjectives which admit to be prefixed to them, *those who are*, take the plural of the indefinite article, agreeing with the noun understood; as, "*Los ricos*," the rich, that is, *those who are* rich. "Los potentes y los grandes, *pocas veces* piensan, *que su potestad y poder*, puede *perecer;*" *the powerful and the great*, seldom think, that their power and greatness can perish.

CORROBORATIONS.

¡Rara presuncion del hombre querer averiguar lo que está por venir! Pestañea en *lo* pasado, anda á tientas en *lo* presente y juzga tener ójos para *lo* futuro. GERÓNIMO FEIJÓO.

Rare presumption of man, to be anxious to pry into the regions of futurity! He takes an indistinct view of the present, examines with uncertainty the past, and imagines himself possessed of eyes for the future. GERÓNIMO FEIJÓO.

De las pasiones y dolencias del ánimo solo la filosofía es la medicina, porque con esta y por esta se puede conocer cual es *lo* bueno y *lo* malo, cual *lo* justo y *lo* injusto, que es *lo* que debemos elegir y *lo* que debemos huir. ANTONIO DE CAPMANY Y MONTPALAU.

Philosophy is the only remedy for the passions and infirmities of the mind. It is with this, and by this alone, that we can distinguish what is good or bad, what is just or unjust, what we must choose or what we must reject. ANTONIO DE CAPMANY Y MONTPALAU.

* See Etymology, pages 70 and 71.

OF THE INDEFINITE ENGLISH ARTICLE *A*,

An equivalent to the Spanish Adjective uno-a-os-as.

The indefinite article is suppressed in Spanish, in the following instances:

(*Note* 1.) When a verb is placed between two nouns, one of which denotes the country, dignity, profession, employment, &c. of the other; as, "I am a Spaniard," *soi Español.* "The duke is *a* colonel," *el duque es coronel.*

2. When nouns are used in apposition; as, "Baltimore, *a* city of the United States," *Baltimore ciudad de los Estados Unidos.*

3. When this article means *some*, and precedes a singular noun; as, "I had *an* inclination," i. e. "some inclination of seeing him," *tenia gana de verle.* "She has *a* memory," *ella tiene memoria.*

4. In the title page of a book; as, "A new grammar," *gramática nueva.* "A selection of speeches," *seleccion de razonamientos.*

5. Before the words *cien* or *ciento*, a hundred; *mil*, *a* thousand; but never before *millon*, million: as, "Cien *caballos los embistiéron*," they were attacked by *a hundred* horses. "Mil *soldados fuéron los que tomáron el castillo*," it was a thousand soldiers that took the castle. "*Mucho mal, y bien pueden hacer* un millon *de hombres*," much harm and much good may be done by *a million* of men.

6. Half, *medio-a*, is never preceded, nor followed by the article in Spanish; as, "Three dozen and *a* half," *tres docenas y media.* "Half *a* dollar," *medio peso.*

7. The article is generally omitted in Spanish, before the integer which precedes the half, if it contain but one unit; as, "*A* pound and *a* half," *libra y media.*

8. The indefinite is never translated in ejaculations, nor when placed between the substantive and adjective; as, "What *a* pity!" *¡que lástima!* "So fine *a* day," *tan hermoso dia.*

9. The phrases, *to have*, or *to make* a *beginning*, *to put*, or *to have* an *end*, *to have* a *care*, and the like, lose the indefinite, when they are to be rendered in Spanish; as, "We put an end to the supper before he came," *dímos fin á la cena, ántes que viniese.*

10. In all other cases in which the article is used in English, it is also used in Spanish.

11. Before nouns beginning with *a* or *ha* accented, *un*, and not *una* is used; as, "*un alma*," a soul; "*un águila*," an eagle.

EXERCISES.

(*Note* 1.) West, a native of America, was a great
—— *natural* ——— *era gran*
painter. Vieira, a Spanish[2] orator,[1] was entirely
pintor. —— *Español orador era enteramente*
master of the affections of his audience. Benjamin
dueño afectos sus oyentes ———
Franklin, a native of the United[2] States,[1] was a
——— *natural Unidos Estados era*
consummate[2] philosopher,[1] and an ardent[2] lover[1] of
consumado filósofo ardiente amante
his country.
su patria.

(*Note* 2.) Before you is the Po, a river broader
(delante de) vosotros esta — *rio (mas ancho)*

and more rapid than the Rhone. Behold Rome, a
mas rápido que Ródano. ved Roma
city in which the greatest liberty, (as well as) the
ciudad (en la cual) mayor libertad como tambien
greatest tyranny has existed. France, a beautiful
mayor tiranía ha ecsistido. Francia hermoso
country in Europe, abounds in (every thing.)
pais de Europa abunda en todo

(*Note* 3.) All poets have taken an opportunity to
(todos los poetas) han tomado ocasion de
give long[2] descriptions[1] of the night. I had a mind to
dar largas ——— noche. † tenia gana de
ask her if she had an idea of (going out.) He had
pedir le si † tenia —— de salir † tenia
at first an objection to say the truth, but (at
al principio reparo en decir verdad pero (por
last) he owned[2] it.[1]
último) † confesó la.

(*Note* 4.) An introduction to the Greek[3] language.[1]
——— á Griega lengua.
A treatise on Arithmetic. A sketch of the manners
tratado de aritmética. bosquejo costumbres
of all nations. A dictionary of the (Spanish and
todas ——— diccionario lenguas
English languages.)
Española é Inglesa.

(*Note* 5.) Baltimore has near a hundred thousand
tiene (cerca de)
inhabitants. A hundred altars in her temple smoke.
habitante. cien —— su templo humean.
Four times twenty-five make a hundred. (They say)
vez hacen ciento, se dice

beaten each other, they put an end to the
apaleado) (el uno al otro) † *pusiéron* *fin* *á*
quarrel.
riña.

(*Note* 9.) (All things) have had a beginning, and
todo *ha* *tenido* *principio*
they (will have) an end. (And why) do you[2] make[1] a
todo *tendrá* *fin* *y porque* *vmd.* *hace*
noise?
ruido.

(*Note* 10.) Calypso saw a rudder and a mast, the
——— *vió* *timon* *mastil*
remnants of a vessel (which had just been wrecked.)
restos *navio* *que acababa de naufragar*
A good[2] man[1] never can be miserable, nor a
bueno *nunca* *(puede ser)* *desdichado* *ni*
wicked[2] man[1] happy. A good general is beloved by
malo *dichoso.* *buen* ——— *es* *amado* *de*
his soldiers.
sus soldado.

(*Note* 11.) A pure[2] and crystalline[3] water,[1] runs
pura *cristalina* *agua* *corre*
through those meadows. (There was) in that
por *aquellos* *prado.* *habia* *en* *aquella*
fortress, a terrible[2] hunger.[1] Noah built an ark.
fortaleza ——— *hambre.* *Noé construyó* *arca.*

USE OF THE NOUN.*

RULE XIII.

The Spanish language has not the possessive case; therefore, a king's palace, must be rendered by, "*El*

*See Etymology, page 56.

palacio de un rei," the palace of a king; man's nature, by. "*La naturaleza del hombre,*" the nature of man; and in the same manner, must all other sentences of this kind be translated.

Note 1. When two nouns come together in English, the first serving as an adjective for the second; their order is reversed in Spanish, and between them, the preposition *de*, [of,] is placed; as, "El camino de Lóndres *es hermoso;*" *the London road* (i. e.) the road of London) is beautiful. "*Las* obras de agua de Filadelfia *son magníficas*;" the *water works* of Philadelphia are magnificent.

Note 2. The phrases, "A book of my brother's," "A soldier of the king's," &c. are always translated thus: One of the books of my brother, *uno de los libros de mi hermano.* One of the soldiers of the king, *uno de los soldados del rei*, &c.

Note 3. In English, sometimes, by means of the sign, ('s) the words *house*, *palace*, *store*, &c. are understood. In Spanish, they must always be expressed; as, "He went to the physician's;" that is, he went to the house of the physician; *fué á casa del médico.* "He comes from his sister's;" that is, his sister's residence; *viene de la residencia de su hermana.*

CORROBORATIONS.

No se conocia ménos LA GRANDEZA *de Montezuma* en otras dos casas que ocupaba su Armeria. ANTONIO DE SOLIS.	*Montezuma's greatness was not less known by other two houses in which he kept his armory.* ANTONIO DE SOLIS.
Son célebres LAS AGUAS minerales *de Béjar.* LAS AGUAS tibias *de Ledesma* las han esperimentado muchos con grande beneficio. FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.	*The Bejar mineral waters are celebrated. The Ledesma warm-springs have been tried by many, and have proved to be very beneficial.* FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.
Suma era la Alegría que llevaba consigo Sancho, viéndose á su parecer en privanza con la Duquesa, porque se le figuraba que habia de hallar en su casa lo que en *la Casa de* DON DIEGO y en *la de* BASILIO. MIGUEL DE CERVÁNTES.	*Great was the joy of Sancho, finding himself, in his opinion, under the protection of the Duchess. He figured to himself, he would find at her house, what he had found at Don Diego's, and at Basil's.* MIGUEL DE CERVÁNTES.

EXERCISES.

Diana's anger was the cause of Acteon's death, and
——— *colera fué causa* ——— *muerte*
Helen's beauty, of Troy's destruction. Man's sen-
Helena hermosura Troya ——— *sen-*
sual[2] pleasures[1] are enemies to* reason and to virtue.
suales placer son enemigo de razon virtud.

(*Note* 1.) In Market-street, (there is) a sign which
mercado calle hai tablilla que
says, "Door to Wealth." I am a friend to diligent[2]
dice puerta riqueza. soi amigo diligentes
scholars;[1] and an enemy to (those who are idle.)
discípulos enemigo los holgazanes
Sesostris was seated on an ivory throne, with a
——— *estaba sentado en marfil trono*
golden sceptre in his hand.
oro cetro la mano.

(*Note* 2.) A soldier of the king's was
soldado rei (fué pasado por las
shot (for having committed) treason. We walk-
armas) por haber hecho traicion. † *(nos pasea-*
ed in the queen's garden, and then went to see a
mos reina jardin despuès fuimos á ver
garden of the emperor's.
emperador.

(*Note* 3.) Go to the surgeon's. He went into the
ve cirujano. † *fué en*
first notary's. (Going out) of the (pastry cook's)
primer notario. al salir pastelero

* This preposition, when used as above to denote possession, is always translated in Spanish by *de*.

word *rei*, king, would form an exception to this rule; for it always is qualified by the preposition *de*, and the name of the country, but never by the adjective. We may say, "*El rei de Inglaterra*," but never, "*El rei Ingles*," the English king.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.

Adjectives, or participles used as adjectives, agree in gender, number, and case, with the substantives to which they belong; as, "*Este es el siglo de* invenciones estupendas," this is the age of *wonderful inventions*. "*Los* efectos *de los* grandes descùbrimientos *de Colon son* incalculables," the *effects* of the *great discoveries* of Columbus, are *incalculable*. "*Libro malo*," bad book. "*Obra buena*," good work. "Bien *escrito*," well written.

Note 1. Two or more nouns in the singular, require an adjective in the plural. If the nouns vary in gender, the adjective must be in the masculine; as, "Mercurio y Júpiter *son planetas magnificos*," *Mercury* and *Jupiter* are magnificent planets. "*La prudencia y el juicio, son* necesarios *á todo hombre*," prudence and judgment, are *necessary* to every man.

Note 2. An adjective preceding, or following two or more plural nouns, agrees with the one nearest to it; as, "*El posee* efectos *y* tierras preciosas," or, "*El posee* preciosos efectos *y* tierras," he possesses *precious effects* and *lands*.

Note 3. An adjective, preceding two or more nouns, even if they differ in person or gender, agrees with that substantive which is next to it, of whatever gender or person it be; as, "El desconsolado hermano y hermanas *me llenáron de tristeza*," *the disconsolate brother and sisters* filled me with sadness. This unnatural agreement does not take place when a verb intervenes between the substantive and adjective, or when the substantives are preceded by a participial adjective; thus we would say, "Desconsolados estan el hermano y las hermanas," *the brother and sisters are*

disconsolate. "Llegados Juan y Maria *nos fuimos,*" *John and Mary having arrived,* we departed.

Note 4. It is an observation of the Spanish Academy, that when an adjective is to agree with two nouns differing in person and gender, it would be better for the harmony of the language, to use a different adjective of a similar import for every noun, or an adjective of one termination in the plural, for both. Thus, for instance, instead of saying, "Los caudales y hacienda eran cuantiosos," *the capital and the state were considerable,* we should say, "Los caudales y hacienda eran grandes," *the capital and state were large,* or "Los caudales eran cuantiosos, la hacienda mucha," *the capital was large, and the state considerable.* But this rule does not take place when the adjective immediately precedes the substantive, as in the second example of note 3.

Note 5. An adjective never agrees with a title, but with the person who bears it; as, "*Su alteza está indispuesto,*" if applied to a man, and "*indispuesta,*" if to a woman, his or her highness is indisposed. "*Está vmd.* bueno," are you well, *sir,* "*Está vmd.* buena," are you well, *madam.*

Note 6. *Nada,* nothing, although feminine, always requires its adjective in the masculine; as, "Nada *es* bueno *para él,*" nothing is *good* for him.

CORROBORATIONS.

Despues de aquel *memorable* y *triste* ESTRAGO con que casi *toda* ESPAÑA quedó *asolada* y *sugeta* por los moros, GENTE *feroz* y *despiadada;* de las ruinas del IMPERIO *gótico,* no de *otra* MANERA, que de los materiales y pertrechos de algun *grande* EDIFICIO cuando cae, *muchos* SEÑORIOS se levantaron; *pequeños* al principio, de *estrechos* TÉRMINOS y *flacas* FUERZAS.

JUAN DE MARIANA.

After those memorable and sad ravages, in consequence of which nearly all Spain was destroyed and subdued by the Moors, a ferocious and unmerciful people; from the ruins of the Gothic empire, as if from the materials and ingredients of some great edifice, when it crumbles into dust, many dominions were raised, small at first, of narrow limits, and of insignificant strength. JUAN DE MARIANA.

Así como son *convenientes* en la paz LA JUSTICIA Y LA CLEMENCIA son en la guerra el premio y el castigo.

DIEGO DE SAAVEDRA.

Justice and clemency are as necessary in peace, as reward and punishment in war.

DIEGO DE SAAVEDRA.

Era de horrible arquitectura, (aquel edificio) *negras* LAS PAREDES, LOS TECHOS Y LOS ADORNOS. ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

The architecture of that edifice was horrible. Its walls, its roofs, and its ornaments were all black.

ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

En cualquier género de estilo es mui *ridícula* LA EFECTACION Y LA INCONGRUENCIA de los términos. ANTONIO DE CAPMANY.

Affectation and incongruity in the choice of words, are ridiculous in any kind of composition.

ANTONIO DE CAPMANY.

Se ponen en vocativo las personas ó cosas cuando hablamos con ellas; v. g. "Hombre, que haces?" "donde vas muger?" en cuyo caso bien *determinados* quedan EL HOMBRE Y LA MUGER con quienes hablamos.

LA ACADEMIA ESPAÑOLA.

Those things or persons whom we address are always in the vocative case. For instance, "Man, what art thou doing?" "Where art thou going, woman?" In these instances, the man and woman with whom we speak, are sufficiently marked.

THE SPANISH ACADEMY.

EXERCISES.

The mistress was cunning, and still the maid
ama era socarron (sin embargo) criada
idle. Life everlasting is desirable. The death of
holgazan. vida eterna es deseable.
the (righteous man) is a happy[2] death.[1] He studies
justo es feliz muerte. estudia
with incredible application. The English[2] language[1] is
con increible aplicacion. Ingles lengua es
extremely[2] expressive.[1] Italian[2] music[1] is soft and
(en estremo) espresivo. Italiano música es suave

themselves[1] abandoned, and the orphans found[2] them-
se abandonado huérfano halláron se
selves[1] unprotected; the Romans being then no more,
desamparado Romano siendo entónces no mas
than the shadow of themselves.
que sombra (de sı mismos.)

(*Note* 3.) (There are) (some men who) endeavour
hai quienes procuran
(to gain) the tender friendship and will of boys, by
ganar tierno amistad voluntad muchacho por
perverse means. (He was possessed of a) good
perverso medios. era de buen
heart and disposition. The Mexican Indians had
corazon ——— Megicano Indio tenian
great boldness and swiftness in chasing ferocious
grande osadia y agilidad perseguir foroz
animals. The obscene language and phrases which
——— obsceno lenguage frase que
(are sometimes used,) shock[2] me.[1] His elegant address
á veces se usan chocan — fino presencia
and manners, charmed every body. Cesar was
costumbres encantaban (á todo el mundo.) César fue
endowed with an extraordinary capacity and talents.
dotado de † estraordinario capacidad talentos

(*Note* 4.) His eyes and mouth are beautiful. The
ojos boca son hermoso
capacity and talents of Cesar were extraordinary.
capacidad talentos César eran estraordinario.

(*Note* 5.) Is her highness at home? yes, sir, but
está su alteza en casa si señor por
she is unwell. His holiness enjoys a perfect
† está indispuesto su santidad goza de perfecta

health, (notwithstanding his old age.) His excellency
salud sin embargo de ser viejo. su escelencia
(has been pleased) to appoint his lordship com-
se sirvió † (nombrar á) su señoría (gefe de
modore.
escuadra.)

(*Note* 6.) Nothing is so impetuous as the desire of
Nada es tan impetuoso como deseo de
self-love, nor so secret as its designs. Nothing is
amor propio ni tan secreto como sus designios. es
more natural to man than the love of life and the fear
mas ——— que amor temor
of death.

OBSERVATION.

If two or more adjectives are to qualify a plural noun, they do not agree with it in number; as, "*Introduccion á las lenguas, alemana, sacsona, y griega,*" an introduction to the German, Saxon, and Greek languages In this sentence the qualifying adjectives, *alemana, sacsona, y griega*, are in the singular number, although *lenguas*, the substantive to which they belong, is in the plural. Should the adjectives be in the plural the meaning would be quite different. Thus, for instance, suppose a person wishes to describe three houses; a white, a red, and a green one; he should say: "*Descripcion de las tres casas, blanca, roja, y verde.*" For, if the number of the adjectives be changed, and he says: *Descripcion de las tres casas, blancas, rojas y verdes;* the meaning would be, that there were more houses than one of each colour. Should he alter the number of the substantive, and express himself thus: *Descripcion de la casa, blanca, roja y verde;* his meaning would then be that there was but one house, in which the three colours, white, red, and green, were blended.

CORROBORATIONS.

Es cosa digna de compasion ver hombres que emplean veinte ó treinta años en el egerci-	*It is much to be lamented, to see men employing twenty or thirty years in the study of Greek and*

cio de las lenguas *griega y Latina* para darnos despues una historia escrita con frases y centones de Platon y de Terencio.

PEDRO MONTENGON.

Latin languages, to give us afterwards a history written with phrases and scraps of Plato and Terence.

La España, bañada de dos mares *océano* y *mediterráneo*, está situada de la naturaleza en la mejor proporcion para la navegacion y el comercio.

JUAN FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.

Spain, bathed by the ocean and Mediterranean seas, is situated by nature, in the best portion of the earth for navigation and commerce.

EXERCISES.

The arrival of the Spanish[3] and English[4] ministers[1]
llegada Español é Ingles ministro
plenipotentiary[2] gave rise to many rumours. The
plenipotenciario dió orígen mucho rumor.
French[3] and Spanish[3] nations,[1] have[2] seldom[1]
francesa ——— *(rara vez)*
perfect peace and harmony. The dictionary of
perfecto paz harmonía. diccionario
the English and Latin languages, which he wrote,
lengua que el compuso
is excellent.
es escelente.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XV.

Adjectives, or adjectified participles, must be placed after the nouns to which they relate; as, "*Soldado valiente*," valiant soldier. "*Papeles escritos*," written papers.*

* The above rule is not universal. We find sometimes the participle placed before the substantive, by authors of every descrip-

LA PERSUASION *evangélica*, LA CARIDAD *apostolica*, LA ENERGÍA *profética*, y LA DIGNIDAD *oratoria*. ANTONIO DE CAPMANY.	*persuasion, the apostolical charity, the prophetical energy, and the oratorial dignity.*
Por tí el silencio de la selva umbrosa, Por tí la esquividad y apartamiento Del *solitario* MONTE me agradaba: Por tí la *verde* HIERBA, el *fresco* VIENTO El *blanco* LIRIO y *colorada* ROSA Y *dulce* PRIMAVERA deseaba. GARCILASO DE LA VEGA.	*Through thee the silence of the shaded glen,* *Through thee the horror of the lonely mountain,* *Pleased me no less than the resort of men;* *The breeze, the summer wood, and lucid fountain,* *The purple rose, white lily of the lake,* *Were sweet, for thy sweet sake.*
El *grande* ESCIPION fue testigo de la caida de Numancia. JOSÉ CADALSO.	*The great Scipio was witness o Numantia's fall.*
Tenia *hermosísimos* LÉJOS en medio de las aguas esta gran poblacion. ANTONIO DE SOLIS.	*This great city had most beautiful prospects in the middle of the waters.*
En los montes materiales son *amenas* LAS FALDAS, y *ásperas* LAS CUMBRES. El monte de la virtud tiene *desabrida* LA FALDA y *graciosa* LA EMINENCIA. GERÓNIMIO FEIJOÓ.	*The foot of the material mountains is pleasant, and the top rugged. The mount of virtue has a rugged foot, but its pinnacle is delightful.*
Muchas palabras de comedimiento y *muchos* ofrecimientos pasáron entre Don Quijote y Don Fernando. MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.	*Many polite words, and many offers, passed between Don Quixote and Don Ferdinand.*

EXERCISES.

A generous and virtuous man, is a good member
generoso virtuoso es buen miembro
of society. Nothing but vain,[3] and foolish[2] pursuits[1]
sociedad. nado sino vano malvado empeño
delights some persons. A[2] concise history, may
(contenta á) alguna persona. breve historia puede
sometimes[1] be (of more advantage) than a more
(algunas veces) ser mas ventajosa que una mas
diffused one.
estendido †

(*Note* 1.) The mild zephyrs, more powerful than the
dulce céfiro mas poderoso que
burning beams of the sun, preserved a grateful cool-
ardiente rayo conservaban grata fres-
ness. The tame oxen and the timid sheep, quitted
cura. manso buei tímido oveja abandonaran
the abundant pastures. A (very happy) death is
abundante pasto. dichosisimo es
the fruit of a (very pious) life. Mount Vernon was the
fruto piadosisimo Monte —— fué
birth-place of the immortal Washington. The expe-
orígen imortal —— ..... espe-
rienced pilot perceived (from afar,) the towering
rimentado piloto percibió de léjos empinado
summits of the mountains of Leucata.
cima monte

(*Note* 2.) The goddess and the nymphs, held their eyes
diosa ninfa tenian los ojo
fixed on the young Telemachus, so interesting (to them)
fijo sobre jóven Telemaco tan interesante les

was his history. The pleasures of life are very few.
era su placer son mui poco.
How well founded were her suspicions! The General
cuan bien fundado eran su sospecha ———
was not much experienced. When the laws are many,
era mui esperimentado. cuando lei son
they occasion confusion.
† *causan* ———

(*Notes* 3 & 4.) Many people begin to take the
mucho gente empiezan á tomar
resolution to live righteously, when they are near
——— *de vivir religiosamente cuando † estan para*
dying. Those things are certain among men, which
morir. aquellas cosas son entre que
cannot be denied without obstinacy and folly.
(no se pueden negar) sin porfia é ignorancia.
(How ugly soever a fashion may be,) (there will always
por fea que sea una moda siempre
be certain people who) will follow[2] it.[1] Ambition
habrá cierta gente que seguirá la. ———
augments the many troubles, and lessens the few
aumenta mucha pena disminuye poco
pleasures, which (are found) in the world.
placer que se hallan mundo.

ACCIDENTS OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVI.

The adjectives *bueno*, good; *malo*, bad; *primero*, first; *tercero*, third; *postrero*, last; *uno*, a, one; *alguno*, some; *ninguno*, none, no; when they are prefixed (which they generally are) to the noun, lose the *o* in the singular, but never in the plural; as, "*Un buen*

Se admira la abundancia y belleza de las cristalinas aguas de *San* ILDEFONSO.

The abundance and excellence of the crystalline waters of Saint Ildefonso, are very much admired.

JUAN FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.

EXERCISES.

In this vale of tears, we cannot expect any
valle lágrima (no podemos) esperar ninguno
other thing, but troubles and afflictions, since this is
otra cosa sino pena afliccion pues ésta es
the only inheritance, which our first parent left[2]
solo herencia que nuestro primero padre dejó
us.[1] Rasselas was confined in a private[2] palace,[1]
nos. ——— estaba detenido uno oculto palacio
with the other sons and daughters of Abyssinian
con demas hijo hija (los príncipes
royalty. For thy journey, I (shall give[2]) thee[1] some
de Abisinia.) por tu viage † daré te
money. A good government, is a great blessing.
dierno. bueno gobierno es grande dicha.
Vile creature, (wilt thou break off) thy depraved life,
vil criatura dejarás tu depravado vida
and pursue (a good one) that thy last day, (may
seguirás una de buena paraque tu postrero dia no
not be) full of misery? The success of the enterprise
esté lleno miseria acierto empresa
was entirely[2] owing[1] (to their) not having made any
se enteramente debió al no haber hecho ninguno
delay.
tardanza.

(*Note* 1.) Saint Paul repented of his sin.
Santo Pablo (se arrepintió) su pecado
My father was baptized in the parish of Saint
mi padre fué bautisado parroquia Santo

Patrick, and my mother in that of Saint Anne, but
Patricio mi madre la Santo Ana pero
they were married in the church of Saint Dominick,
† *fuéron casado iglesia Domingo*
in the parish of Saint Thomas.
parroquia Tomas.

(*Note* 2.) I went to his house more than one hundred
fui su casa mas de †
times, and I never could[2] find[3] him[1] at home. They
vez † *nunca pude hallar le en ella* †
lost a hundred companies, and every company,
perdiéron compañia cada
(was composed) of a hundred and twenty-five men.
se componia

(*Note* 3.) They manifested a great desire to go
† *manifestáron deseo de ir*
(with me.) Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with
conmigo —— uno vino con
him a great multitude with swords and clubs. Great
él multitud espada palo
rejoicing was in heaven. He is a great man,
alegría habia cielo aquel es hombre
who, like Washington, after having won the
quien como ———— (despues de haber ganado)
sovereignty, gave[2] it[1] to the people.
soberanía dió la á comunidad

OBSERVATION.

The adjectives *alguno*, some; and *ninguno*, none, or no; must always be placed before the substantive. *Alguno* is sometimes placed after the noun, but its meaning then, is like that of *ninguno*. *Ninguno*, therefore, placed before the noun, is like *alguno* placed after it. If we wish to convey the idea, that a person has no reason to do a thing, we may say, either, "*No tiene ninguna*

razon para hacerlo," or, "*No tiene razon alguna para hacerlo.*" Again; "there is no person more anxious to learn than he is;" *Ninguna persona hai, que tenga tantas ganas de aprender como él,* or "*No hai persona alguna que tenga,*" &c.

When the adjective *tercero,* third, is placed before the noun, it may, or it may not, retain its final *o.* We, therefore, say, either, "*El tercer,*" or "*el tercero dia,*" the third day.

EXERCISES.

Youth is apt to think that they do not run
(los jóvenes suelen pensar) que † † corren
any risk in this world so full of snares and
ninguno riesgo este mundo tan lleno de lazos
charms. There is* no affliction (with which we
atractivos hai (ninguno afliccion) que nos
are visited) that may not be improved to our
visita (que no podamos mejorarla para sernos
advantage. If we lay no restraint upon
ventajosa) si † (no ponemos) ninguno constreñimiento á
our lusts, no control upon our appetites and
nuestros deseos sugecion á apetitos
passions, they will hurry[2] us[1] into guilt and misery.
pasion † precipitarán nos en delito miseria
Thomas Jefferson, the third president of the United
Tomas ——— presidente
States, resides at Monticello, in the state of Virginia.
vive en ——— estado ———

* If the sentence begins by *ninguno,* the negation *no,* cannot be used; but *no* is absolutely necessary if the sentence begins by a verb; as, "*No hai ninguna afliccion,* or, *Ninguna afliccion hai.*"

† An adverb of negation, is always placed before the verb.

Lord! father of light and mercy, inspire our[2]
Señor padre luz misericordia infunde nuestro
hearts[3] with[1] an ardent desire of (loving thee.)
corazon en ardiente deseo amarte.
(There are) few men who are satisfied with their
hai pocos que esten satisfecho de su
condition. Many are the miseries of this life. So
——— *mucho miseria esta- tan*
sanguinary have been the battles in New Spain
sanguinario han sido batalla Nueva España
that they cannot (be looked at) without horror. The
que † (no pueden) mirarse sin ———
precepts of a good hope, have often
precepto buena esperanza (se han presentado
recurred in the time of need. Ingratitude and
muchas veces) tiempo necesidad. ingratitud
self-love are improper and hateful to any
(amor propio) son impropio aborrecible cualquier
class of people. Nothing is so grateful to God, as
clase gente. Nada es tan grato como
(to be) always satisfied, with what he does.
estar siempre satisfecho (de lo) que † hace.
Man's life is full of troubles. Sovereigns
está lleno trabajo. soberano
seldom read the truth, unless when they read
(rara vez) leen verdad sino cuando † leen
the maxims of the Gospel, or the axioms of Euclid.
mácsima Evangelio acsioma ———
Charles the Fourth's abdication, took place before
Cárlos ——— *(tuvo efecto)(delante de)*
the eyes of France. Hypocrites are objects of God's
ojo Francia. hypócrita son obgeto

hatred, and men's indignation. Behold him
odio ——— *(aqui teneis á aquel)*
who has been your shield in war; and in peace,
que ha sido vuestro escudo guerra
the honour, and the glory of the Roman nation.
honra gloria Romana
We experienced the same terror that we had
† *esperimentamos mismo* —— † *habiamos*
inspired at Camila's. Diligence, industry, and proper
inspirado ——— *diligencia industria propio*
improvement of time, are material[2] duties[1] of
mejoramiento son importante obligacion
youth. Haughtiness, presumption, and deceit,
jóvenes altivez presuncion engaño
commonly eat and sleep with riches. The road
(de ordinario) comen duermen riquezas. camino
to Croydon is very bad in winter. Charles the
——— *es mui malo invierno Cárlos*
Second, the son of Philip the Fourth, the grand-son of
hijo Felipe nieto
Philip the Second, left his kingdom to Philip the
dejó reino
Fifth. On the eighteenth* of February, one thousand
Febrero
four hundred and seventy-eight, the duke of Clarence
(diez y ocho) duque Clarencia
brother to king Edward the Fourth, was drowned in
Eduardo fué ahogado
a butt of (Malmsey wine.) Señora Leonarda, said one
casco Malvesía ——— ——— *dijo uno*
of the horsemen, look at this (young man.) (Ever since)
caballero mire á este mozo despues de.

* See rule vi. page 202, and *On*, page 187.

his death, Señora Leonardá had served the nectar to
su muerte ——— ——— *habia servido* ——— *á*
those men.
aquello.

OF COMPARISON.*

RULE XVII.

The words used in the Spanish language to denote comparison, are: *tan*, as, or so; *mas*, more; *ménos*, less. *Tan*, always precedes *como*, as; and *mas*, or *ménos*, always precedes *que*, than. Examples: "*El es* tan *rico* como *ella*," he is *as* rich *as* she. "*No tiene* mas *ni* ménos *edad* que *su tio*," he has neither *more* nor *less* age *than* his uncle.

Note 1. *So much*, or *as much*, is always translated by *tanto*, or *tanta*;† and, *so many*, or, *as many*, is always translated by *tantos*, or *tantas*; as, "*Los hombres no* piensan tanto como *deben*," men do not think *so much as* they should. "*Bonaparte tenia* tanta *ambicion* como *Alejandro*," Bonaparte had *as much* ambition *as* Alexander. "*Los antiguos no poseian* tantas *ventajas* como *los modernos*," the ancients did not possess *so many* advantages *as* the moderns. "*Produce este siglo* tantos *hombres grandes*, como *cualquier otro*," this age produces *as many* great men *as* any other.

Note 2. *Mas* precedes *de*, [of,] instead of *que*, [than,] when it is to be placed before *lo que*, [that which, or what‡,] and when it is placed before a noun, denoting quantity or number;§ as, "*Su*

* See Etymology, page 71.

† When *so much*, or *as much*, is before an adjective, it is translated by *tan*; as, "He is *as much*," or "he is not *so much protected* as she," *él es* tan, *ó él no es*, tan protegido *como ella*.

‡ In this kind of sentences, *that which*, or *what*, is, in English, often understood; but it must always be expressed in Spanish.

§ Whenever *no*, [not,] precedes the verb, the *que* is retained; as, "No *tengo mas* que *diez casas*," I have *not* more *than* ten houses.

EXERCISES.

The lazy* sleep more than the industrious, but
holgazanes duermen diligente pero
they do not work so much. The advantages of
† † *trabajan ventaja de*
learning, are more lasting than those of arms.
letras son duradero las arma.
Nothing is pleasanter to the mind, than the light of
nada es agradable espíritu luz
truth. (It is better) (to be) poor than ignorant,
verdad vale mas ser pobre ignorante
because science is more precious than riches.
porque ciencia es precioso riqueza
Temperance, more than medicines, is the (proper
templanza medicina es propio
means) (of curing) many diseases. If experience
medio de curar mucho enfermedad esperiencia
does not make[2] us[1] wiser, at least it makes[2] us[1]
† *hacer nos sabio (á lo ménos)* † *nos*
more circumspect. Crime sometimes is as much
circumspecto crímen (á veces) es
protected as innocence. Wheat in America, is as
protegido inocencia trigo ——— es
cheap as in Odessa. Wisdom and modesty, are as
barato Odesa sabiduría modestia son
valuable, as pride and folly are contemptible. If
apreciable orgullo locura son despreciable.
men were not† so ambitious, (they would not have) so
fueren no ambicioso no tendrian

[2] See rule xii. note 1, page 216.

† Recollect that negations precede verbs.

many enemies. Nothing is so much worth the time
(nada es de) *valor al tiempo*
and attention of (young persons,) as (the acquisition)
atencion *jóven* *el adquirir*
of knowledge and virtue. The love for our
† *conocimiento* —— *amor de nuestro*
neighbour, is as necessary in society for the happiness
prócsimo es necesario sociedad felicidad
of life, as in christianity, for eternal felicity. (There
vida en cristiandad por eterna felicidad no
is no*) rest so sweet as that which is bought
hai reposo dulce el que (se compra)
by labour. Some men are not more than what
(con el trabajo) alguno son (lo que)
they appear; but others, appear more than what they
† *parecen otros* †
are. Those who have more than what they want
son los que tienen † *necesitan*
are not happier, than those who have not more than
son feliz tienen
what they want. (No body) (ought to) undertake more
nadie debe emprender
than what he is sure he can accomplish. The
† *(está seguro que)* † *puede desempeñar*
prisoners that (were made by) king Philip the Fifth,
prisionero que hizo Felipe
in his victory over Staremberg, were more than five
su victoria sobre ——— *fuéron*
thousand. Doctor Johnson did not take more than
——— ——— † *gastó*
six evenings to write an excellent tale, called
tarde en escribir *novela llamado*

* See observation, page 239.

Rasselas. The hatred of the vicious, (will do[2]) you[1] less
——— *odio* *vicioso* *hará* *le*
harm than their conversation. The celebrated Addison,
daño *su* ——— *célebre* ———
was not less wise than modest.
era *sabio* *modesto.*

RULE XVIII.

The English definite article *the*, before a word used to denote comparison, is rendered by *cuanto-a-os-as*, before the first comparative, and *tanto-a-os-as*, before the second; as, "Cuanto mas *vivimos* tanto mas *aprendemos*," *the more* we live *the more* we learn. "Cuantos ménos *somos*, tantas mas *ventajas poseemos*," *the fewer* we are, *the more* advantages we possess.

Note 1. *As*, is used in English after *so*, in a manner not used in Spanish. For instance, it is said, "He was *so* industrious *as* to rise at five o'clock every morning," whereas, in Spanish, this sentence would have been expressed thus: he was *so* industrious, *that* he rose at five o'clock, &c. *Era* tan *diligente* que *se levantaba á las cinco todas las mañanas.*

Note 2. *So as*, is rendered *de modo que*, followed by a subjunctive; as, "*Cuanto hagas hazlo* de modo que *guste á Dios*," whatever thing you may do, do it *so as* to please God.

Note 3. Instead of *como*, *cuan* is sometimes used after *tan*, and *cuanto* after *tanto;* as, "*Es* tan *sabio*, cuan *humilde*," he is *as* wise *as* humble. "Tanto *llueve*, cuanto *nieve*," it rains *as much as* it snows.

Note 4. *Cual*, [which,] is very often used instead of *como*, in poetical and lofty compositions; as, "Cual *ciervo corre*," he runs *as* a stag.

(*Note* 1.) The world is so full of tempations, as to
mundo es lleno tentacion †
require our constant vigilance. The resistance of
requiere nuestra constante vigilancia resistencia
the Americans was so vigorous as (to put them) to a
Americano era vigoroso los puso en
precipitate flight.
percipitado fuga.

(*Note* 2.) We ought to perform our actions, so as
† *debemos hacer nuestras* ———
(to be) consistent with the rules of morality.
sean conforme á regla moralidad.

(*Note* 3.) Bad men are as dangerous as hateful.
son peligroso aborrecible
Every seed is capable of producing as many fruits
cada simiente es capaz producir
as the plant by which it (was yielded.)
de que † *nació.*

(*Note* 4.) He leaps as a sprightly[2] kid.[1]
salta despajado cabrito.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE XIX.

Superlatives, which in English are made with *very*, or *most*, are formed in Spanish by prefixing *mui*, to the adjective, or by affixing to it the termination *ísimo;* as, very clever, *mui hábil*, or *habilísimo;* very easy, *mui fácil*, or *facilísimo.*

Note 1. If the adjective end in a vowel, it is suppressed; as, *corto*, short; *cortísimo*, very short; *alegre*, cheerful; *alegrísimo*, very cheerful; *triste*, sad; *tristísimo*, very sad; *famoso*, famous; *famosísimo*, very famous.

Adjectives which change their final termination before they admit the termination *ísimo:*

co into	*qu*, as,	rico	riquísimo.
go	*gu*,	largo	larguísimo.
ble	*bil*,	afable	afabilísimo.
z	*c*,	feliz	felicísimo.

Superlatives in *ísimo*, irregularly formed:

bonísimo,	very good, from	*bueno*,	good.
fortísimo,	very strong,	*fuerte*,	strong.
novísimo,	very new,	*nuevo*,	new.
sapientísimo,	very wise,	*sabio*,	wise.
sacratísimo,	very sacred,	*sacro*,	sacred.
fidelísimo,	very faithful,	*fiel*,	faithful.

Irregular superlatives:

From *bueno*,	*óptimo*,	best.
malo,	*pésimo*,	worst.
grande,	*mácsimo*,	greatest.
pequeño,	*mínimo*,	least.
alto,	*supremo*,	highest.
bajo,	*ínfimo*,	lowest.

All these form a superlative in *ísimo*, according to the rules already given; as, *malísimo*, *poquísimo*, *bagísimo*, &c.

Note 2. The above positives admit also a regular superlative with *mui;* as, *mui grande*, very great; *mui pequeño*, very small. The superlative of *mucho*, is always *muchísimo*.

CORROBORATIONS.

Pocos, ó ninguno de los famosos varones que pasáron, dejó de ser calumniado de la malicia. Julio César, *animosísimo*, *prudentísimo* y *valentísimo* capitan fue notado de ambicioso, y algun tanto no limpio, ni en sus vestidos, ni en sus costumbres.	*Few, or none of the great men, went through this life without being calumniated by malice. Julius Cæsar, a most animated, a most prudent, and a most valiant captain, was accused of ambition, and of lasciviousness, both in his dress and manners.*
MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.	
Hernan Cortés, respondió, que la paz que proponian era	*Ferdinand Cortes, answered, that the peace they proposed was*

conforme á su inclinacion, pero que la buscaban despues de una guerra *mui* injusta y *mui* pérfida. ANTONIO DE SOLIS.	*agreeable to his wishes, but that they sought it after a very unjust and a very treacherous war.*

EXERCISES.

The Mississippi is a very[2] large river;[1] it ranks
——— *es mui grande* † *(puede*
among the most magnificent in the world. The
competir con) mas magnificio de
soil of the United States is extremely fertile,
terreno es estremadamente fértil
and very suitable for every kind of cultivation.
apropiado para toda especie ———
Manadnock, and Ossipee, are very high mountains.
——— ——— *son* *montaña*
The climate of Maryland, is very agreeable, and its
clima ——— *es agradable su*
commerce very considerable. Men's passions are very
comercio ——— *hombre son*
strong. America, although young, possesses very[3]
fuerte. ——— *aunque jóven posee*
magnificent[2] institutions.[1] Bodily exercise, is very
magnífico ——— *(el egercicio de cuerpo) es*
necessary to those who are constantly occupied in
á los que estan constantemente ocupado
mental pursuits. Reading loud, strengthens the
intelectual tarea. (el leer) alto esfuerza
lungs very much.
pulmones

torno á decir, y diré mil veces que soi *el mas* desdichado de los hombres.

again, and will say it a thousand times, that I am the most unfortunate of men.

MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

EXERCISES.

Wisdom is the most precious of all gifts. Of all
sabiduría es precioso todo don
the passions, avarice is the most difficult to overcome,
——— *avaricia es difícil de vencer*
because we find no remedy against it. The reign
porque hallamos remedio contra ella reinado
of Louis the Fourteenth, king of France, was the
Luís rei Francia era
longest, and one of the most glorious of the French
glorioso Frances
monarchy. The opinions of the most[2] enlightened[3]
monarquía ——— ilustrado
understandings,[1]* are sometimes errors, and the most
entendimiento son ———
prudent actions, pass sometimes for faults. Most of
prudente ——— pasan (á veces) yerro
the Americans are endowed with bright talents. Most
son dotado de brillante talento
of Washington's men, when hostilities began in
soldados cuando hostilidad empezáron
America, were destitute of all (the necessaries) to
estaban falto de todo lo necesario (para
support the severities of winter, and notwithstanding,
aguantar) rigor invierno (sin embargo)
how nobly (did they fight,) and how patiently
cuan noblemente peleáron pacientemente

* Whenever there is a comparative before the adjective, the substantive qualified must necessarily precede.

(did they bear) every privation. The most populous
sufriéron todo privacion populosa
city in America, is New-York. Rome produced some
produjo
of the wisest men in the world. (There are) some men
sabio mundo hai alguno
who are more childish than children themselves.
que son niño mismo

OF ADJECTIVES

WHICH REQUIRE SOME PREPOSITION.

RULE XXI.

When an adjective is placed between two substantives, and expresses the quality of the second, it is generally followed by *de*, [of,] in cases like the following: "*Un muchacho* duro de *entendimiento*," a boy *dull* of comprehension. "*Un hombre* bajo de *cuerpo*," a man *low* in stature, &c.

Note 1. Adjectives are also followed by *de*, [of,] when they express the quality produced by the substantive which they qualify; as, "*Ella está* pálida de *miedo*," she is *pale with* fear. "*El está* abochornado de *la pregunta*," he is *hurt at* the question. Should the quality be produced by an infinitive, the adjective would also be followed by *de*, [of;] as, "*Estaban* cansados de *escribir*," they were *tired of* writing.

CORROBORATIONS.

Estoi por decir que con mis propios ojos ví á Amadis de Gaula, que era un hombre ALTO *de cuerpo*, BLANCO *de rostro*, bien puesto de barba, aunque negra, de vista entre blanda y rigurosa,

I am about saying that I saw with my own eyes, Amadis of Gaul, who was a man high in stature, of a fair complexion, of a comely beard, though black, of a stern look somewhat tempered by soft-

CORTO *de razones*, tardo en airar se y presto en deponer la ira.
MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

ness, taciturn, difficult of being made angry, but quick in venting his rage.

Frisaba la edad de nuestro hidalgo con los cincuenta años: era de complecsion recia, SECO *de carnes*, ENJUTO *de rostro*, gran madrugador y AMIGO *de la caza*. MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

Our nobleman was fifty years of age, of a strong constitution, lean in the face, a great early-riser, and fond of the chase.

EXERCISES.

If men were humble and meek of heart, (there
fuesen manso humilde corazon ha-
would be) more peace in society. His coat and
bria paz sociedad su casaca
vest made[2] him[1] appear long in the body, and short
chaleco hacian le parecer largo cuerpo corto
in the legs. Nothing less than the patience of Job,
pierna nada ménos paciencia ——
(is requisite) to teach those who are hard of under-
es necesario para enseñar á los que son duro enten-
standing.
dimiento.

(*Note* 1.) Men remain astonished at the wisdom of
(se quedan) admirado sabiduría
others, when they might (possess it.) If (any person)
otro cuando podrian poseerla nadie
abuses[2] you[1] with unbecoming words, (do not fall into
abusa le indecente palabra no se encolarice
a passion,) but (show yourself) hurt at the expres-
vmd. pero muestrese resentido espres-
sions. (Few people) are satisfied with their condition.
sion pocos estan satisfecho de su ——

ty in height, and seventy-three in width. Noah built an
alto *ancho* *Noé hizo un*
ark of three hundred cubits in length, fifty in breadth,
arca *codo* *ancho*
and thirty in height. The famous mine of Potosi, is
alto *famoso mina* ——— *tiene*
more than* five hundred feet in depth. The walls
pie *profundidad* *muralla*
of Babylon, were two hundred feet high, and fifty
Babilonia tenian *alto*
broad.
ancho.

(*Note* 1.) Maryland is longer than Vermont, by
——— *es* *largo* ———
forty-six miles, and wider by forty. The son is taller
milla *ancho* *hijo es alto,*
than the father by more than six inches.
padre *pulgada*

RULE XXIII.

Adjectives denoting proximity are followed by *á*, and those denoting distance by *de;* as, "*Cercano* á *la muerte,*" approaching death. "*Distante* de *su patria,*" far *from* his country.†

Note 1. Adjectives denoting *fitness* or *unfitness*, are immediately followed by *para;* as, "*El es apto* para *el empleo,*" he is fit *for* the employment. "*Las manzanas, por San Juan, empiezan á ser buenas* para *comer,*" apples begin to be fit *to be* eaten by St. John's day.

* See rule xvii. note 2, page 244.

† There are undoubtedly, many other adjectives preceded by certain prepositions, but as they are generally alike in both languages, the author considers it useless to say any thing concerning them.

CORROBORATION.

*D*esde entónces vive aquí (Polidoro) retirado en una casa de campo poco DISTANTE *de* la mia. TEODORO DE ALMEIDA.	*From that time Polidorus lives here, retired in a country house at a very little distance from mine.*

EXERCISES.

He feared that a monarchy so contiguous to that of
temió que monarquía vecina á la
Asturias, (would be) a source of many wars. Some-
seria manantial
times we become slaves, wishing to avoid the evils
(nos hacemos) esclavo deseando † evitar mal
annexed to war. He thought, as he was so far
anejo guerra pensó (que como estaba) léjos
from Madrid, and close to Bayonne, (he might just as
junto Bayona tanto le valdria
well) continue his journey to this place. He
que prosiguiese el viage hasta esta plaza aquel
is fit for a captain, who is fit for a soldier. One
es propio † capitan que es † soldado †
hundred good men are not enough to repair the
son suficiente remediar
evil committed by ten bad. The protection of the
daño ocasionado por ———
arts and sciences, is indispensable to the prosperity of
es ——— *prosperidad*
a kingdom. The ox is not so adequate as the horse
reino buei es apto caballo
to carry burdens.
llevar carga

OF PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in the Spanish language constitute the most difficult, but the most useful and essential part of its grammar. A person well versed in the pronouns and in the verbs, may be said to have acquired two thirds of this language. Convinced of the utility of the pronouns; and of the necessity that they should be intelligibly and systematically arranged; the author has devoted to this object, much of his time and study. And he will consider himself happy, if the advantages resulting from his labours, evince that they have not been unsuccessful.

At the same time that the author will candidly and freely acknowledge, that in the composition of this work, he has, in some places, availed himself of the labours of the Spanish Academy, Huerta, Fernandez, Del Pino, McHenry, Josse, and Murray, he has always considered it improper, unjust, and ungrateful, to speak against the writings and systems of others. He is perfectly convinced that he who has done all he could, is entitled to our applause. And it belongs to the wise critic, and to the public in general, to expose his errors or his deficiencies, that he may improve by their advice—but not to his rival, who must always speak with some degree of partiality.

Without making any reference, therefore, to the plan which other grammarians have followed in the pronouns, the author has endeavoured to form that which, he thought, would be more intelligible, and more conducive to aid the student in acquiring a theoretical, as well as practical knowledge of the Spanish language.

His guides in the formation of this plan, have been *regularity* and *perspicuity;* and he has, therefore, interspersed many observations between the rules, to illustrate in a clear manner, what must have, otherwise, been obscure. The exercises are, it is presumed, such as will serve, not only to inculcate strongly the rules to which they belong, but even to render them more intelligible to the student. In fact the whole has been laid down in a manner, which, the author hopes, will merit the approbation of the public.

any other pronoun. When any observations will, therefore, be made concerning the first or second objective cases of the pronouns, those of *vmd.* shall also be included.

POSITION OF THE NOMINATIVE.

RULE XXIV.

The subject, or nominative case, precedes the verb,* except in imperative, and interrogative sentences, and when quotations are made; as, "Tú *no iras,*" thou shalt not go. "El *ha llegado,*" *he* has arrived. "*Venga* ella," let *her* come. "*¿Ha comido* vmd. *ya?*" have *you* dined already? "*Estudia hijo mio, me decia* él *á mí*" study my son, said *he* to me.

* It has been said above, that the nominative precedes the verb; but it must, by no means, be considered as an unexceptionable rule. That the placing of the nominative before the verb, whether it be a pronoun or a noun, is a rule which has been given by all grammarians who have written on the Spanish language, we must confess; but we must also acknowledge, that it is in our power to prove by the most eminent Spanish writers, both in prose and verse, that the nominative is much more frequently found after, than before, the verb. This, it appears to us, is a peculiarity of the Spanish language; and it adds, we must own, not a little to its majesty.

Definite rules to guide the student in the placing of the nominative before or after the verb, cannot be given. We shall, however, observe, that in the course of our reading, we have perceived that those authors fond of a nervous, sound, or laconic style, place, very often, the nominative before the verb, except in the cases mentioned in the rule given above. And that those remarkable for their eloquent, poetical, majestic, or lively compositions, almost invariably, place the verb before the nominative. From this, it may, therefore, be concluded, that the student can place the verb before the nominative in his elevated and energetic sentences; and after the nominative, in his common or sound compositions.

Note 1. As the verbs themselves are, in Spanish, expressive of the pronouns, they are never used except in the three following instances: 1st. To distinguish persons; as, "El *y* ella *no se avienen*," *he* and *she* do not agree. 2d. To render the diction more sonorous; as, "Yo *soi el señor tu Dios*." *I* am the Lord thy God. 3d. When a pronoun is to precede a relative; as, "El que *tanto estudiaba, murió de pesar*," *he that* studied so much, died with anguish.

CORROBORATIONS.

Tu quisiste que *yo* fuese tuya, y quisístelo de manera, que aunque ahora quieras que no lo sea, no será posible que *tú* deges de ser mio. MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.	*Thou desired that I should be thine, and thou desired it in such a manner, that though thou mayest now wish I should not be so, it will be impossible for thee to help being mine.*
Que ha de ser de mí DICE *él* en una angustia desesperada. TEODORO DE ALMEIDA.	*What is to become of me, said he, in an agony of despair?*
Ven acá Martin: qué ENTIENDES *tú* de Sermones? Para que hablas de lo que no entiendes, ni eres capaz de entender? JOSÉ DE ISLA.	*Come here, Martin; what dost thou understand about sermons? Why dost thou speak of that which thou dost not, nor canst not understand?*
Se levantó de su alto asiento el viejo venerable, y puesto en pie, dando una gran voz, dijo: "*yo* soi el sabio Lirgandeo," y pasó el carro adelante, sin hablar mas palabra. MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.	*The venerable old man rose from his seat, and with a loud voice, he said, "I am the wise Lirgandeus," and the chariot went on, without his saying another word.*
Como *yo* sé quien es, y considero que por amor de mí viene	*As I know who he is, and as I consider that through my sake he*

This observation we think proper to make, that the student may not be surprised, when reading the Spanish Classics, he will find so many examples absolutely opposite to the 24th rule of this grammar.

á pie y con tanto trabajo muérome de pesadumbre, y adonde *él* pone los pies pongo *yo* los ojos. MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

comes on foot, and with so much pain, I die with grief, and where he puts his feet I put my eyes.

Yo QUE soi el capitan general de sus egércitos, y estos caballeros de mi séquito, que son los primeros nobles y mayores capitanes de mi nacion nos quedarémos en rehenes de vuestra seguridad. ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

I that am the captain general of his armies, and these gentlemen of my suit, who are the first noblemen and greatest captains of my nation, will remain here as hostages for your security.

EXERCISES.

I do not mistake, when I say to you, that with a
† *(no me engaño) cuando digo á vmd. que*
little attention, you (will make) great progress in
(poco de) atencion † hará progreso
your studies. Let them appear before my
sus estudio † ellos comparezcan (delante de) mi
face, and then (I shall declare[2]) (to them[1]) my
cara entónces declararé les mi
intention. May you imitate the virtues of your
——— *(ojalá que vmd. imite) sus*
ancestors. Thou shouldst love thy neighbour as
antepasado debes amar (á tu) prócsimo
sincerely as thou lovest thyself. If men
sinceramente (te amas) (á tí mismo)
fulfil the duties annexed to their situation,
(cumplen con) obligacion anejo á su estado
they certainly (will be) loved by every body. They
ciertamente serán amado de (todo el mundo)
think (they shall be heard) (for their much
(piensan que) serán oidos por lo mucho que
speaking.) If we injure others (we must expect)
hablan (injuriamos á) otros debemos esperar

POSITION OF THE OBJECTIVE CASES.

OBSERVATION.

The student should bear in mind, that the personal pronouns in the Spanish language contain two objective cases; the full declension of which, will be found in Etymology, pages 76, 77, and 78. For, if he do not, he will commit numberless mistakes, which, a little attention and study, might have easily prevented.

The position of the objective cases is not difficult; it only requires that the student be very familiar with the declensions. The objective case is placed, either immediately after, or before the verb; and for its true and correct application, easy and decisive rules are given in the following pages.

POSITION OF THE 1st OBJECTIVE CASE.

RULE XXV.

The first objective case is placed before the tenses of the verb, except in the *infinitive*, *imperative*, and *gerund;* in which cases it is placed after. In the first instance, the pronoun is separated from the verb; and in the second, it is joined to it, forming as it were, one word; as, "*El* le *escribió*," he wrote *to him*. "Me *dicen*," they say *to me*. "*Ellos* te *escribirian si tú quisieras*," they would write *to thee*, if thou wert willing.* "*Vengo por verle*," I come to see *you*. "*Mirándo*la *se murió*," looking at *her* he died. "*Venzámolos*," let us conquer *them*.

*Sometimes, when the sentence begins by a verb, the pronoun is placed after it, in what tense soever the verb may be. This is accomplished to give more strength and energy to the phrase; as, "Pronunciáronle *su sentencia*," they *pronounced* his sentence *to him*. "¿Dejarásme *perecer?*" wilt thou *let me perish?* The author again observes, that this construction can only take place, when the phrase or sentence begins by a verb.

Note 1. When a verb governs another in the infinitive, the objective case may be placed, either before the first, or after the second, verb; as, "Te *pudieras asentar*," or "*Pudieras asentarte*," thou mightest sit down. "*Voi á hablarle*," or "Le *voi á hablar*," I am going to speak *to him*.

Note 2. When the first person plural of any tense is followed by *nos*, or *os*, it loses its final letter; as, "*Detengámonos*," and not *detengamos-nos*, let us stop. "*Sentaos*," and not *sentad-os*, sit ye down.

CORROBORATIONS.

Todo lo que hai en tí, todo lo que pasa cerca de tí, todo lo que sientes, *te* DEBE convencer de que esta felicidad que quisieras APARENTAR*te*, es el delirio de las ilusiones que *te* ENGAÑAN.	*All that is in thee, all that takes place near thee, all that thou feelest, must convince thee that this happiness which thou wishest to show, is the delirium of the illusions which deceive thee.*

PABLO OLAVIDES.

Aceptáron ellos la palabra HACIENDO*sela* repetir con mas afecto que desconfianza.	*They all accepted his word, requesting him to repeat it, more through kindness than suspicion.*

ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

En vez, pues, de hacerle imitar los autores mas antiguos en sus lenguas, HACIA*le* copiar traducidos en Español los pasages mas sobresalientes.	*Instead, then, of making him imitate the most ancient authors in their languages, he made him copy, translated into Spanish, their best passages.*

PEDRO MONTENGON.

EXERCISES.

War is so great an evil, that nothing can justify
es mal nada puede justificar
it, but necessity. Nothing can render us so unhappy,
sino necesidad puede hacer infeliz
as to envy our neighbour's happiness. (Let us conquer
envidiar nuestro prócsimo felicidad venzámolos

them,) said a general to his soldiers, for (they will
dijo ——— sus soldado pues se
destroy themselves) if they lose us. God is always
(han de) perder si pierden Dios está
showing us marks of the desire he has of our amend-
mostrando señal deseo que tiene nuestra enmi-
ment, but we do not regard them. (No
enda (pero nosotros no hacemos cabal de ellos)
man) can feel the pleasures emanating from
nadie puede percibir placer (que emanan)
virtue, but by practising it. Incontinence, the mother
virtud sino con practicar incontinencia madre
of all vices, exposes us to the greatest dangers, renders
vicio espone á mayor peligro hace
us miserable, and at last hurries us into destruc-
——— (por último) precipita á ———
tion. Politeness teaches us to compassionate the
——— urbanidad enseña compadecernos de
weakness of some, to bear patiently the caprices
flaqueza algunos á sufrir (con paciencia) capricho
and extravagancies of others, and to lead them all
estravagancia otros (hacer que se conven-
to reason by insinuating means. It delights me,
zan de la razon) agradable medio † deleita
and pleases me extremely, to see the daily
gusta estremadamente † ver diario
advancement which America makes to perfection.
adelantamientos que ——— hace hácia
The (ambitious man) is a slave (to himself.) Cove-
ambicioso es de sí mismo ava-
tousness solicits him, gluttony incites him, incon-
ruia solicita gula incita incon-

Note 1. When, in English, two objective cases occur in a sentence, one of which is governed by the preposition *to*, and the other by a verb, the one governed by the preposition, is, in Spanish, placed first; as, "He said it *to thee*,"* *él* te *lo dijo*. "We brought him *to ye*," os *le llevámos*.

Should the verb govern a reflective pronoun, the pronoun would then be placed first; as, "He declared *himself* grateful to me," *él* se *me declâro reconocido*. "I presented *myself* to him," *yo* me *presenté á él*.

CORROBORATIONS.

Este estado tenian las cosas de la Monarquía cuando entró en la posesion DE *ella* el Rei Don Carlos que llegó á España por Setiembre de este año.	*This was the state of the affairs of the Monarchy, when King Charles, who reached Spain in September of this same year, entered into the possession of it.*
ANTONIO DE SOLIS.	
Si por esa via es, dige ENTRE *mí*, nunca yo moriré, que siempre he guardado esa regla por fuerza y aun espero en mi desdicha tenerla toda mi vida.	*If this be the case, I said to myself, (between me,) I shall never die, for I have always been compelled to keep this rule, and I yet expect, that in my misfortune, will be obliged to keep it all my life.*
DIEGO HURTADO DE MENDOZA.	

EXERCISES.

(It is better) to cultivate any talents we
vale mas *cultivar cualesquiera talentos (que*
may have, than to complain of them. Who can
tengamos) *quejarnos* *quien podrá*
hide himself from thee, O Lord! If virtuous and
esconderse de *Señor* *virtuoso*

* When the preposition *to* governs the English objective case, the preposition *to*, and the case itself, are translated by the first objective in Spanish. See the two next rules.

learned men, are the best companions, why (should
erúdito son compañero porque no
we not associate) with them?
nos asociamos

(*Note* 1.) Thou (hast conducted thyself) honourably,
te has conducido (con honor)
and if thou ask thy liberty, they (will grant) it to thee.
pides tu libertad concederán
When I demand something reasonable, they always
pido algo razonable
give it to me. Her image presented itself (to them)
dan su imágen presentaba se les
without ceasing. He addressed himself (to thee.)
sin cesar dirigio te

USE OF THE 1st OBJECTIVE CASE.

RULE XXVII.

1st AND 2d PERSONS.

When, in English, the verb or preposition *to*, expressed or understood, governs the objective case of the first or second person, in Spanish, the first objective case is used, and placed according to rule xxvi., page 269; as, "*Ellos* me *habláron*," they spoke *to me*. "*Los dos ladrones* te *robáron*," the two thieves robbed *thee*. "*En la niñez mi padre* me *consolaba*, *y mi madre* me *acariciaba*," in my childhood my father consoled *me*, and my mother caressed *me*. "*Díga*le *que no venga*," tell *him* not to come.

3d PERSON.

If the objective case of the third person, be governed, in English, by the verb, it is, in Spanish, translated by *le*, *los*, for the masculine, and *la*, *las*, for the

feminine gender. If the objective case be governed by the preposition *to*, expressed or understood, it is rendered by *le*, *les*, for *both* genders; as, "Los *vimos*," we saw *them*, (masculine.) "Las *encontrámos*," we met *them*, (feminine.) "Le *prendiéron*," they took *him*. "La *educáron mui bien*," they educated *her* very well. "Le *dijo*," he said *to her*. "Le *dijo*,"* he said to *him*. "Les *hablaron*," they spoke *to them*, (masculine.) "Les *habláron*," they spoke *to them*, (feminine.)

EXERCISES.

(Every thing) we possess, we have it from God:
todo lo que poseemos recibimos lo de Dios
this should induce us to love him. We may play
esto debe inducir á amar podemos jugar
to give us pleasure, but not to give us pain.
para dar gusto pero dar pena
After the battle, they conducted me to the field,
(despues de) batalla condugéron á campo
(that I might see) the effects of war. The enemy,
para que viese efecto enemigo
said he, will pursue us, (will overtake) us,
dijo (seguirá el alcance) alcanzará
and (we shall be) their[2] victims,[1] (if we do not
serémos (de él) victima si no hacemos
face) them. Moses with his rod, touched
cara le Moises con su vara tocó
the water of the river, and changed it into blood.
agua rio convirtió en sangre

* By the context of the sentence, it can be easily gathered, whether the pronoun relates to a masculine or feminine person.

them. "*Sin* tí, *nada seríamos,*" without *thee,* we would not be any thing.

Note 1. The second objective case is also placed after comparatives; as. "*Le estiman mas que* á ellos," they loved him better than *them.* "*Á él le creen mas que* á mí," they believed him, better than *me.*

Note 2. When the second objective cases *mí, tí sí,* are preceded by the preposition *con,* with; they take *go;* forming all three particles, a single word; as, "*Viniéron ellos* conmigo," they came *with me.* "*Marchâron* consigo," they went away *with him.*

EXERCISES.

If we subdued our passions, instead of (being
subyugásemos nuestras ——— *(en lugar de) dejar-*
carried away) by them, (we would be) happier. Who
nos llevar de seríamos feliz quien
can go against the dictates of heaven? who can
puede ir contra dictado cielo quien puede
deride them? As for me, I believe all that
(burlarse de) —— *(en cuanto á) creo (todo lo que*
tends to make a man good.
tiende á hacer el

(*Note* 1.) Although they have more talents than
aunque tengan talentos
we; notwithstanding, we (have been) (much more)
(sin embargo) tenemos mejor
successful than they. They know not so much as we.
écsito saben
He is more learned than she; but she is much more
es erúdito es
polite than he.
urbano

(*Note* 2.) Some persons speak to themselves when
persona hablan con sí

they are alone. Let not the wicked keep
estan solo (no permitas que) malo tengan
correspondence with thee, for they always try to
trato con tí pues procuran †
blind us.
cegar.

OBSERVATION ON THE TWO OBJECTIVE CASES.

From the beginning of the rules on the pronouns, we have been very careful to inculcate on the student's mind, that, in Spanish, two objective cases exist.

The rules which precede this observation, will, we indulge a hope, be found sufficient to prevent his ever being at a loss to know how to place, use, or apply them with precision in a sentence. It becomes now our duty to observe, that to render the diction more perspicuous and energetic, both the objective cases are often used in Spanish.

The second objective case can never be preceded by the preposition *á*, unless it be accompanied by the first. It would, therefore, be very improper to say *á mí quieren*, they like *me;* á él *aman*, they love *him;* á tí *decimos*, we say to *thee;* and, to render these sentences correct, it would be absolutely necessary to add the first objective case; as, *á mí* ME quieren, they like *me; á él* LE aman, they love *him;* á tí TE decimos, we say *to thee.** As the first objective case is always expressive of the second with the preposition *á;* it is impossible to use them both, unless the second be preceded by this preposition. Should we say *él le digéron*, it would, not only be ungrammatical, but it could not be understood; and the only reason would be, because the pre-

* It sometimes occurs, that the verb being understood, the first objective case is not used; thus, for instance, "á mí me *quiéren y* á tí *no*," they like *me* and not *thee*. It is very plain that in the second member of this sentence, the words *te quieren*, after the negative *no*, are understood. In this sentence, "*Le han condenado á morir, pero la naturaleza* á ellos," they have condemned *him* to die, but nature *them;* the words *les ha condenado* after *naturaleza*, are also understood.

position *á* was not placed before the pronoun *él;* and say, "á él le *digéron*," they said to *him*.

It is also to be observed, that one of these two objective cases, cannot be placed, indiscriminately, either before or after the other, but that the second, is always guided by the position of the first. The first objective case, as it has been observed in Syntax, rule xxv., page 266, is always placed before the verb in all its tenses, except the *infinitive*, *imperative*, and *gerund*, in which three cases it is universally placed after.

When the first objective, is placed before the verb, the second, must be either before the first, or after the verb, in this manner: "A él le *asasináron*," or, Le *asasináron* á él, they assassinated him." "A mí me *lleváron al campo*," or "*Al campo* me *lleváron*, á mí," they carried me to the country. "A nosotros nos *dan bárbaras leyes*," or "*Bárbaras leyes nos dan* á nosotros," they give us barbarous laws. "A tí te *ecsamináron bien*," or "*Bien* te *ecsamináron* á tí," they examined thee well. "El se *ama* á sí," or "A sí se *ama él*," he loves himself.*

It frequently happens that a sentence begins by the preposition *á* governing a substantive in the objective case, and then an additional pronoun in the same case, is almost always placed before the verb.

Father Isla, speaking of the manner in which king Alphonsus rewarded three French princes, who had seconded him in his military enterprises, says: "*Al conde de Tolosa* LE *tocó Doña Elvira*," &c., to the count of Toloso, Donna Elvira was given. The same author, in another place, says: "*Era Alfonso, á quien despues se* LE *dió el nombre de bravo, un príncipe marcial, intrépido*," &c. Alphonsus, to whom *was* afterwards given the name of brave, was a martial, intrepid king, &c. Many instances of this kind might easily be produced, from the Spanish classics.

When the first objective case is placed after the verb, the second must follow the first, and it cannot be placed in any other part of the sentence; thus, "*Mirándole se cayó*," looking at

*If the nominative be expressed in Spanish, it always will be better to place the second objective case after the verb; as, "*Ella* me *dice* á mí;" is much better than to say, "*Ella* á mí me *dice*," she tells *me*.

the other poets, by calling him the prodigy of
demas poeta con llamar le prodigio
nature.
naturaleza

OBSERVATION ON *se*.

The pledge which was made in Etymology, page 78, concerning an explanation of the reciprocal pronoun *se*, will now be redeemed. A good knowledge of this part of speech, is, according to our opinion, so useful and necessary, that a want of it might seriously retard the progress of the student. It is for this reason, that we have given to this subject a few separate remarks.

The reciprocal pronoun *se*, has, in the Spanish language, three distinct meanings, and it is, therefore, employed, for three different purposes.

(1.) The first tense in which we find this pronoun used, is, to denote *itself*, *himself*, *herself*, *themselves* and *each other*. In this meaning, it is always employed to conjugate the third person singular, and the third person plural, of all the tenses of a reflective verb;* for example: "se *mostrō*," it showed *itself*. "*Por su urbanidad*, se *hizo querer de todos sus conocidos*," by his politeness, he made *himself* beloved by all his acquaintances. "*Ella* se *mostrō resuelta*," she showed *herself* resolute. "*Ellos* se *entretuviéron*," they amused *themselves*. "*Ellas nunca* se *amarān*," they will never love *themselves*, or *each other*.

(2.) The second use of this pronoun, is in the conjugation of the third person singular, and the third person plural, of all the tenses of a passive verb. Instead, therefore, of using the auxiliary *to be*, and the participle of the verb agreeing with its nominative; the pronoun *se*, and the proper tense itself, are employed for the same purpose.

It is when this part of speech is used in this tense, that it offers many difficulties, if it be not well understood. The student is apt to translate, on all occasions, because it can be done in a few, *se* by *himself*, *herself*, *themselves*, or *itself*. This erroneous impression, which is very common, makes him translate "*El castillo* se

* See Etymology, pages 119, 120, and 121.

asaltó," by, the castle assaulted *itself*, which is an absolute impossibility. And, unless he translate it by the verb *to be*, and the participle, thus: the castle *was* assaulted, the true meaning cannot be apparent. This sentence "SE DIÓ *á Alfonso el nombre de sabio*," would perplex any person, accustomed to translate *se* by the reflective pronouns; when, the moment he translates "*se*" by the verb *to be*, as it should be rendered, he immediately perceives the true meaning, which is: To Alphonsus WAS GIVEN the name of wise.

This pronoun, therefore, used in this sense, before the tense of a verb, corresponds exactly to the same tense conjugated passively; that is, with the verb *to be*, and the participle of the verb. Thus for instance, "*La ciudad* SE* *quemó*," the city was burnt; is the same as, *la ciudad* fué *quemada*. "*La gramática* SE *estudia para aprender un idioma bien*," grammar is learned to acquire a language well; is the same as, *la gramática* ES *estudiada, para aprender un idioma bien*. "Se da [or *es dado*] *castigo á los delincuentes*," punishment is *inflicted* on the guilty. "*No siempre* se observan [or *son observadas*,] *todas las buenas leyes*," all good laws *are* not always *observed*. "No se hubiera esparcido [or, *hubiera sido esparcida*,] *la noticia, si* se hubiesen tomado [or, *hubiesen sido tomadas*,] *buenas medidas*," the news *would not have been spread*, if opportune measures *had been taken*. "Se dice; [seldom or ever, *es dicho*,] *que ha* llegado," *it is said* that he has arrived.

(3.) The third and last sense in which we find this pronoun *se* used, is, to denote *to it, to him, to her, to you*,† or *to them;* whenever this preposition and pronoun are preceded by another pronoun in the third person. For example, "Thou boughtst a book, and sentst it *to him*," *compraste un* libro *y* se *le mandaste*. "I brought it *to them*," se *lo trage*. "They said it *to her*," se *lo digéron*. "The committee addressed it *to you*," *la junta* se *lo dirigió*.

If the pronoun *se* alone, were not deemed sufficient to express the particular pronoun in the degree of energy and perspicuity desired, recourse would then be had to the use of the two objec-

* This manner of conjugating the third person singular or plural of a passive verb, is much more used than the other.

† Meaning, *your worship*, or *vmd;* see page 86, and observation, page 261.

tive cases, thus: "*compraste un libro y* SE *le mandaste á él;*" "*se lo trage á* ellos;" "*se lo digéron á* ella;" "*la junta* SE *lo dirigió á* vmd."

N. B. *Se,** is a first objective case, and as such, its position in the sentence is according to rule XXV. page 266. Examples: "*El* SE *encolerizó,*" he grew angry. "*Levántese vmd.*" rise (you.) "*La villa* SE *voló,*" the town WAS blown up. "*Vuelese* la villa," let the town be blown up. "*El* SE *lo dió,*" he gave it *to him.* "*Dándoselo,*" giving it *to him.*

EXERCISES.

(1.) Men often injure themselves for the want of
amenudo injurian se por falta
prudence. Although man can govern himself, he
prudencia aunque hombre puede gobernar se
seldom does it. Kings often ruin themselves, by
(rara vez) hace lo (muchas veces) ruinan se †
endeavouring to usurp (too much) power. She loves
procurando † *usurpar demasiado poder ama*
herself better than she (does others.) They can[2] never[1]
mas † *á otros podrán nunca*
like each other, their animosity is too inveterate.
querer su animosidad es demasiado inveterado
By his own exertions, Bonaparte placed himself to the
por sus propio esfuerzos ——— *levantó*
highest post of a nation.
mayor puesto ———

(2.) (Young men) are often mistaken, when they
los jóvenes (muchos veces) engañan
believe (to be) their friends those who profess it. If
creen que son sus amigo los que profesan lo

* It must be observed that this word is also a part of the verb *to be*, and *to know;* for example: "*Yo sé,*" I know. "*Sé tú,*" be thou. In these cases it is generally accented.

them?* The king gave him the command of his armies;
dió mando sus egército
but he gave it to him for a very short time? Reading
pero dió por poco tiempo leyendo
it to her she shed tears.
derramó lágrima

OBSERVATION ON *le* AND *lo*.

It will now be observed, that in Etymology, page 78, *lo* is the first objective case of the neuter pronoun *Ello;* and in page 77, that *le* is the first objective, of the personal pronoun *El.* Notwithstanding the wide difference which must necessarily exist between these two pronouns; the greatest part of authors in the Spanish language, have indiscriminately used these two parts of speech. The authority, indeed, of a *Cervántes*, a *Grenada*, an *Isla*, or an *Olavides*, would, most undoubtedly, sanction the promiscuous use of *le* or *lo*, were it not that the members of the Spanish Academy, are most strenuously opposed to this grammatical transgression. In their grammar, Etymology, page 64, they observe: *Y† respecto de los autores que le han usado*, [*lo*, por *le*] *como Granada, Cervántes y otros, se ha de decir, ó que hai falta de correccion en las impresiones de sus obras, ó que fuéron poco ecsactos en el uso de estas terminaciones, ó que por cuidar alguna vez con demasía del número armonioso de la oracion, sacrificáron las reglas de la gramática, á la delicadeza del oido.* This warning, however, has not had the effect which the Academy anticipated. For, among the gene-

* The repetition of *á ellos*, independently of the *se* would be necessary in this place. See the second paragraph of (3.) page 279.

† And with regard to those authors who have used it; [meaning the pronoun *lo*, instead of *le*,] such as *Granada*, *Cervántes*, and others, it must be observed, that the editions of their works have not been corrected with a sufficient degree of accuracy; or that they wanted precision in the use of these pronouns, or that they sometimes paid too much attention to the harmony of the sentence, and thereby sacrificed the rules of grammar to the delicacy of the ear.

rality of Spanish writers, the number of those who have taken advantage of it, is very inconsiderable. The author of this grammar, nevertheless, concurs, in this respect, with their opinion, and he would advise the student to adhere to it. He has, for some time, thought differently, but after a very elaborate research, and mature reflection, he is inclined to believe that the Academicians are perfectly correct.

Lo, will, therefore, be used only in reference to a noun to which we cannot ascribe either the masculine or feminine gender; for example: "*Yo he comprado un libro y te le mandaré mañana.*" "*No, prométame que tú me le traerás hoi.*" *Si, te lo prometo,*" I have bought a book, and I shall send *it* to thee to-morrow. No, promise me that thou wilt bring *it* to me to-day. Yes, I promise *it* to thee. It will be observed, that in the two first sentences, *le* is used, because the noun to which this pronoun refers, belongs to the masculine gender. But in the last sentence, *lo* is employed, this pronoun referring not to the book, but to the action of bringing it to-day; to which, it is plain, no gender can be ascribed. Again, if I say, "I saw it," meaning an army, or any other masculine substantive, it must be translated, *Yo* LE *vi*. But if in saying "I saw it," it is not my intention to mean this or that particular object, but a whole transaction, or event, &c.; then it would become necessary to say, "*Yo* LO *vi*." And thus it must be in all other similar cases.

EXERCISES.

The armies were, on the twentieth of March, completely routed: who said it to you?* Nobody, I[2] witnessed[3] it myself.[1]† Nothing can (be compared)

eran *Marzo* *enteramente derrotado* *quien dijo* *nadie* *vi* *mismo* *nada puede compararse*

* This *to you*, is translated by *se*; see the second and third paragraphs, in page 279.

† A reciprocal pronoun is always placed, in Spanish, immediately after the nominative.

with the excellent advice of "love thy enemies;" not-
con escelente consejo de (ama á tus enemigo) (sin
withstanding (few men) do it. An envious man (may
embargo) pocos hacen envidioso puede
be persuaded) that another person has merit, but
estar persuadido que otro persona tiene mérito pero
he (will very seldom) acknowledge it. Our vanity
rara vez confesará nuestra vanidad
renders us insupportable; and although we know it,
hace insuportable aunque sabemos
we seldom endeavour (to suppress) it. The Athenians
(rara vez) procuramos suprimir Ateniense
understand what is good, but the Lacedemonians
entienden (lo que) es pero Lacedemonio
practise it. He never wept for his troubles, be-
practican nunca oro sus trabajo
cause he considered it beneath him. I saw the army
porque considero (indigno de) vi
preparing itself; I saw it rushing on the enemy,
preparar se vi balancearse hácia enemigo
but after having seen all, I could[2] scarcely[1]
(pero despues de haberlo visto) todo pude apénas*
believe[3] it.
creer

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.†

OBSERVATION.

These pronouns are used to show, distinguish, and qualify, the possession or property, of persons or things. As these parts of

* Whenever *all* refers to a whole occurrence, or concatenation of circumstances, *lo* must also be used.

† The possessive pronouns are: *mio-a*, my or mine; *tuyo-a*, thy or thine;—*suyo-a*, its, his, hers, their, or theirs;—*nuestro-a*, our, ours;—*vuestro-a*, your, or yours. See page 78.

his, *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, they are preceded by the definite article,* and agree with the noun which they represent; as, "*Tu hermana y* la mia *son mui modestas*," thy sister and mine are very modest. "*Su ingenio y* el suyo, *son sublimes*," *your* genius and *hers* are sublime.

Note 3. When *mine*, *thine*, *his*, &c. are preceded by *of*, the preposition, as well as the additional article, are omitted, and the possessive pronoun is then placed after the noun; as, "A correspondent *of ours*, affirms the independence of Mexico," *un corresponsal* nuestro, *afirma la independencia de Mégico*. "One of *his* buildings was set on fire last night," *un edificio* suyo, *fué incendiado anoche*.

CORROBORATIONS.

Allá me daban el título de Señora y yo ni de *mi* tiempo lo era, ni de *mi* semblante, ni de *mi* juicio. ni aun de *mis* mas escondidos afectos.	*There they gave me the title of mistress, and I was not so of my time, of my countenance, of my own judgment, nor even of my own feelings.*
TEODORO DE ALMEIDA.	
Un hombre debe estimar á *su* amigo; pero solo debe dar por esta amistad *su* justo precio.	*A man must esteem his friend, but he must not give for this friendship, more than its real value.*
FRANCISCO DE QUEVEDO VILLEGAS	
Esta jornada se intentó con *vuestro* parecer, y pudiera decir	*This journey was undertaken with your consent, and I might*

*The article is omitted, if a verb, expressive of possession, precede the pronoun. It must be recollected, that the pronoun always agrees with the property, not with the possessor; thus, for instance: "*Esta casa es* suya," this house is *his*. *Suya*, must be employed, whether the house belong to a person of the masculine or of the feminine gender. The context of the sentence, is generally a sufficient mark of distinction. Should, however, the sentence be considered ambiguous; *de él*, or *de ella*: *de ellos*, or *de ellas*, may be properly added; as, "*Este campo es* suyo de ella; *y aquellos padrerías* suyas de ellos," this field is *his*; and those lawns are *theirs*.

con *vuestro* aplauso: *nuestra* resolucion fué pasar á la corte de Montezuma: todos nos sacrificamos á esta empresa por *nuestra* religion, por *nuestra* Rei, y despues por *nuestra* honra y *nuestras* esperanzas.

ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

say with your applause. Our intention was to go to the court of Montezuma; and in this undertaking we sacrificed every thing to our religion, to our king, and afterwards to our honour and to our hopes.

¡Dios mio! eterno y soberano principio de todas las inteligencias, ¡qué consuelo siente mi corazon cuando postrado ante el trono de tu inmensa magestad reconoce el divino seno de que ha salido. PABLO OLAVIDES.

O my God! eternal and sovereign source of all being, what consolation does my heart feel when prostrate before thy immense majesty, it acknowledges the divine bosom from which it sprung!

Ve aquí mi retrato, querido amigo; y temo en parte sea tambien *el tuyo.*

PABLO OLAVIDES.

Here, my dear friend, is my portrait, and I fear it is also in some measure yours.

EXERCISES.

Our virtues are frequently no more than dis-
virtud son frecuentemente dis-
guised vices. I exhort you gentlemen to continue,
frazado . ecsorto (á vmds) señores á continar
your literary labours, and your love to virtue.
literario estudio amor á
(Can ye) abandon your wives, your children, your king,
podeis abandonar esposo niño rei
your country? It seems that the first man, lost sight
patria † parece que (perdió de
of the laws of nature; hence sprang our errors,
vista) lei naturaleza (de aquí) naciéron ———
our crimes, our enmities, our wars. (No one)
crimen malevolencia guerra nadie

thinks to scrutinize our origin, nor the occurrences
piensa en escudriñar orígen ni circunstancia
of our life as long as we do not endeavour to
vida (en tanto que) † procuramos †
become superior to our companions. The sun and the
hacernos —— compañero sol
moon (will lose) their light, and the dead (will come
luna perderán luz muerto sal-
out) of their sepulchres. Jupiter performs its revolution
drán sepulcro —— da vuelta
round the sun, attended by its satellites.
(al rededor de) sol acompañado de satelite

(*Note* 1.) They divided my garments among them.
repartiéron vestido entre sí
and upon my vesture they cast lots. (Let us lay
sobre vestidura echáron suerte dejémonos
aside) flattery, my friends, for (it is) one of the
de adulacion pues es uno de
worst diseases of the mind. Thy (old age) (will be)
peor enfermedad alma vegez será
agreeable to thee, my son, if thou improve both in
agradable hijo adelantas así en
virtue and wisdom, while thou art young.
como sabiduria miéntras eres jóven

(*Note* 2.) When the Romans knew the utility of the
supiéron utilidad
Spanish sword, they abandoned theirs. Historians
Español espada abandonáron historiador
relate that our manners differ from theirs.
refiéren que costumbre diferencia de
(As soon as) that robber had finished his history,
luego que aquel ladron † acabó historia

OBSERVATION.

It has been observed, that the possessive pronouns are used to denote possession, or property. They are, therefore, frequently employed in reference to some of the parts belonging to the human frame. When this occurs, we find some cases in which the indefinite article, must be substituted in place of these pronouns. This change becomes necessary for this reason, that the construction of the Spanish sentences, is of such a nature, as to render the parts of the human body with which the English possessive adjective agrees, so apparent, that the indefinite article is sufficient to distinguish them. The article will be used:

(1st.) When any part of the human body is injured, changed, or acted upon,* in any manner whatsoever, by the individual to whom the part itself belongs; as, "*El me dió* la *mano*," he gave me *his* hand. "*Hincáron* las *rodillas*," they bent *their* knees. "*El se rompió* el *brazo*," he broke *his* arm. "*Ella se quema* los *ojos estudiando*," she burns *her* eyes studying. "*Ellos volverán* la *cara, para no ver á su general*," they will turn *their* face, that they may not see their general.

(2d.) When the part of the body with which the English adjective agrees, is not the subject of the verb; and when the part of the body acts upon the person to whom it belongs. In this latter case, the person is represented by the corresponding personal pronoun; for example: "*Con lágrimas en* los *ojos imploraba su perdon*," with tears in *my* eyes I entreated his pardon. "La *cabeza le duele*," *his* head aches. "El *pulso le tiembla*," *his* pulse trembles. "El *corazon le bate*," *her* heart beats.

* In these cases, the Spanish verb is reflective, except in those instances in which the verb describes an action, that is very apparently applied to the part of the person to whom it belongs; for instance: it is said in Spanish, "*Volviéron* las *espaldas*," they turned *their* backs; and "*se quemáron* los *dedos*," they burnt *their* fingers. In the first instance, the verb is not reflective, it being taken for granted that they did not turn the backs of any other persons, but *theirs*. In the second, however, it is not so. Were not the verb *quemar* reflective, we would be at a loss to know to whom the fingers they burnt did belong.

(3d.) When the part of the body has been injured, changed or acted upon by a third person; in this case, the person to whom the part belongs, must also be represented by the corresponding personal pronoun in the first objective case; as, "El *me* lavó las *manos*," he washed *my* hands, [that is, he washed the hands *to me*.] "*Echéle el freno en* el *pescuezo*," I threw the bridle on *her* neck. "*Su padre* les *curó la cabeza*," their father cured *their* head. The pronouns, *me*, *le*, and *les*, distinguish, in a very perspicuous manner, the parts of the body designated by the English possessive adjective.*

(4th.) The article is also used instead of the pronoun, in all those cases in which we have reference to certain objects which are necessarily included with the common appurtenances of a person; if the person himself, be otherwise sufficiently denoted in the sentence; as, "*El me dijo que me quitase* la *casaca*," he requested me to take off *my* coat. "*Eché prontamente* la *bolsa en el suelo, sino le mato*," throw down *your* purse quickly on the ground, otherwise I will kill you.

It is to be observed, that for the same reason which *vmd.* is used instead of *tú*, and *vmds.* instead of *vosotros*, [see the bottom of page 86,] in addressing persons, *your* is not translated *vuestro*, nor yours, *el vuestro*;† but the indefinite article, or the possessive pronoun referring to the third person, is placed before; and the words *de vmd.*, *de vmds.*, are placed after the noun; for instance: "*Estos son* los," or, sus "*prados* de vmd.," these are *your* lawns. "*Aquellos, señores, son los*," or, sus "*enemigos* de vmds.," those gentlemen are *your* enemies. "*Señor, mi conduta y* la de vmd. *son mui diferentes*," sir, my conduct and *yours*, are very different. In familiar discourse, when a question is asked, the words *de vmd.*, and *de vmds.*, are frequently suppressed; in this case, the pronoun

* The possessive pronoun is used in Spanish, in the cases in which the article might render the sentence ambiguous; for instance: "*Vienes á complacerte en la obra de* tus *manos?*" dost thou come to take pleasure in the work of *thy* hands? Had the article been used in place of the pronoun, the person to whom the hands belonged would have been unknown.

† Except when we speak of great personages; as, "*Inutil será señor todo vuestro poder*," all your power will be useless.

alone can be used; as, "*Señora, ¿cuanto tiempo hace que* sus *hijos estan en el colegio?*" Madam, how long is it, since *your* sons have been in the college? ¿"*Han* llegado sus *géneros?*" have *your* goods arrived?

CORROBORATIONS.

Quitándose la máscara LE echó grillos á *los* pies y esposas á *las* manos. TEODORO DE ALMEIDA.	*Taking off his mask, he put chains to his feet, and hand-cuffs to his hands.*
El impio Alejo, para subir al trono, encerró en una mazmorra á su hermano el Emperador Isaac Lange, y *le* sacó *los* ojos. TEODORO DE ALMEIDA.	*The impious Alexis, to ascend the throne, shut up in a dungeon his brother, the Emperor Isaac Lange, and put out his eyes.*
Lo que quiere *su* tio DE USTED no es verle cada ocho dis; sino saber que es hombre de juicio y que cumple con sus obligaciones. LEANDRO FERNANDEZ DE MORATIN.	*What your uncle wishes is, not to see you every eight days, but to know that you are a man of sense, and that you fulfil your duty.*

EXERCISES.

(1st.) (As soon as) (he lifted up) his eyes to heaven,
luego que levantó ojo cielo
he repented of his wickedness. By force of study
(se arrepintió) maldad á fuerza estudio
he impaired his health. Some of the Brahmans
(se ha) dañado salud Bracmanes
have their[2] hands[3] tied[1] behind their backs, and
(se hacen) mano atar (detras de) espaldas
break their joints by carrying them violently
(se rompen) coyunturas † pasando (con violencia)
over their heads. The said gentleman, wore at
sobre cabeza tal caballero traia á

to him) in an angry tone. (He put on) his coat in
dijo de airado tono se ponia casaca de
a very curious manner.
curioso modo

OBSERVATION.

Your highness knows well that the result of
alteza sabe bien que resultado
these factions (will be) fatal to your interests.
estas ——— será ——— á interes
Gentlemen, your prodigality and mine, have ruined
caballeros prodigalidad han arruinado
his family. Madam, how (do you expect) (to have)
familia Señora como puede esperar tener
your children obedient, if you are so indulgent.
hijos obedientes si es indulgente
Sir, I am your servant. I never (would trust on)
Señor soi criado nunca me fiaria de
your promises, for you never fulfil them. His
promesas pues cumple
servants and yours are in prison.
criado están cárcel

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.*

OBSERVATION.

The relative pronouns are, in the Spanish language, *quien*, who;—*cual*,—*que*,—who, which, or that;—*cuyo*,—whose, or of which.

Quien, changes from singular to plural only—*quienes*.

Cual, changes, also, from singular to plural only—*cuales*. This pronoun is, however, always preceded by the article, agreeing

* See the nature and declension of these pronouns, Etymology, page 79.

with the substantive to which the pronoun relates; as, *el cual; la cual; lo cual; los cuales; las cuales.*

Que, whether it refer to a singular, or a plural; a masculine or a feminine noun, never changes.

Cuyo, like an adjective of two terminations, changes from singular to plural, and from masculine to feminine; as, *cuyo, cuya, cuyos, cuyas.*

AGREEMENT AND RELATION OF RELATIVES.

RULE XXX.

Quien,* relates to persons only, and agrees with them.

Cual and *que*, refer to persons and things, and agree with them.

Cuyo, relates also to persons and to things; but it agrees with the noun which immediately follows it.

EXAMPLES.

"*El papa es* quien *lo dice*," the pope is he *who* says it. "*El general á* quien *vmd. teme*," the general *whom* you fear. "*El soldado* que *vino y por* el cual *mandé el parte*," the soldier *who* came, and by *whom* I sent the despatch. "*La nacion* cuyo *gobierno es sabio, es feliz*," the nation *whose* government is wise, is happy: "*Las calles* cuyas *casas son hermosas, son agradables*," the streets, *whose*, or the houses *of which* are handsome, are agreeable.

EXERCISES.

It is he who made man, and who (will reward) him,
† *es* *hizo* *recompensará*

* When *quien* is governed by a verb, it is always preceded by *á;* as, "*El hombre á quien vimos*," the man *whom* we saw. "*Los soldados* á quienes *conquistamos*," the soldiers whom we conquered.

and we are the sinners whom he calls, and for whom he
somos pecador llama por
suffered. Self love is the first that exists, and
sufrió (amor propio) es primero que ecsiste
the last that dies, in the heart of man. The
último que muere corazon
man that fears God, and that fears only him, is
que teme (á Dios) que teme (solo á)
truly free. Nero caused the[2] christians (to be
verdaderamente libre Neron hizo cristiano
accused of[1]) setting Rome on fire,
acusar á (de haber incendiado á) Roma † †
which* (he ordered to be done[2]) himself.[1] The God
hizo hacer (el mismo)
of armies whose cause we defend, (will protect) us.
egército causa defendemos protegerá
Socrates was instructed in eloquence by a woman whose
——— *fué instruido elocuencia por*
name was Aspasia. The Magi and Chaldeans, the
nombre era ——— Mageo Caldeo
chief of whom was Zoroaster,† employed their studies
cabo era ——— empleáron estudio
upon magic and astrology. Minos, whose wisdom
á mágica astrología sabiduría
and laws had been so much revered, obtained the
lei han sido reverenciado obtuvo
appellation of the favourite of the gods.
renombre favorito

* When *which* does not refer to a certain word, but to a whole sentence or circumstance, it is translated in Spanish by *lo cual.*

† When *of whom*, or *of which*, is used in English in place of *whose;* that preposition and pronoun cannot, in Spanish, be translated by any other than *cuyo-a, os-as.*

Consta la historia de las Indias de tres acciones grandes, *que* pueden competir con las mayores *que* han visto los siglos.
ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

The history of the Indies is composed of three great actions, which can challenge a comparison with the greatest the world has ever seen.

Las Indias occidentales se componen de dos monarquías mui dilatadas y estas de infinidad de provincias y de innumerables islas, dentro de *cuyos* limites mandaban diferentes régulos ó caciques.
ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

The West Indies contain two very extended monarchies, and these, a great number of provinces and innumerable islands within the limits of which, various chieftains or caciques commanded.

EXERCISES.

The most unfortunate of men, is a king who believes
degraciado es cree
that his happiness consists in making others
consiste en hacer (á otros)
miserable. Apollo killed the Cyclops, who had forged
——— *Apolo mató á Ciclope habian forjado*
the (thunderbolts) of Jupiter. One ought to think and
rayo ——— (uno debe) † pensar
observe (a long time,) (before he) chooses the friend
observar mucho tiempo ántes de elegir amigo
to whom he intends to give his confidence. It is a
intenta † dar su confianza † es
difficult,[2] but meritorious thing[1] to love those by
dificil pero meritorio cosa † amar (á aquellos) por
whom we have been wronged. It is necessary that
hemos sido injuriado † es necesario
(we should take care) to whom and of whom we speak,
tengamos cuidado hablamos
to be circumspect. The king whom we serve is
para ser circunspecto servimos es

generous, and he will reward us, if we deserve it.
generoso recompensará merecemos
What some like, others dislike. We should
(á algunos gusta á otros disgusta) debemos
always do that which our heart tells us is
siempre hacer nuestro corazon dice (que
right. When a man (looks at) the state of
está bien hecho) cuando observa estado
things, he knows not* what (to say.) He who does not*
cosa sabe decir él que †
know what (to do) in his youth, less (will he
sabe hacer su juventud ménos sabrá
know) it, in his (old age.)
su vegez

RULE XXXII.

Cual may generally be used after *que* or *quien* have been employed; as, "*La casa* que *vmd. construyó y* la cual *yo compré, ha caido,*" the house *which* you built, and *which* I bought, has fallen. "*Las mugeres* á quienes *vmd. vió, y á* las cuales *dié mi recado, estan aqui,*" the women *whom* you saw, and *to whom* you delivered my message, are here now. *Cual* may, generally, be employed when more than one relative is used in reference to a substantive or sentence; and when any preposition except *to*, precedes the noun.

CORROBORATION.

Las primeras historias *que* han escrito los Europeos son tal vez las de los Andaluces, de *las cuales* habla Estrabon.	*The first histories which the Europeans have written, are those of the Andalusians, of which Strabo speaks.*

JUAN FRANCISCO DE MASDEU.

* See page 178, of verbs, used interrogatively or negatively.

EXERCISES.

The God to whom we pray, and whom we worship,
Dios rogamos adoramos
(will give) us eternal glory. The anxieties, labours,
dará eterno gloria ansia trabajo
and perplexities which we undergo, and which some-
confusion sufrimos algunas
times we cannot avoid, teach us the necessity
veces (no podemos) evitar (hacen ver) necesidad
of virtue and judgment. Cervántes, Lope de Vega,
virtud juicio ——— ———
Calderon de la Barca, and Francisco de Quevedo, are
——— ——— ——— *son*
authors whom I read incessantly, whom I cannot
autor leo incesantamente (no puedo)
sufficiently admire, and of whom Spain (should be
suficientemente admirar España debe vana-
proud.) The many precipices which are before
gloriarse precipicio están (delante de)
us, and into which we (so frequently) fall, are so
en tantas veces son otras
many admonitions for our good conduct. The time
tantas) ——— *conduta-*
which we take (in forming) plans for our fu-
pasamos formando plan para fu-
ture conduct; or which we employ in the sad
conducta empleamos triste
recollection of past events, is, generally, time
memoria pasado caso es generalmente tiempo
lost.
perdido

(made use of) to deliver the Israelites. If the wiles
se sirvió para librar á Israelita estratagema
a general has recourse to, be successful, they
——— *tiene recurso (tienen buen acierto)*
(are considered*) mighty efforts of human genius.
se consideran grande esfuerzo humano ingenio
The temptations we daily fall into, (ought to)
tentacion diariamente caemos en deben
convince us of the dangers the world we live
convencer peligro mundo vivimos
in, is surrounded with.
está rodeado de

RULE XXXIV.

When, in English, a personal pronoun in the third person is before the relative *who*, or *that;* the personal pronoun, is, in Spanish, rendered by the corresponding article, and the relative by *que;* thus:

He who, *El que.*
She that, *La que.*
They or those who, *Los* or *las que.*

EXAMPLES.

"El que *es agradable de natural, tiene un buen don,*" *he who* is agreeable by nature, has a good gift. "La que *pasa su tiempo en el estudio, es mas útil, que* las que *le pasan en niñerías,*" *she who* spends her time in study, is more useful than *those who* spend it in trifles.

EXERCISES.

Those who complain of the pains they suffer,
(se quejan) trabajo sufren

*See page 278, note (2.)

forget those they have occasioned. They
(se olvidan de) los han ocasionado
who till the fields, says Olivia, are not the slaves
cultivan campo dice son esclavo
of us who dwell in the cities, but our parents, since
habitamos ciudad sino padre (pues que)
they support us. He who does not know what (to
mantienen † sabe á que
apply himself to) during his youth, (will not know)
aplicarse durante su juventud no sabrá
what (to do) in his (old age.) Those who praise us,
hacer su vegez alaban
wish our favour; those who correct us, our good.
desean favor corrigen bien
He who is always occupied, has[2] always[1] time.
está siempre ocupado tiene tiempo
She who has beauty, should also endeavour (to
tiene hermosura debe tambien procurar á te-
have) knowledge. They that (know themselves,)
ner conocimiento se conocen
have more knowledge, than two thirds of
tienen conocimiento (terceras partes)
mankind.
(género humano)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.*

By interrogative pronouns, it is understood, the relative pronouns, when used to ask a question.

RULE XXXV.

In questions, *who*, is invariably translated by *quien; which*, by *cual;*—and *what*, by *qué*.

*See page 79.

Note 1. *Cuyo*, [whose,] in asking a question, is very frequently rendered by *de quien* [*of whom;*] as, "¿De quien [*cuyo*] *es este prado?*" *whose* is this lawn? "¿De quien [*cuyas*] *son aquellas bellas manzanas?*" *whose* are those fine apples.

Note 2. If a preposition govern the interrogative pronoun, the answer must be preceded by the same preposition; as, "¿De *qué murió?*" "de *calentura*," *of* what did she die? a fever. "¿Contra *quien pelcáron?*" "contra *Pedro*," *against* whom did they fight? Peter.

EXERCISES.

Who is that man that (would not relieve) the poor
es aquel *no socorreria* *pobre*
(being able to do it.) Which of the commandments
pudiendo *mandamiento*
(have we not sinned) against.* Who is man, but
no hemos pecado *contra* *es* *sino*
an image of God, placed on this world by him
imágen *Dios* *puesto* *este mundo*
(that he might worship him) and afterwards enjoy
para que le adorase *despues* *gozase*
the blessings of heaven.
felicidad *cielo.*

(*Note* 1.) Whose fault (will it be) if a man (is to
culpa *será* *ha de*
be deprived of seeing) the face of God in the next
estar privado de ver *cara* *otro*
world? If Adam and Eve were the parents of
—— *Eva fuéron* *padre*
mankind, whose sons are we? Oh beautiful and
(género humano) *hijo* — *hermoso*

* The student must always be careful to place the preposition before the relative which it governs. See page 301; rule xxxiii. note 1.

AGREEMENT AND USE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXVI.

The demonstrative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with the noun which they demonstrate, show, or point out, in gender, number and case.

*Este,-a** &c. may be translated by *this* and *ese-a*, &c. *aquel-la*, &c. by *that;* as, "*Yo admiro muchísimo* esta *obra*," I admire *this* work very much. "Dame ese *libro que está en la mesa*," give me that book, which lies on the table. "*Dale* aquella *cartera*," give him *that* letter-case.

CORROBORATIONS.

De que podrian servir los consejos de la sabiduria al que se hallase destituido de *esta* LLAMA, de *esta* INSPIRACION, de *este* ENTUSIASMO pues con *estas* METÁFORAS poëticas se difine el ingenio. ANTONIO DE CAPMANY.

What would the counsels of wisdom avail him who should be destitute of this flame, of this inspiration, of this enthusiasm, for it is with these poetical metaphors that genius is defined.

De qué te aprovecha *esa* INQUIETUD de tu imaginacion, *esa* TURBACION de pensamientos, *esa* INFATIGABLE variedad de deseos? Qué puede ganar tu corazon con todo *ese* ESTRUENDO de tu orgullo? Qué esperas hallar en *esos* ESPACIOS en que corres siempre vago, y nunca satisfecho? PABLO OLAVIDES.

What advantage canst thou derive of this inquietude of mind, this whirlwind of thoughts, this indefatigable variety of wishes? What can thy heart gain with this noise of thy pride? What canst thou expect to find in this spacious world, in which you are always wandering but never satisfied.

* When the demonstrative *este*, and *ese*, precede the adjective *otro*, [other] the adjective and pronoun are both joined, and form a single word; as, *este, estotrō; esta, estotra; ese, esotro; estos, estotros*, &c.

Pues que dirémos, señor, respondió Sancho á esto de parecerse tanto *aquel* CABALLERO, sea el que se fuere, al Bachiller Carrasco, y su escudero á Tomé Cecial mi compadre.

MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

What will we then say, answered Sancho, at the circumstance of that gentleman, be he who he may, resembling so much Bachelor Carrasco, and his esquire, Tome Cecial, my friend.

EXERCISES.

This is a most useful* exercise to lead boys into a
útil egercicio infundir á niños†
complete and thorough knowledge of what they are
completo perfecto conocimiento estan
doing. Are these thoughts, O Telemachus! worthy
haciendo son pensamiento Telemaco digno
of the son of Ulysses? (There is) a very great inequality†
hijo hai desigualdad
among men as to their internal endowments,
entre (en cuant á) interior prenda
and their external conditions in this life. Those evils
esterior ——— vida mal
of which thou complainest, are caused by those pleasures
quejas son causado placer
to which (thou didst give thyself up.) That is to what
te entregaste
I never shall consent. This is a property which most‡
consentiré propiedad
men have, or which they may attain. That poverty
tienen pueden obtener pobreza

* *Most*, now, is not used to compare; it must, therefore, be translated by *mui*, or adding the termination *ísimo*, to the adjective *útil*. See rule xx., and its reference, page 253, reference*.

† See note 5, page 227.

‡ See how *most* is translated in cases like the above, page 253, note 1.

of thine, and those misfortunes of his, proceeded from
dasgracia *procediéron*
the same cause.
mismo causa

OBSERVATION.

As *that* cannot be indiscriminately translated by *ese*, or *aquel*, it is necessary to state, that *este*, denotes proximity; *ese*, moderate distance; and *aquel*; remoteness: as, este *libro*, this book (here;) ese *libro*, that book (there;) aquel *libro*, that book (yonder.)

When these pronouns relate to time, *este* denotes time present; *ese* time past; and *aquel* time still further removed from the present; as, "*Este hombre que ves*, ese *hombre que has visto hoi*, *y* aquel *hombre que vimos las semana pasada*, *son parientes mios*," *this* man whom you see, *that* man whom you have seen to-day, and *the one* whom you saw last week, are relations of mine.

RULE XXXVII.

When, in English, the personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *they*, or *those*, being in the nominative or objective case, precede a relative pronoun governed by a verb* or preposition, the personal pronouns are, in Spanish, rendered by the corresponding demonstratives; and the English relative, invariably, by *quien;* Examples; "*He whom* we worship, is eternal," aquel á quien *adoramos es eterno.* "*They*" [or those] "*of whom* we spoke, have arrived," aquellos de quienes *hablamos han llegado.* "*She whom* you taught dancing, is her

* Whenever the English relative is governed by a verb, the personal pronoun may also be translated by the corresponding article. When this takes place, *que* is used instead of *quien;* as, "*He whom* we worship," may be rendered by "Aquel á quien *adoramos*," or El que *adoramos*. "The tyrant punishes *those whom* he fears," by "*El tirano castiga* á aquellos á quienes *teme*," or El tirano castiga *á los que* teme.

CORROBORATIONS.

Yo tambien de hoi mas soi quito de la palabra que os dí, pues con ayuda del alto Dios, y con el favor DE *aquella* POR *quien* yo vivo y respiro, tambien la he cumplido.

MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

I, also, from this day forth, am exonerated from the promise which I made to you, for, with the help of God, and the favour of her for whom I live and breathe, I have fulfilled it.

Suele ser flaco argumento el de la autoridad para disputar CON *los que* tienen la razon y la fuerza de su parte.

ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

Authority is apt to be a very feeble argument, to dispute with those who have reason and strength on their side.

Al que has de castigar con obras, no trates mal con palabras pues le basta al desdichado la pena del suplicio sin la añadidura de las malas razones.

MIGUEL DE CERVANTES.

He whom thou art to punish with actions, do not abuse with words, for it is hard enough for the wretch to suffer capital punishment without additional improper epithets.

EXERCISES.

He whom (every body) fears, must fear (every body.)
todos temen debe temer á todos

Those whom adversity has not tested, have seen the
adversidad ha probado han visto

world but on one side. Those with whom (no body)
mundo solo de un lado nadie

of good character associates, have some deficiency
carácter (tiene trato) tiene alguna falta

or vice. She whom (every body) admires, must pos-
vicio nadie admira debe po-

sess something more than exterior excellencies. They
seer algo esterior escelencia

by whom we have been visited this morning, are very
hemos sido visitado mañana son

accomplished gentlemen. He against whom they had
pulido caballero contra tenian
so many prejudices, has (proved to be) a man of
preocupacion ha mostrado son
integrity; and those on whom they placed unbounded
bien en pusiéron ilimitada
confidence, have been traitors. We like[2] better[1]
confianza han sido traidor deseamos (mas bien)
(to see) those on whom we confer benefits, than those
ver á conferimos favor
from whom we receive them.
de recibimos

(*Note* 1.) Men like those who like men.
quieren (quieren á)
(Suavity of manners) towards those whom we
un modo suave hacia
consider our inferiors, is the only manner
consideramos ——— es único medio
of drawing the distinction. It too frequently
hacer distincion (sucede con demasiada
happens that those who wallow in pleasures,
frecuencia) (se encenegan) placer
forget them who cannot supply their absolute
(se olvidan de) (no pueden) suplir absoluto
necessities. (Should we not call) an enemy to* the
menester no llamaríamos de
republic, him who (should violate) the laws? (Should
república violase lei no
we not call) a friend to humanity. him who (should
llamaríamos amigo humanidad se
sympathize with) the sufferings of men, and relieve
compadeciese de trabajo socorriese

* See page 224, reference *.

their necessities? Politeness, (independently of)
miseria *urbanidad* *ademas de*
(its pleasing) (every body,) renders him[2] who practises
gustar á *todos* *hace* *practica*
it, (pleased with himself.[1])
estar satisfecho en sí

RULE XXXVIII.

The latter is generally translated *este*, and *the former* *ese*, or *aquel* in the corresponding gender and number; as, "Virtue and vice produce different effects; *the former*, makes men happy, *the latter*, makes them miserable," *la virtud y el vicio, producen efectos diferentes;* esa or aquella, *hace felices á los hombres*, este *los hace desdichados.*

Note 1. When *that*, being followed by *of* or *which*, refers to a noun already mentioned, it is rendered by the Spanish article in the corresponding number and gender; as, "In his house and in *that* of the earl," *en su casa y en* la *del conde.* "I extracted it from this book, and *that* which I bought," *lo estrage de este libro y* del *que compré.*

Note 2. *That is*, when used in the sense of *namely*, is translated *esto es;* as, "He made us alight at an inn, which is at the entrance of the village, *that is*, a little out of it," *hízonos apear en un meson, que está á la entrada del* lugar, esto es, *un poco fuera de él.*

CORROBORATIONS.

Estaban las plazas y las calles ocupadas de inumerable pueblo que concurrió á ver la entrada (de los Españoles) sin armas que pudiesen dar cuidado ni otro rumor QUE *el* DE la muchedumbre.

ANTONIO DE SOLIS.

The public squares and the streets were occupied by an immense concourse that went to see the entry of the Spaniards without any arms that could excite the least uneasiness, nor any noise except that of the multitude.

(*Note* 2.) The first thing which I did, was to leave
hice fué † *dejar*
the mule at discretion, that is, (to go) at the pace
mula á ——— *que fuese á* *paso*
she liked. Man always ought to have in view that
(que quisiera) *debe* † *tener en mira*
he is an accountable being, that is, he must die and
es *responsable* *ser* *debe morir*
answer for his actions in the day of judgment.
(responder por) ——— † *dia del juicio*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns are: *uno*†*-os; alguien; alguno*†*-os; nadie; ninguno*†*-os; mucho*†*-os; algo; nada; todo*†*-os; ámbos;*† *entrámbos;*† *varios;*† *cada; tal-es; otro*†*-os; quinquiera; cualquiera; cualesquiera.*

The manner in which the above pronouns are construed in English, will be shown in the following rules:

(1.) *One*, is rendered by *uno;* as, "One does not know what to think," *no sabe* uno *que pensar.*

(2.) *Somebody, some one, any body, any one,* are rendered by *alguien* or by *alguno*, in the singular; as, "Has *any body* said it?" *¿lo ha dicho* alguien? "*Some one* may have said it," alguno *puede haberle dicho.*

Note 1. When *any body* or *any one* means any body whatever, we translate it in the same manner as *whoever.*

Note 2. *Some one*, or *any one*, being followed by *of*, must never be translated *alguien*, but *alguno;* as, "Alguno de ellos," *some one of* them.

† When these pronouns refer to a feminine noun, they change, like adjectives, their termination into *a*, or *as.*

In the arrangement of the indefinite pronouns, we have followed Mr. McHenry.

(3.) *Nobody, no man, no one, not any body, not any one*, is construed *nadie*, or *ninguno* in the singular; as, "He fears *nobody*," *a* nadie *teme*. "I see *no one*," *a* ninguno *veo*.

(4.) *Something, any thing*, is *algo;* as, "Hast thou *any thing* to say to me?" *¿tienes* algo *que decirme?* "I had *something* to tell thee," *tenia* algo *que contarte*.

Note 1. In their plural, they must be literally translated; as, "*Vi* algunas cosas *que me digustáron*," I saw *some things* which disgusted me.

(5.) *Nothing, not any thing*, is translated *nada;* as. "*Not any thing* he said convinced her," nada *de lo que dijo la convenció*. "His entreaties availed *nothing*," nada *importáron sus súplicas*.

Note 1. *Algo* and *nada*, when used as substantives, admit a noun after them preceded by *de;* as, "*Hai* algo *de nuevo?*" is there *any thing* new? "*Su hermano de vmd. tiene* algo *de poeta*," your brother is *something* of a poet.

(6.) *Some*, or *any*, is rendered by *alguno* in both numbers, or by *unos;* as, "I want books, have you *any?*" *me faltan libros ¿tiene vmd.* algunos? "Do you know *any* of these ladies?" *¿Conoce vmd. á* algunas *de estas señoras?* "I know *some*," *conozco á* unas.

(7.) *None, not any*, by *ninguno;* examples: "Ninguna *de estas señoras es la hija casada*," *none* of these ladies, is the married daughter. "*A* ninguno *le occurrió que podia ser aquella una ficcion*," it did not occur to *any* that the whole might be a fiction.

(8.) *Whoever, whosoever, whichever*, or *whichsoever*, are translated *quienquiera que*, or *cualquiera que*, in both numbers; as, "*Whoever* thou mayest be," quienquiera *que seas*. "*Whoever* may come," cualquiera

que venga. "To *whomsoever* you meet," *a* cualquiera *que vmd. encuentre.*

Note 1. *Cualquiera* very frequently loses the last vowel in both numbers, but this never happens, except when it is followed by some noun with which it agrees; as, *cualquier hombre, cualquier cosa, cualesquier medios, cualesquier causas.*

(9.) *Whatever*, or *whatsoever*, must be expressed by *cualquier cosa que;* as, "*Whatever* I say," cualquier cosa que *digo.* "*Whatsoever* thou mayest see," cualquier cosa *que veas.*

Note 1. *Whatever*, when used in the sense of *all which*, is generally expressed by *todo lo que*; as, "He did *whatever* they bade him," *hizo* todo lo que *le mandáron.*

(10.) *Another, other, others*, is rendered by *otro* in both numbers; as, "Send me *another*" *mándame* otro. "These books are dear, but I have *others* cheaper," *estos libros son caros, pero tengo* otros *mas baratos.*

Note 1. When the possessive case of these pronouns, is very vaguely used; that is, when it is employed as in opposition to *one's own* only, it is then resolved into the Spanish adjective *ageno:* as, "*No codicies los bienes* agenos," do not covet *another's* wealth. "*Me ecsortáron á que no tomase lo* ageno *contra la voluntad de su dueño,*" they exhorted me not to take the property of *another*, against the will of its owner.

(11.) *Each other* is translated *uno otro;* and *one another, unos otros;* with or without the article, and with the corresponding preposition placed between them: as, of each other, *el uno del otro*, or *uno de otro.* "The husband and wife love *each other;* but the sons and daughters, hate *one another,*" *el marido y la muger se aman* uno á otro; *pero los hijos y las hijas se aborrecen* los unos á los otros.

(17.) *All* is translated *todo* in both numbers; as, "*All* that glitters is not gold," todo *lo que brilla no es oro.* "I invited many, but they did not *all* come," *convidé á muchos, pero no viniéron* todos.*

EXERCISES.

One ought not (to be) judge and plaintiff in the
debe ser juez demandador
same cause. *No one* is free from death. Fickle
mismo es libre muerte variable
minds begin many things and finish *none. Who-*
genio empiezan cosa (no acaban)
soever despises the poor, is despicable. *One* sows
desprecia a pobre es despreciable siembra
the seed, *another* gathers the fruit. Men ought
semilla coge fruto deben
to love *one another. Many* (deceive themselves,)
(amarse á) se engañan
wishing to deceive *others.* The world is a stage,
queriendo † (engañar a) mundo es teatro
in which *every one* plays his part. All men, said
representa papel dijo
he, wish to (appropriate to themselves) the wealth of
desean † apropiarse bien
another. Consider, man, that after thy death, all
considera (despues de) muerte

* Should the student, while occupied in writing the exercises on the above pronouns, think the rules too numerous to be remembered; he may, by referring to them, avoid any difficulty, which, from this circumstance, may arise. As the construction of each English indefinite pronoun, has been separately explained; and in the Exercises, these parts of speech have been printed in *Italic* characters as in the Rules, the research cannot be attended with much difficulty.

thy hopes (will have vanished,) not even *one* (will
esperanza desvanecerán ni aun que-
remain) to thee. Among authors (there are) *some*, who
dará entre hai
copy literally from *one another*, and *others*, who
copian literalmente
make theirs the thoughts of *others*. Solomon was
hacen pensamiento Salomon era
the most fortunate, and Job the most unfortunate of
feliz — infeliz
men: yet *both* declare that *all* is vanity.
(sin embargo) declaran es vanidad
Every thing God has created proclaims his omnipotence.
ha creado proclama omnipotencia
How terrible death (will be) to *any one* who has
cuan ——— muerte será á (se haya
neglected his salvation. To receive from *no one*
descuidado de) ——— no recibir
is inhumanity; from *many*, meanness; and from *all*,
es inhumanidad vileza
greediness. If idleness is the mother of *every*
avaricia holgazanería es madre
vice, laziness is the enemy of *every* virtue. *Nothing*
vicio indolencia es enemigo
protects us against the persecutions of malignity;
protege contra ——————— de malignidad
nothing shelters us from the darts of envy.
(nos pone á cubierto) garra envidia
Every body complains of the badness of his memo-
(se quejan) imperfeccion
ry, but *nobody* of his judgment. He who likes *no-*
juicio (quiere á)

body, is much more unhappy than he whom *nobody*
es *infeliz*
likes. *Whatever* ignominy we (may have) incurred,
quiere *ignominia que* *hayamos* *incurrido*
it is almost always in our power to retrieve it.
† *está cuasi siempre* *poder el borrar*
How can we expect that *another* (should keep) our
como podemos esperar *guarde*
secret, when it is more than we can do ourselves.
secreto † *es* *podemos hacer*
No man can (answer for) his courage who has never
puede asegurar *valor* *(nunca se*
been in danger. *Whoever* commits an injustice,
ha visto) *peligro* *comete* *injusticia*
exposes himself to receive *another*. Of all* foibles
(se espone) á † *recibir* *flaqueza*
that which least becomes a man, is vanity. *Who-*
ménos (cae bien á) *es*
soever (shall persevere) until the end (shall be saved.†)
perseverare *hasta* *fin* *se salvará*
Whatever measures the murderer (may take) to flee
medida *asesino* *tome* *para huir*
from himself, crime always will accompany him.
(sí mismo) *delito* *siempre* *acompañará*
The dead (will be raised,) and *every one* (will appear)
muerto *resucitarán* *parecerá*
before the judge, who (will reward) *each* (according to)
ante *juez* *premiará* *segun*
his works.
obra

* *All*, being a plural noun, requires the article in Spanish; as, "Of *all* passions," *de todas* las *pasiones*.

† This, and all similar expressions, may be translated by the verb *ser*, or by the reciprocal pronoun *se*. See page 278, note (2.)

who are most forward in doing them. Flattery, the
estan pronto hacer adulacion
nature of which* is to deceive and betray, (should
proprièdad es † engañar vender se
be avoided) as the poisonous adder. It is remarkable
debe evitar ponzoñoso víbora † es notable
that he is continually endeavouring to serve us,
esta continuamente esforzándose en servir
notwithstanding our ingratitude. Adorable Father of
(á pesár de) ingratitud ———
nature! who does not here perceive and admire
naturaleza (hai aquí que no perciva) ——
thy wisdom. I am the Lord thy God, who teaches
sabiduría soi Señor enseña
thee to profit, and who leads thee by the way
á aprovecharte conduce senda
thou shouldst go. Religion raises men above them-
debes ir ——— *(hace á) (mas de lo*
selves: irreligion (sinks them beneath the brutes:)
que son) ireligion los hace ménos que los brutos)
this binds them down to a poor pitiable speck
hecha † á (pobre y lastimoso) pedazo
of perishable earth, that opens to them† a prospect
perecedero tierra abre perspectiva
in the skies. (More rain falls) in the first[2] two[1]
(á las altas religiones) mas llueve primero
summer[4] months,[3] than in the first two winter
(del verano) mes (del invierno)
ones; but it makes a greater show in the earth, in the
† hace mayor vista tierra

* See note †, page 296.

† For the construction of *to them*, see 3d person, page 271.

latter, than in the former, because there is a much
† † † *(es mucho*
slower[2] evaporation.[1] He who directs the thunder
ménos rápida) ——— *dirige trueno*
is the friend and all-consoling hope of the
es amigo (la esperanza mas consoladora)
Christian. The works of nature, ever superior to
cristiano obra naturaleza siempre ——— *á*
those of art, are[2] particularly so[1] from their admi-
arte son particularmente lo por ———
rable variety, which always affords new subjects of
variedad siempre ofrece espectáculo
wonder and pleasure. We can[2] neither[1] attribute
maravilla gusto podemos ni atribuir
sensibility to plants, nor deny it to them,* with
sensibilidad planta ni negar
certainty. What can equal the perfec-
certidumbre (qué es lo que se puede igualar con) ———
tion of the works of God, and who can describe the
——— *obra puede describir*
infinite power which is displayed in them. Read the
infinito poder se demuestra lee
accounts of those vast treasures of knowledge which
relacion vasto tesoro erudicion
some of the dead have possessed, and some of the
muerto han poseido
living do possess. When (it was said†) to Anaxagoras;
vivo † poseen cuando se dijo á Anajágoras
"The Athenians have condemned you‡ to die;" (he
Ateniense han condenado os á morir

* See (3,) page 279, and rule xxv. page 266.

† See (2,) page 278.

‡ See *Vos*, page 261. The objective case of *vos*, is *os*.

said again) "and nature them."* Cato said, "the
respondió (naturaleza á) Caton dijo
way to keep good acts in memory, is to refresh
modo de guardar obra memoria es † refrescar
them with new." A gamester, the† greater master
con nuevo jugador mas hábil
he is in his art, the worse man he is. He‡ sleeps well
es arte peor † † es duerme bien
who does not feel that he sleeps ill. O! what a mise-
† siente duerme mal —
rable thing it is to be hurt by (such a one) of whom
cosa es (ser injuriado) uno
it is in vain (to complain.) Those who want friends
es vano quejarse necesitan amigo
to whom to open their griefs, are cannibals, of their
† abrir pesar son canibal
own hearts. All that which is past is as a dream; and
† corazon todo es pasado es sueño
he that hopes or depends upon time coming, (dreams
espera se fia de venidero sueña
awaking.)
despierto

OF VERBS.

OBSERVATION.

It was already observed, in Part III. Syntax, page 191, that one of the concords of the Spanish language was between the subject and the verb. Now, we say, that this concord or agreement is of number and person. Thus, for instance, if the person of a

* See note * page 275.

† See rule xviii., page 248.

‡ *He*, or *she*, used in the above manner, is translated by the demonstrative pronoun. See rule xxxiv., page 302.

der arms he *puts* entrenchment over entrenchment. "*Salido de aquel aprieto*, se echa *en otro*," having come out of that conflict, *he throws* himself into another.

(*Note* 5.) Sometimes the present is used to denote a future action; as, "*Si* salgo *esta semana*," if I *go out* this week. "*Si* el viene *mañana*," if he *comes* to-morrow.

EXERCISES.

I am ill,* and she is well. They write† fre-
estar malo *estar bueno* *escribir fre-*
quently, and read[2] seldom.[1] Some men (express
cuentemente *leer (rara vez)* *espre-*
themselves‡) with elegance, and others murder§ their
sarse *con elegancia* *otros* DEGOLLAR
language. The horses neigh and the lions roar.
idioma *caballo relinchar* *leon rugir.*
(*Note* 1.) The Anchorites live in the deserts. They
Anacoreta vivir *desierto* †
say that the Spaniards are grave, the French lively,
DECIR *Español ser* —— *Frances vivo*
and the English majestic. Captain‖ Torbellino
Ingles magestuoso *Capitan* ——

* *Ser* and *Estar*, as well as *haber* and *tener* are considered as helping verbs. See the conjugation of them from page 85, to page 100.

† The regular verbs are divided into three conjugations; the 1st ending in *ar*, the 2d in *er*, and the 3d *ir*. See from page 101, to page 108.

‡ This is a reflective verb. See the definition of this kind of verbs in page 82; and their conjugation, from page 119, to 121.

§ The irregular verbs will be found printed in ITALIC CHARACTERS. For their conjugations the student is referred to irregular verbs, from page 156, to page 164, and to the models after which they are conjugated.

‖ Nouns denoting the dignity, profession, &c. take the article. See page 205, note 2.

wants a footman, he is a choleric, fantastic, and
necesitar lacayo ser colérico fantástico
brutal man, scolds incessantly, (swears at,) kicks, and
—— *gruñir sin cesar jurar patear*
(is apt*) (to maim,) his domestics.
SOLER *estropear á criado.*

(*Note* 2.) They are selling† every thing‡ they have.
estar vender tener
Some erudite men are translating the Latin Classics.
erúdito estar traducir Latino clásicos
Men are speaking of war, and desire peace.
estar hablar guerra desear paz

(*Note* 3.) He (walks out) every morning. They
SALIR *mañana*
study six hours every day. He may say with truth
estudiar hora dia (puede decir) con verdad
that he secures the rice in his pot to every man in
asegurar arroz en la olla de
India. He is now on a great eminence, he can[2]
—— *estar ahora en alta eminencia* PODER
never[1] exceed what he does (this day.)
nunca esceder HACER *hoi*

(*Note* 4.) He enters the territory of the peaceable
entrar territorio apacible
inhabitants; he fights and conquers; takes an
habitante pelear conquistar tomar (una

* *To be apt*, or *to be wont*, soler. See the conjugation of this verb, page 170.

† The gerund of verbs is formed by adding either *ando* or *iendo* to the radical letters of the Infinitive. See pages 107 and 108.

‡ For a translation of any indefinite pronoun, the student is referred to pages 314, 315, 316, 317 and 318.

immense booty, which he divides among his soldiers,
imensidad de) botin dividir entre soldado
and returns home to enjoy a vain and useless triumph.
VOLVER *casa gozar vano inútil triunfo*
(Being stopped) by the first guard, he insisted on seeing
detenido primero guardia insistir en ver
the monarch, they run to obtain his permission, and
monarca correr para obtener ———
return in order to conduct him to his presence.
VOLVER *(á fin de)* CONDUCIR *á presencia*
(*Note* 5.) I depart next[2] week[1] for France.
partir (que viene) semana para Francia
I (shall go away) the moment he comes. If he does
IRSE *al momento que llegar si*
not fight to-morrow, we are safe.
pelear mañana estar salvado

IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XL.

The imperfect tense denotes a former, but progressive state of existence; that is, it represents an action or event which was continued, and though progressively going on at a certain period, as far as we know, remains unfinished; as, "*Iban á caballo, cuando los encontrámos,*" they were riding when we met them. "El estaba *malo entónces,*" he was sick then.

Note 1. Former customs or habits, as well as the character, disposition, or occupation of individuals no longer living, or belonging to persons now alive, but who no longer possess the character, disposition, &c. spoken of, are expressed by the imperfect; as, "*Las Señoras alemanas* llevaban *escofias que parecian torres,*" the German ladies *wore* (*used to wear*) caps in the form of towers. "*Séneca* razonaba y moralizaba *bien,*" Seneca reasoned and mo-

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

RULE XLI.

This tense denotes former, but not progressive state of existence, that is, it represents an action or event as passed and finished; as, "*Llegó ayer*," he arrived yesterday. "*Le hablé anoche*," I spoke to him last night.

Note I. This tense is also used if the conjunctions *cuando*, when; *luego que*, as soon as; *despues que*, after, &c. precede the verb; as, "*luego que llegó*," as soon as he arrived. "*Cuando vino*," when he came.

EXERCISES.

They (behaved themselves) (at that period,) very
comportarse *entónces* *(con*
properly. The king did not pardon him.
mucha propiedad) *rei* *perdonar*
They (were found*) dead in the streets. A storm
hallarse *muerto* *calle* *torrente*
of universal fire blasted every field, consumed
——— *fuego abrasar* *campo* *consumir*
every house, destroyed every temple. Those who
casa *destruir* *templo*
(were able) to evade this tempest, fled to the
PODER † *evitar* *tempestad* HUIR
walled cities. When at last, he saw that (there
murallado *ciudad* *por último* VER *no*
was no) remedy, he confessed the truth. As soon
habia *remedio* *confesar* *verdad*
as they perceived him, they retired.
percibir *retirarse*

* Translate this by the pronoun *se*. See (2) page 278.

OBSERVATION.

The preceding rules might, no doubt, be thought sufficient to obtain a perfect knowledge of the use of the *Imperfect* and *Preterite* tenses. As, however, their distinction is, in some instances, so nice, that it even perplexes a person well versed in the grammatical construction of various languages, we have considered it necessary to make the following observations; which, we hope, will render these two tenses no longer a matter of difficulty.

The *Imperfect*, denotes an action which was progressively going on at a certain period, of which the present time makes a part; leaving the mind in doubt, whether the action is still going on, or whether it was finally completed before the present time. For example; if we say, "he *had* no prospect to enter into the world;" we leave the mind at a loss to know whether he afterwards had, or had not prospect; or if he did, or did not enter into the world. This sentence, should, therefore, be rendered by the Imperfect, thus: "*ningun prospecto* tenia *él de entrar en el mundo.*" Again, if we say, "he *entertained* his friends in a manner suitable to his situation," we only convey the idea, that he *was* in the *habit* of entertaining his friends, &c. at a certain time, of which the present makes a part, without saying whether he continued this conduct or whether he put an end to it; and should, therefore, be translated by the imperfect; as, "hospedaba, *á sus amigos de un modo que sue situacion* pedia.

The *Perfect Indefinite* or *Preterite*, on the other hand, denotes an action which was begun and completely finished, before the present moment; therefore, this present moment makes no part of the time in which the action was commenced, continued, or finished. If we, then say, "*the Romans vanquished*," the meaning which we convey in these expressions, is, that the act of vanquishing was begun, and it remained entirely finished, at some period before the present time; it must, therefore, be rendered in Spanish by the Preterite, thus: "*los Romanos* conquistáron." In the same manner, the following examples; "After this he *lifted up* his head;" "At this time the sound of music *proclaimed* the hour of repast;" "The old man *went away* sufficiently discontented;" should be translated by the Preterite For, the "*lifted up*," "*proclaimed*," and "*went away*," express actions performed, with-

out leaving the mind in any state of doubt, whether they were, or were not, continued; since they have been completely finished at a certain period before the present time.

It is necessary to observe, that, in many instances, the rendering of a sentence by the *Imperfect*, or *Preterite*, depends entirely on the meaning we wish to convey; thus, for instance, if one said, "The valley *supplied* its inhabitants;" meaning that the valley was, at a certain period, continually supplying its inhabitants, and that, for aught we know, it still continues to supply them; thus leaving the mind in a state of uncertainty, whether the supply was continued or discontinued, or whether it is now terminated or not, he ought to translate it by the Imperfect; as, "*El valle* suplia *á sus habitantes.*" But if in saying "The valley *supplied* its inhabitants," is meant to convey the idea, that the valley supplied them at one time, but now on account of the occurrence of some circumstances, it does not supply them any longer, the sentence must necessarily be rendered by the Preterite; as, "*El valle* suplió *á sus habitantes.*" In this latter case, however, the sentence seems to be imperfect, and very often the expression, "*but now it is not so,*" or any other equivalent, is supplied. In this same manner the sentences, "He *loved* her;" "The sides of the mountains *were* covered with trees;" "The banks of the brooks *were* diversified with flowers;" "Every blast *shook* spices from the rocks; and every month *dropped* fruits upon the ground," can be translated by the Imperfect or Preterite. But we may always take for granted, that if no other words follow this kind of sentences, expressing, in a positive manner, that the circumstances expressed in them, no longer exist, they must be rendered by the Imperfect.

The Imperfect is, sometimes, very strongly marked in English. This is, when the action is expressed by the verb *to be* and the present participle; thus, "He *was going* to Rome;" "He *was forming* a conspiracy against his country." In which cases, it is abundantly plain, that whether the action of *going* or *conspiring* is continued, or was terminated, is totally unknown. It is, therefore, an unexceptionable rule, that when in English the action is expressed in the above manner, it must always be translated in Spanish, by the Imperfect.

lofty mountains. Our attention was attracted by the
alto montaña atencion estar ATRAER
most exquisite scenery; the birds in melancholy
esquisito selvas ave melancólico
harmony, sang the departure of the day; and we,
harmonía cantar retirada dia
full of delight and pleasure, insensibly
lleno deleite placer insensiblemente
(fell asleep*) at the sweet murmur of the river
dormirse dulce murmuro rio
which glided at) our feet.
pasar por

PERFECT DEFINITE.

RULE XLII.

This tense is used to denote an action which has been performed, or continued, during a certain space of time of which the present makes a part; as, "Yo he acabado *mis ocupaciones por hoi*," I have finished my occupations for to-day. "*La* he querido *desde que la vi*," I *have liked* her ever since I saw her. "Hemos visto *muchas máravillas en este siglo*," we have seen many wonders in this age.

Note 1. This tense must be used to express the former actions of individuals now living, if no particular time be mentioned; as, "Ha escrito *varias obras escelentes*," he has written various excellent works. If we said that it was in his youth he wrote these works, the chain which links the time when the works were written, with the present period, would be cut off, and therefore

* When an infinitive will be found under an enclosure, the infinitive must be put in the tense above, or continued in the enclosure.

the *Preterite* should be used; as, "Escribió *varias obras escelentes, en su mocedad*," he *wrote* various excellent works in his youth.

This is the principal distinction between the Preterite and Perfect Definite. Both denote an action that has taken place; but the action expressed by the latter must necessarily be connected with the present time. The Preterite, however, may be used on all occasions, provided there be a certainty that the action is terminated. We may, therefore, say, "*le vi*, or *le he visto hoi*," I saw, or have seen, him to-day. "*Le hablé*, or *he hablado esta semana*," I spoke, or have spoken, with him this week. "*Le vi*, and not *le he visto hace un minuto*," I saw him a minute ago.

Note 2. The English Perfect Definite, is sometimes translated in Spanish, by the Present Indicative; thus, "It has been raining for these two hours," it is two hours that (since) it rains, *hace dos horas que llueve ó está llovi-ndo.* "I have been in London for these two years," it is two years that (since) I am in London, *hace dos años que estoi en Lóndres.* If the sentence be negative, the Perfect Indefinite is then used in Spanish; as, "*Hace cuatro años que no le he visto*," I have not seen him for the last four years. If the action be entirely terminated, we use the Preterite; as, "*hace dos años que su padre murió*," his father has been dead these two years.

EXERCISES.

We have petitioned—we have remonstrated—we
haber peticionar *representar*
have supplicated—we have prostrated ourselves
suplicar *prostarse*
before the throne, and have implored its interposition.
delante de *trono* *implorar* ———
Our petitions have been slighted; our remon-
——— *ser* *menospreciar* *repre-*
strances have produced additional violence and*
sentacion *producir* *mas* *violencia*
insult, and we have been spurned from the foot of
insulto *ser* *echar* *pié*

* See page 188, notes * and †.

the throne. Philosophers have made great disco-
filosofo haber HACER *descubri-*
veries in the present age. God has imprinted in the
mientos presente siglo estampar
heart of man the love of liberty.
corazon amor libertad

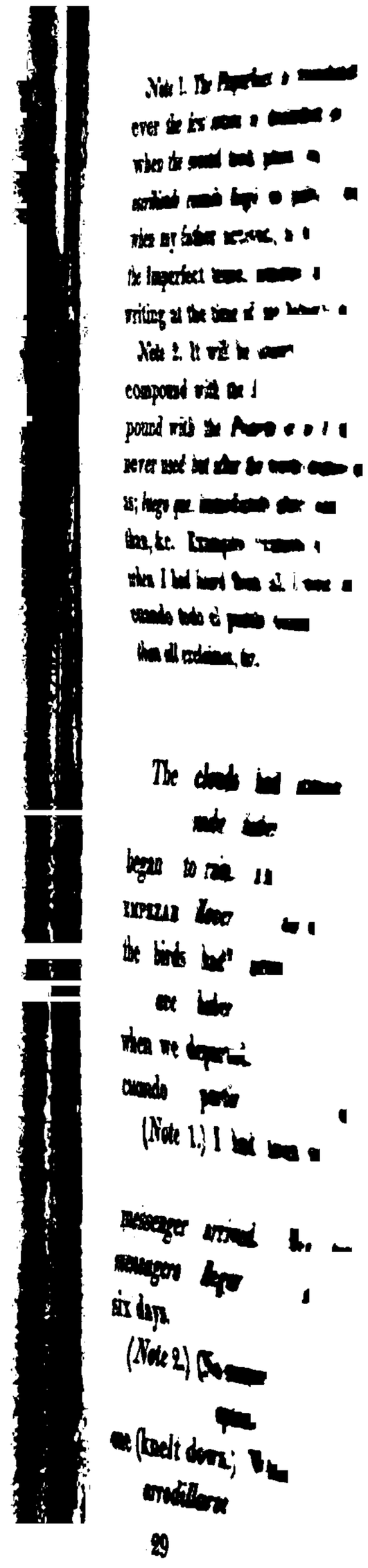
(*Note* 1.) We have escaped many dangers through
escapar peligro en
life. He has done (a great deal of) good. I have
vida hacer mucho bien
travelled (very much) this year.
viajar muchísimo año

(*Note* 2.) (It is) now four years since he has
hace cuatro que
been with the army. He has been in the United
estar con egército hacer
States for these five years. He has been gone for
año márchar
the last ten months. They have not come to see
mes VENIR *á* VER
me for three days.
dia

PLUPERFECT.

RULE XLIII.

This tense denotes an action which was concluded before another took place; that is, prior to some other time specified in the sentence; as, "Ya habia leido *el libro cuando le compré*," I had already read the book when I bought it. "Habia acabado *mi carta ántes que el llegó*," I had finished my letter, before he arrived.



mind was more confused. As soon as silence
etendimiento estar confuso silencio
had been* restored, he began his speech.
haber ser restituir comenzar harenga

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

RULE XLIV.

This future denotes an action which is yet to take place; as, "*El sol saldrá mañana,*" the sun will rise to-morrow. "*Comerémos á las tres,*" we shall dine at three.

EXERCISES.

They will be there in time. What terms shall
estar allí á tiempo palabra
we find which (have not been) already exhausted?
encontrar no se hayan ya usar
Shall we resort to entreaty and humble supplication?
SERVIRSE *de ruego humilde*
Shall we try argument? Besides we shall not
PROBAR *argumento (ademas de eso)*
fight our battles alone.
pelear batalla solos

FUTURE PERFECT.

RULE XLV.

This tense represents an action that is yet to take place, but will have taken place before or at the time when another shall take place; as, "Habré comido *á la una,*" I shall have dined at one o'clock. "Yo *le* habré escrito *ántes de ese dia,*" I shall have written to him before that day.

* See note (2.) page 273.

Note 1. This English future, is, in some instances, rendered by the present tense in Spanish, when the completion of the first action, &c. seems to take place at the very point of time which is mentioned in the sentence; as, to-morrow I *shall have lived* in London two years, *mañana hará dos años que yo* vivo *en Lóndres;* that is the completion of my two years actual residence in London, will take place to-morrow; *el año que viene hará cinco años que* estan *casados*, next year *they* will *have been* married five years.

Note 2. The Spaniards employ sometimes the *future imperfect* instead of the *present*, and the *future perfect* instead of the *perfect definite*, when they affirm something, either as present or past, of which they are not quite certain; as, *ahora* vendrá *de cenar, donde él, y el que le guia*, se habrán emborrachado, he *comes* now (perhaps) from supping, where he, and the one that conducts him, *have* (probably) *got drunk.* Had the person who made the assertion, been quite certain, he would have expressed himself thus: *ahora* viene *de cenar donde él y el que le guia* se han emborrachado.

Note 3. The same construction takes place in asking a question, when the mind is, as it were, persuaded that the interrogatory is almost unnecessary. Thus; Gil Blas, conceiving his situation to be one of the most unhappy, puts the question with the future instead of the present; as, *¡O Cielo! esclamé!* ¿habrá *situacion mas infeliz que la mia?* Oh Heaven! I exclaimed, *is there* a condition more wretched than mine?

EXERCISES.

Even when I shall have studied as much as he, I
aun *estudiar*
shall not know so much. Shall we have finished,
SABER *haber* *acabar*
before he arrives? Shall we not have seen him,
(ántes que) *llegue* VER
when he goes?
(se vaya)

(*Note* 1.) They shall have been married three years
ser *casar* *años*

to-morrow. Next week we shall have lived
mañana *(la semana que viene)* *vivir*
together six months.
junto *mes*

(*Note* 2.) He has perhaps been deceived. They
haber *ser* *engañar*
have no doubt (fallen in company with him) to-
ENCONTRARSE *en su compañía* *(esta*
night. We saw him coming from that place,
noche) VER VENIR *de* *lugar*
where he has probably spent (the whole) day.
donde *pasar* *todo el*

(*Note* 3.) How can (there be) a more wretched
como PODER *haber* *misera*
condition than mine? (Is there) a man who (will
HABER
doubt) it?
dude

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

RULE XLVI.

This mood is used to express commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting; as, "*confiésalo*," confess it. "*Sé bueno*," be good. "*Concédame este favor*," grant me this favour. "*Hazlo*," do it.

(*Note* 1.) It is necessary to observe, that this tense cannot be used with a verb which is preceded by a negative, but that, in such cases, the present subjunctive is employed; as, *no lo digas*, do not say it; *no* vayais, *go* ye not. The second person in both numbers is the only one wherein this deviation is conspicuous. For, the third person of both numbers, as well as the first person plural, are alike in both tenses. In fact, the Spanish Academy, justly considering the latter as inconsistent in an imperative mood, have uniformly rejected it in their grammar.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

OBSERVATION.

The tenses of the indicative, correspond to those of the subjunctive. The only difference between them is this, that the tenses of the indicative denote positive and certain actions or events; and those of the subjunctive, uncertain and doubtful. For example; *aunque estaba allá*, though he was there. In this sentence the act of his being there is expressed as certain, and therefore the verb is in the indicative. If we say, however, *aunque estuviese allí*, though he should be there; we now speak in a doubtful and uncertain manner with regard to his being there. For this reason the tense has been put in the subjunctive.

There exists an erroneous impression concerning conjunctions and the subjunctive mood. It is generally supposed that a conjunction requires the subjunctive mood, merely because this conjunction is placed before a verb. It is not this conjunction that has any influence over the verb—but our meaning. Hence it is that the student should not be carried away with the idea, that any verb is placed in the subjunctive, because the conjunction which precedes, requires it. If I say, "*Aunque viene hoi no le veré*," though he comes to-day I shall not see him, I speak of his arrival as certain, yet the conjunction forms no objection whatever, to the verb being placed in the indicative. Should my intention be to express his arrival as doubtful, then, the verb must necessarily be placed in the subjunctive; thus, "*Aunque viniese hoi* no *le veria*," though he should come to-day I would not see him. There are a few conjunctive expressions, which, as they express doubt in themselves, if they be used at all, they require the subjunctive. They are, *dado que*, granted; *con tal que*, provided, &c. Of these we shall speak in their proper place.

PRESENT.

RULE XLVII.

This tense represents an action doubtful or contingent that is to take place; as, "*Aunque venga*," though he may come. "*Aunque vaya allí*," though he may go

there. As, in the present of this mood, futurity is expressed, we may use the future instead of the present, in all cases, except when the conjunction *si*, if, is used. We might have said with equal propriety, *aunque viniere*, and *aunque fuere allí*.

EXERCISES.

Though the dogs may bark, they will not awake me.
perro *ladrar* DESPERTAR
Whether he come or not, I shall go. That he may
que VENIR *no* IR *(para que)*
maintain the post, I have made many sacrifices.
MANTENER *puesto* *haber* *sacrificio*

IMPERFECT.

RULE XLVIII.

This tense represents a contingent action as going on now, or as having to go on some time hence; as, "*Aunque yo la amara ahora*," though I should love her now. "*Quisiera que viniese*," I wish he would come.

Note 1. It will have been observed in the conjugation of verbs in Etymology, that in Spanish there are three imperfects. The one ending in *ra*, as *amara*, the other in *ria*, as *amaria*, and the other in *se*, as *amase*. We there give an English equivalent, to every one of these imperfects. It must not be supposed from this, that *would* is always equivalent to *ra*, might to *ria*, or should to *se*, for every one of these imperfects might be so used as to require all these auxiliaries in turn.

These imperfects are used in the following manner:

Ra, may be used for either *ria*, or *se*; as, "*Si yo amara*," if I should love. "*Yo amara*," I would love.

(2.) *Ria* is used to denote wish or condition; "*quisiera ir allí*," I should like to go there. "*El seria rico*," he would be rich.

(3.) *Se*, is used whenever any conditional conjunction, or any verb of command precedes the subjunctive; as, "*si yo fuese vmd. yo*

iria," if I were you I would go. "*Yo le dige que viniese*," I commanded him to go. These three rules would, we believe, be sufficient to guide the student in every instance. For, how many rules soever we may give, these three will always be those by which the student will be directed. As the three imperfects of the subjunctive are considered among the greatest difficulties of the Spanish language; we give the following observations and rules, which, with very little variation, we copy from Mr. M'Henry--to every one of which the author has annexed corresponding exercises.

The Spanish Academy remarks, concerning the terminations *ra*, *ria*, and *se*, that the first may, in most instances, be substituted for either of the others. We shall therefore confine our observations chiefly to the second and third terminations, believing that the remark of the Academy sufficiently denotes the extensiveness of the first. At the same time, we shall also warn the student, that in the subsequent examples, the termination *ra* must always be deemed implied, unless the necessity for its rejection should be pointedly noticed.

Of the termination ra, ria, *and* se.

Of ra.

This termination is generally used in ejaculations; as, *¡quién lo* hubiera pensado! who *would have* thought it! *¡dichosa yo si el esceso de mi dolor me* hubiera *quitado la vida!* happy me, if the excess of my grief *had* taken away my life! *¡que de penas y tormentos me* hubiera *ahorrado!* how many afflictions and torments it *would have* spared me!

Of ria and se.

1. If the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive be preceded in English by a conjunction, *se* should be employed; as, although he *might come*, *aunque* viniese; unless he *would have* not come, *aménos que no* hubiese *venido;* provided he *would come*, *con tal que* viniese; if he *would come*, *si él* viniese.

vendria *mañana;* she wrote to us to know *if we would* buy the house, *ella nos escribió para saber si* compraríamos *la casa.*

7. When the verb by which the imperfect of the subjunctive is governed, denotes *promise* or *assurance*, the termination *ria* is the only one which can be used; as, *me prometió que* vendria, he promised me that he *would come; te aseguré que* saldria, I assured thee that he *would go out.*

8. The termination *ria* is the only one used to denote a supposed action, &c. done within a period of time not including the present moment; as, *pero le* pareceria *que dándome su mula gastaria menos en el viage*, but (I suppose) it seemed to him, that by giving me his mule he would spend less on the journey.

9. When *were* is used in English for *would be*, and *had* for *would have*, the former is expressed with *ria*, and the latter with *ra;* as, it *were* (that is, it would be) the greatest folly to believe all that is said, seria, *la mayor locura, creer todo lo que dicen;* many crimes which *had been* (that is, which would have been,) punished at other times, were then committed with impunity, *muchos delitos que* hubieran *sido castigados en otros tiempos, se cometian impunemente entónces.*

10. It is almost unnecessary to observe, that when in English, *would*, *should*, *might*, are not employed as signs of the subjunctive mood, but as principal verbs, they must be translated by *querer*, *deber*, *poder;* as, he would not go, that is, he was unwilling to go, *no quiso ir;* we should forgive our enemies, that is, we ought to forgive, *debemos perdonar á nuestros enemigos;* I know he might have, that is, he had it in his power to have written before, *sé que pudo haber escrito ántes.*

EXERCISES.

1. Though lions might roar. If she should come.
leon *rugir* *si* VENIR
(To the end that) they might study, I bought many
á fin de que *estudiar* *comprar*
books for them.
libro.

2. Had we less pride and more humility,
tener *ménos orgullo* *humildad*
(we would be) happier. Were we to follow the
seriamos *feliz* SEGUIR
dictates of our conscience, (we would be) better.
dictado *conciencia* *seriamos*
Should you go, tell him I am unwell.
IR DECIR *estar* *malo*

3. He obtained permission, to deliver as many
OBTENER *para* DECIR
orations, as he thought proper. They told him
creer *propio* DECIR
they (would only give him) (as much) money as he
solo le darian *cuanto* *dinero* †
could make in one day.
PODER HACER

4. I said to him that I would not go. They
decir IR
knew that they would arrive before me. They
SABER *llegar (antes de)*
sent messengers ten days before, that every
embiar mensagero *(para que)*
thing might be prepared. A guard of twenty soldiers
ser preparado *guardia* *soldado*
was sent, that they might prevent any disorder.
ser remitir PREVENIR *desórden*

5. I would go, but I do not dare. Would you
IR *pero* *atraverse*
not call a man good, if he acted (according to) the
llamar *obrar* *segun*
laws? Would men be so wicked if they only
lei *ser* *malo* *si* *solo*
considered, that after their death they must
considerar *(despues de)* *muerte* *deberán*
give an account of their actions?
DAR *cuenta*

6. This gentleman sent me a word to know if
caballero embiar *recado para saber si*
I would see him. The general (had recourse to) that
VER ——— *usó de*
stratagem, to be perfectly convinced if
estratagema para estar perfectamente convencido si
the enemy would not change their quarters.
enemigo *cambiar* *alojamiento*

7. The Duke promised the company that his
duque prometer á *compañía*
attendance would be sure. If it were now in the
presencia *ser seguro* *ser* *de* †
(day time,) I assure you that the first flower we
dia *asegurar* *primer* *flor*
would meet, would present so many wonders,
encontrar *presentar* *maravilla*
that you would be astonished.
estar asombrado

8. The robbers (no doubt) imagined that we would
ladrones *imaginarse*
patiently submit to their cruelty. He thought,
con paciencia someterse *crueldad* *creer*

PERFECT.

RULE XLIX.

The Perfect of this tense denotes a contingent action which has been commenced and completed some time ago, or which is finished some time hence; as, "*aunque no le* haya visto *por diez años, siempre me manifiesta amor en sus cartas,*" though I *may* not *have seen* him for ten years, he always expresses sentiments of love for me in his letters; "*no admitas á nadie, aunque* haya pagado," admit no person though *he may have paid.*

EXERCISES.

Men promise pleasures to themselves, though at
prometerse placer *aunque*
the time they express their hopes, they may have
tiempo *espresar* *esperanza*
lost every power to gratify them. Provided
PERDER *poder de gratificar* *con tal que*
they have been faithful to their promise, set them
fiel *promesa* PONER
at liberty. He said, though we have lost our
en libertad DECIR PERDER
money, though none of our former friends have
dinero *antiguo amigo haber*
come to assist us, though fortune appears to
VENIR ASISTIR *fortuna*
be against us, despair not, my children.
ser contra *desesperar* *hijo*

PLUPERFECT.

RULE L.

This tense refers to a contingent action which was finished some time since, or before an action did, or will take place. This tense is used in the same manner as the simple perfect, which has been explained at large, in pages 344, 345 and 346, to which we refer the student.

EXERCISES.

Who would have thought that after having
creer *(despues de) haber*
befriended him, he should have become our
(tratado como amigo) HACERSE
enemy? Would you not have been killed, had it
enemigo MORIR
not been for his incessant attention. Should we not
incesante atencion
have loved God, should we not have been good
amar á *ser*
Christians? Who, but a fool, would have ever acted
cristiano *sino* *tonto* *jamas obrar*
so rashly?
temerariamente

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

RULE LI.

This tense refers to a contingent action which will take place at a future time; as, "*Si mañana* lloviere *no irémos*," if it should rain to-morrow we will not go. "*Aunque el eclipse* tomare lugar *al tiempo mencionado*," though the eclipse *should take place* at the time mentioned.

EXERCISES.

Though it may rain* to-day, the weather will not be
LLOVER *hoi* *tiempo* *ser*
cooler. If my father weret to arrive next[2]
(mas frio) *llegar (que viene)*
Monday,[1] I shall certainly relate to him this affair.
lúnes *ciertamente relatar* *negocio*
Should my suit (be concluded) to-morrow, I shall
pleito *concluirse* *mañana*
depart immediately.
SALIR *imediatamente*

FUTURE PERFECT.

RULE LII.

This tense refers to a contingent action which will have already taken place some time hence, or before another action commences; as, "Si vmd. hubiere visto *á mi padre ántes de partir no debe tomar otra medida,*" *should you have seen*‡ my father before you go away, you need not take any other measure.

EXERCISES.

Even when such a thing should have happened
aun cuando tal † *cosa* *suceder*
before he arrives,‖ do not divulge it. Should it not
ántes *llegar* *divulgar*

* It was observed, in page 342, speaking of the present of the subjunctive, that it may be used for the future. We repeat the same thing now, with regard to the future.

† See number 2, pages 345.

‡ See number 2, page 345.

‖ See *antes de*, page 185.

EXERCISES.

The general issued an order that all the soldiers
——— ESPEDIR *órden* *soldado*
who might desert should be shot. I
desertar *(pasados por las armas)*
say that if he should not come to-day, I will not
DECIR VENIR
wait (any longer.) If the contract had been
esperar *mas* *contrato*
made* last year, it would be valid, and (there would
HACER *pasado año* *ser válido* *no habria*
be no) necessity that another should be made.* (There
necesidad *otro* *ser hacer* *hai*
are) some men who would not shudder, (even if)
aturdirse *aunque*
(the whole) world were to perish. By what appellation
todo el mundo PERECER *por que* *nombre*
would we distinguish the wretch who should pay
distinguir á *malvado* *pagar*
with ingratitude the favours received in time of want?
ingratitud *recibir* *necesidad*
What words can express the pity we feel for
PODER *espresar* *compasion* SENTIR *por*
him who should have an irrresistible desire to do
tenir ——— *deseo* *de hacer*
good and had not the means.
bien *tener* *medio*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—PRESENT.

RULE LIII.

This tense represents an action as going on at any indefinite time, without any distinction of persons; as,

* We again refer the student to note (2.) page 278.

"*Les vimos andar,*" we saw them coming. *Pervertir* to pervert. *Dormir*, to sleep.

Note 1. The masculine definite article is often placed before an infinitive. When this occurs, the infinitive is a noun, and as such called a verbal noun; as, "*el oir y el hablar son dos cosas mui diferentes,*" to hear and to speak are two very different things. In such cases, the present participle is often used in English, with articles, or possessive pronouns.

Note 2. The infinitive is used in an absolute manner for the pluperfect of the subjunctive. In that case the preposition *á* must precede it. The phrase, *á saber yó esto*, is as grammatical and elegant as, *si yo hubiera sabido esto*, had I known this.

EXERCISES.

We heard them arguing.* We saw him (taking
OIR *argumentar* VER *despe-*
leave of) his father. He intends (to go away.)
dirse de *padre* *intentar* *partir*
(*Note* 1.) His telling me this, was enough. To
decir *ser* *bastante*
begin is not to end. To suffer with patience the
comenzar *ser* *acabar* *sufrir* *paciencia*
miseries of this life, is done by few.
miseria *vida* *ser* HACER *por*
(*Note* 2.) If he had not acted thus, he would be
obrar *así* *ser*
ruined. Had they not come, he would have
arruinar VENIR *haber*
killed me.
matar

PERFECT.

This tense represents, without distinction of person, an action as past, but it is indefinite with regard to the

* To hear and to see require the present infinitive, and not the gerund, in Spanish.

time in which the action took place; as, "*me acuerdo de haberle visto,*" I recollect to have seen him. "*Nunca me olvidaré de haberle oido cantar,*" I shall never forget to have heard him sing.

EXERCISES.

How could we have refrained from laughing at
como PODER *haber dejarse de* REIR
such nonsense. They will have soon forgotten to
disparate *haber* *olvidarse*
have seen us.
haber VER

OF THE GERUND.*

RULE LIV.

The English participle present, is construed, in Spanish, by the gerund; as, "*Siendo ciertas las noticias,*" the news being certain. "*Estoi escribiendo,*" I am writing. "*Paseando,* or *estando paseando,*" walking, *or* being walking. "*Los encontré leyendo,*" I met them reading.

Note 1. When the present participle expresses some circumstance referring to the objective case of the verbs *to see*, or *to hear*, it is construed by the present infinitive; as, "*La oigo* cantar," I hear her *singing*. "*Nunca vi* representar *esa comedia,*" I never saw that play *acting*, or being acted.

Note 2. Gerunds require the same prepositions as the verbs from which they are derived; as, "Arrepintiéndose *de sus culpas,*" *repenting* of his crimes. "No atreviéndose *á salir,*" *not daring* to go out. "Riñiendo *con todos,*" *quarrelling* with all.

Note 3. If the English participle follow the preposition *by*, we may use either the gerund, or the infinitive preceded by *con*; as, "*La memoria se aumenta* egercitándola, or *con* egercitarla," the memory is increased by *exercising* it.

*See page 84.

tions, arising* from the earth. (How many) have
cion levantarse *cuanto*
repented for not having applied themselves during
ARREPENTIRSE *haber aplicar* *durante*
their youth. Happiness does not consist in living,
juventud *consistir* *vivir*
but in knowing how to live: We shall obtain peace,
sino saber † OBTENER
by making great sacrifices. We ought to spend some
sacrificio *pasar*
of our time in admiring the attributes of God. The
admirar *atributo*
changing of times, and seasons, belongs[2] to Providence
cambio *estacion* PERTENECER
alone.[1] We may improve our style by reading
solo PODER *mejorar* *estilo* *leer*
attentively the best models.
atentamente *modelo*

PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

RULE LV.

This past participle is declinable, except when it is preceded by the verb *haber*, to have; as, "Ha escrito," he has written. "*Ellos han llegado*," they have arrived. "*Serémos felices*," we shall be happy. "*El ha* estado *mui* malo, *y ella mui buena*," he *has been* very *ill*, and she very *well*.

* When the English present participle, can be resolved by the relative and the corresponding tense of the verb, this latter construction should always be used in Spanish; for instance: *arising;* which arise, *que se levantan; accruing*, which accrue, *que resulta* or *resultan*.

Note 1. *Tener*, is, sometimes, used instead of *haber*, before a participle; and, in this case, the participle is indeclinable; but when *tener* governs a substantive, then the participle becomes declinable; as, "*Tengo* escrito," I have *written*. "*Tengo* escrita *una* carta," I have *written* a *letter*. "*Todo lo tengo* hecho," I have *done* every thing. "*Tengo* hechas *las diligencias necesarias*," I have *taken* the necessary steps.

Note 2. The participle is, in Spanish, used as a case absolute; thus, *acabado*, being finished; *hecho*, being done; *muerto*, being dead, &c. When this occurs, it always begins the sentence. Examples: "Acabada *la cena, nos fuímos á pasear*," supper *being over*, we went a-walking. "Tomada *esta resolucion, me levanté, cuando me pareció que Leonarda y Domingo podian ya estar dormidos*," this resolution *being taken* I rose, when it appeared to me that Leonarda and Domingo might already be asleep. "Hecho *este juramento, que estaba bien resulto á no quebrantar, me fuí á buscar algun meson*," this oath *being taken*, which I was well resolved not to break, I went to look for some inn.

EXERCISES.

The cruelties which some barbarous nations have
crueldad *bárbaro*
committed, are horrid.. Alphonso the tenth, surnamed
cometer *ser horrible* *Alfonso* *apellidar*
the sage, renewed the treaty which his father had
sabio *renovar* *tratado*
made with Abousaid. I have[2] never[1] seen,[3] said he, so

---

cruel a man. Greenland was discovered in the ninth
—— *Greolandia* *ser* *descubrir*
century by a Norwegian, called Eric; it is situated
siglo *Noruego* *llamar* —— *estar situado*
between Europe and America. Let us consider who
has given us being, and for what end we have been
ser *fin* *ser*

created; how many are the mercies received; and how
criar *ser* *favor* *cuan*
great the ingratitude with which we have repaid them.
ingratitud VOLVER
We have said to him (to get up early in the morning.)
que madrugase
He concealed himself to avoid the praises he had
esconderse *para evitar* *alabanza* *tener*
so well deserved. Granada (being taken,) Ferdinand
merecer —— *tomar* *Fernando*
ordered all its inhabitants (to go out) of it, carrying
ordenar *habitante* SALIR *llevar*
with them all their property and treasures. The
consigo *efecto* *tesoro*
male issue of the Gothic kings (being extinct)
masculino *línea* *gótico* *estinguir*
the crown of Leon passed to Vermundo's sister.
corona —— *pasar* —— *hermana*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

The excess of the distemper, makes the physician
estremidad *mal* *médico*
cruel. A good instructor endeavours to render agree-
—— —— ESFORZARSE *á* HACER *agra-*
able every thing which is useful. Youth want
dable *útil* *juventud (no tener)*
wisdom to deliberate. Youth sows the seeds
sabiduría para deliberar SEMBRAR *semilla*
of repentance, by pleasure; and the harvest is
arrepentimiento con *cosecha ser*
gathered in (old age) by pain. God is propitious
recoger *vegez con pesadumbres* *ser propicio*

the good, and punish the wicked. On the 4th of
á bueno castigar á malo
March, 1825, James Monroe will have been President of
Diego ——— *presidente*
the United States eight years.* Perhaps† the ministers
ministro
are now signing the capitulation. I suppose (they
estar firmando ——— SUPONER
have learnt) this news. (Is there) a grief like his?
OIR *noticia haber dolor como*
Some said, Can this man be a Deity under the human
DECIR PODER *ser deidad bajo*
form? Remember, man, that thou art dust. Forgive
figura ACORDARSE *ser polvo perdonar*
them, Father, for they know not what they do.
porque SABER HACER
Come to-morrow with thy son, but come not‡ early.
VENIR VENIR *temprano*
Let us profit by his example. Use thy authority
aprovecharse egemplo usar de autoridad
with moderation, and do not abuse thy power. How
——— *abusar de poder*
many men would‖ have perished in that battle!
cuanto perecer batalla
Nations would be happy, if wisdom were the only
feliz sabiduría ser único

* See page 335, note 2.

† See page 339, note 2.

‡ The student must read with particular attention, note 1, in page 340.

‖ See *ra*, *ria*, and *se;* pages 344, 345, 346.

object of sovereigns. Had* we no pride, (we should
soberano *tener* *orgullo*
not complain) of the pride of others. We should
quejarse
be happy now, if Adam (had not sinned.) Caligula
ser *pecar* ———
commanded that the Romans (should render) him divine
mandar HACER *divino*
honours. Were* men to follow the dictates of reason,
honor SEGUIR *precepto* *razon*
(they would save themselves) many sorrows. Had*
ahorrarse *pesadumbre*
Cæsar been less ambitious, he would have done more
ser ménos ambicioso
honour to human nature. Did* you but know
naturaleza *solo* SABER
where I am now, (you would put up) a thousand
OFRECER
supplications to heaven, that (I might return) to your
súplica *porque* VOLVER
house. Oh! had I seen her before her death! Fearing
o VER *(ántes de)* *muerte* *temer*
that study (might fatigue) me. He ordered the general
fatigar *mandar que*
to take† the fortress, and to (put to death) (as many
tomar *fortaleza* *y que* *matar* *á cuantos*

* See number 2, page 345.

† When the English preterite, being expressive of *order* or *command*, precedes an infinitive; this infinitive is, in Spanish, rendered by the imperfect of the subjunctive, with *se;* and the preterite is followed by the conjunction *que:* as, "He *ordered* the general *to take* the fortress," mandó que *el general* tomase *la fortaleza;* that is, [he *ordered that* the general *should take* the fortress.]

as) he found armed, and to pay for all the
encontrar armado *pagar*
provisions which he might want. Without tempta-
víveres *necesitar* *tentasion*
tions (we should not be able) to know ourselves.
PODER CONOCERSE
The innkeeper to whom I related my adventure,
posadero *contar* *aventura*
with which the scoundrel was perhaps better
de *bellaco* *estar*
acquainted than I, pitied me. No one
informado (COMPADECERSE *de*)
seemed to me, then, more suited to believe every
PARECER *entónces* *apto para creer*
thing (I might choose) to tell him. Thou wilt have
QUERER DECIR
(as many* conveniences as) (thou mayest† choose)
cuantas conveniencias QUERER
He gave them permission to do what (they might
DAR *de* HACER
happen to like;)‡ hence it is that they did then what
QUERER *(de aquí)*
they pleased; they do now what they choose; and
QUERER QUERER
doubtless will do hereafter what they will.‖ Ye
(sin duda) *(en adelante)* QUERER
may stop in my hermitage as long as
PODER *quedarse* *hermita* *(todo el tiempo que)*

* *As much as*, is frequently translated by *cuanto*-a; and, *as many as*, by *cuantos*-as.

† See *present*, page 325; and *future imperfect*, page 351.

‡ See observation, page 353.

‖ See observation, page 353.

make the comforts of life. Cadmus taught the
CONSTITUIR *delicia vida* *Cadmo enseñar á*
Greeks the use of letters. Vicious habits
Griegos uso de caracter vicioso costumbre
are diseases, which no human aid can reme-
ser enfermedad humana ayuda PODER *reme-*
dy. The too great indulgence of parents,
diar demasiado indulgencia padres
ruins children. The dog barks when we
arruinar á hijo perro ladrar cuando †
knock at the door. God has imprinted in the heart
llamar á la puerta Dios haber estampar corazon
of man the love of liberty. The prayers of the
amor de libertad oracion
righteous (will be) efficacious. No sooner had
justo ser eficaz no · bien haber
Adam heard the voice, than he (grew ashamed) of
Adan OIR *la voz cuando el avergonzarse**
his nakedness. The Romans always kept the
desnudez Romano siempre tener
sacred fire in the temple of Vesta. Plato banished
sagrado fuego templo de —— Platon desterrar
music (out of) his commonwealth. Socrates learn-
música de república —— apren-
ed to dance when he was (an old man.) (At all times)
der á bailar cuando † ser viejo siempre
the number of the wicked has exceeded that of the
número malo haber esceder

*The pronoun *se*, as it has been observed, at the end of an infinitive, denotes that the verb is reflective, and that it must be conjugated accordingly. See the conjugation of a reflective verb, from page 119 to page 121.

good. The Scythians sacrificed to Diana all the
buenos *Citas* *sacrificar* *á* ——
strangers who fell into their hands.
estrangero CAER *en* *mano*

RULE LVII.

Two or more nouns in the singular, connected by any conjunctive conjunction, have their verb in the plural; as, "*Sócrates* y *Plato* eran *sabios*," Socrates *and* Plato *were* wise. "*El estudio, la perseverancia* y *la paciencia* hacen *al hombre sabio*," study, perseverance *and* patience *make* a man wise.

EXERCISES.

Age and merit render a man venerable; rank
edad *mérito* HACER *á* ——— *puesto*
and dignity render him respectable. Liberality
y dignidad *respetable* *liberalidad*
and thankfulness are the bonds of concord.
reconocimiento *ser* *vínculos* *concordia*
Neither wealth nor power renders us happy. His
*Ni** *riqueza* *ni* HACER
valour and his constancy were never more exposed.
valor *constancia* *ser* *nunca* *mas* *espuesto*
She, he, and I began a concert of mournful howl-
COMENZAR *concierto* *fúnebre* *ala-*
ings. The sun that lights us, the food that we
rido *sol* *alumbrar* *el sustento*
receive, and the rest that we enjoy, admonish
recibir *descanso* *gozar* DEMOSTRAR
us of the infinite beneficence of our Creator.
infinito *beneficencia* *Criador*

* Ni, [*neither, nor*] is considered, in Spanish, a conjunctive, not a disjunctive conjunction. See page 188.

RULE LVIII.

When the disjunctive conjunction *ó*, [or,] is used between two or more nouns, in the singular, the verb agreeing with them, must also be in the singular; as, "*La felicidad* ó *la desdicha del hombre*, está *en sus manos*," man's happiness *or* misery *is* in his hands.

Note 1. In such expressions as, *ó tú ó yo*, either thou or I; *ó el ó ella*, either he or she, &c. the verb is always put in the plural; as, "*O tú, ó yo* estamos *equivocados*," either thou or I *am* mistaken.

EXERCISES.

Death or life is very often put (into the
muerte vida estar (muchas veces) PONER *en*
hands) (of a) judge. A harsh reply or an improper
manos del juez agria respuesta una impropio
word, (is capable) of imbittering domestic life.
palabra PODER *(echar amarguras á) doméstic vida*
When sickness or infirmity attacks us, the
cuando enfermedad pobreza atacar
sincerity of friendship (is approved.) Either my
*sinceridad amistad probarse** *O*
father or my mother (will come) to see us. Either
padre madre VENIR *á* VER *O*
weakness or imagination disturbs him. Either his
flaqueza ——— *perturbar*
enthusiasm or his sensibility has made him crazy.
entusiasmo sensibilidad haber VOLVER *loco*

RULE LIX.

If two or more nouns, either in the singular or in the plural, are not connected by any conjunction, and the

*See (2.) page 278.

EXERCISES.

His are, he will say, the victory and wonders
ser DECIR *victoria* *maravilla*
which we have achieved. Great are the prudence
haber *cumplir* *ser* *prudencia*
and judgment which he manifested. So irresistible
juicio *manifestar* *irresistible*
are his politeness and attractions that they charm
ser *urbanidad* *atraccion* *encantar*
every body. Much is the trouble and many are
(á todo el mundo) *mucho ser* *trabajo* † †
the vexations which we must endure in this
† *vecsaciones* *deber* *sufrir* *en* *esta*
miserable life.
——— *vida*

COLLECTIVE NOUNS.*

RULE LXI.

Definite collective nouns, have generally the verb in the singular; as, "*El* regimiento consistia *de muchos soldados*," the *army consisted* of many soldiers. "*La* arboleda era *mui agradable*," the *grove was* very agreeable. "*La asamblea* contiene *muchos hombres sabios*," the *assembly contains* many wise men.

Indefinite collective nouns, generally require a plural verb; as, "Una tropa *de ninfas coronadas* estaban *sentadas junto á ella*," *a band* of nymphs crowned with flowers was seated near her. "*Esta* gente *aunque* los llevan, van *de por fuerza*," although these *people are* brought with them, they go against their will. "Parte huyéron *á los montes*, parte se acogiéron *á la ciudad*,

* See page 57.

el resto fueron *pasados á cuchillo,*" *a number fled* to the mountains, *a part took refuge* in the city, and the *rest were* put to the sword.*

EXERCISES.

The congress is not in session during the sum-
congreso estar en ——— durante (meses
mer months. The public are always ready to cen-
del verano público estar siempre listo para cen-
sure or to praise. When the nation complains, the
surar ó † alabar cuando la ——— quejarse, (los
rulers should listen to its voice. The present
que la rigen) deber escuchar voz la presente
generation is more enlightened than the former. The
——— ser mas ilustrada que la última la
board of health consisted of twelve members. People
junta sanidad consistir miembro gente
are led by the impulse of their passions. We
dejarse llevar por impulso pasiones †

* The rule given above on the collective nouns, will, in general, be found correct. As, however, there are many writers who do not attend to it, and who, on some occasions, make a singular, and on others, a plural verb agree with a collective noun, we think it necessary to observe, that such instances must be considered as necessary exceptions to the general rule. Nor can such exceptions be exhibited, because they, in a great measure, depend on the ideas, which the author who writes entertains concerning this species of nouns; and therefore, what would be an exception to the rule in one author, would be wholly consistent with it in another. The investigation of these trifling distinctions is often very troublesome, but seldom of any material importance to the student. It is our opinion, therefore, that to follow, in all cases, the rule which we have given above, will be the surest and the most correct plan which the learner can pursue.

read the resolutions in presence of all, but the ma-
leer resoluciones presencia pero plu-
jority opposed them. A multitude of youths
ralidad OPONERSE *á multitud jóvenes*
eagerly[2] pursue[1] pleasure as their chief good.
(con ardor) PERSEGUIR *(el placer) como su mayor bien*

USE OF HABER AND TENER—*TO HAVE.**

HABER, as it has been observed at the bottom of page 89, is employed as an auxiliary verb only; and it can therefore, never be used but before a participle; as, "Hemos visto *muchas cosas en este siglo,*" we *have seen* many things in this age. "*Ellos no se* hubieran destruido, *si* hubieran tenido *mas juicio,*" they would not *have ruined* themselves, *had* they *had* more judgment.

TENER, is used as an active verb denoting possession; as, "*Ademas de su buen entendimiento,* tiene *un gusto raro,*" besides his good understanding, he *has* a rare taste. "*El puede* tener *dinero, pero el dinero no le da honra,*" he may *have* money, but money does not give him honour.

TO BE THIRSTY, *hungry, ashamed, cold, warm,* or *afraid;* is translated by *to have thirst, hunger, &c. tener sed, hambre, vergüenza, frio, calor* or *temor;* as, "They *were thirsty,* and yet *ashamed* to ask for water;" tenian sed, *y sin embargo* tenian verguenza *de pedir agua.*

TO HAVE TO, is rendered, in Spanish, by *tener que;* as, "Then we *had to go,*" *entónces* teníamos que *irnos.* "Though we *have to* stay here, it is an agree-

* See their conjugation, from pages 85 to 93.

services you have rendered him. Although Tantalus
favor que hecho Tántalo
has the water close to his lips, he always is thirsty.
agua junto á labio siempre
Some persons appear wicked only because they are
PARECER *malo solamente*
ashamed of appearing good. Censure is the tax
bueno censura ser impuesto
which a man is to pay for his eminence. Man
pagar eminencia
should always bear in mind that he is to give an
deber (traer á la memoria)
account of his life to God. To live in this world with
cuenta para mundo
tranquility, we have to endure silently many incon-
tranquilidad sufrir (con silencio) inco-
veniencies. They had just signed the treaty of peace,
modidad firmar tratado paz
when war was again declared. The messenger whom
ser declarado mensagero
we expected, has just arrived.
esperar llegar

SER *AND* ESTAR—*TO BE.*

OBSERVATION.

To explain clearly, the distinction which exists between *Ser*, and *Estar*, is the most arduous task that an author of a Spanish grammar can take upon himself to perform. He who commences it, is well aware of the difficulties which he must encounter, and the obstacles which he must surmount, to be perspicuous, comprehensive and precise. It is for this reason, that this subject has not been treated in that extensive manner, which its importance required. Numerous detached rules have, on vari-

ous occasions, been given upon it; but, as the distinction of *Ser*, and *Estar*, depends on a fixed principle, they could not tend much to its elucidation.

In the acquisition of the Spanish language, we know not of any particular part of grammar, which merits the attention of the student so much, as that concerning the difference between these two verbs. It is a difference, which has been heretofore reckoned, in some measure, as attainable, by those persons only, whose vernacular tongue was the Spanish, or who had already become well acquainted with this language.

We have sometimes taken the liberty to observe, that no study or labour would prevent us from rendering this work as perfect as it lay in our power to make it. We have, therefore, undertaken this difficult and important task, notwithstanding our being fully convinced, that in aspiring to success, we expose ourselves to animadversion.

Existence, when expressed in English by the verb to be, is, in Spanish, denoted either by *ser*, or *estar*. This existence, is therefore, divided into two states, and, according to the particular state in which it is, *ser* or *estar*, must be employed.

These two states are not easily distinguished by persons who cannot see any difference of existence, between "*He* IS *well*;" and "*He* IS *handsome;*" at the same time that a Spaniard, perceives a very great one. He conceives, that *to be well*, is a quality, the existence of which is precarious; that it depends upon a variety of circumstances, of which we seldom have any knowledge; and that, as it has so many dependencies, it cannot be supposed permanent by any determined or undetermined period. This sentence, he would, therefore, have translated by *estar;* thus: *El* ESTA *bueno.*

On the other hand, *to be handsome*, is a quality, the existence of which is *certain*, *not* precarious; it does not depend upon any circumstance, but those upon which, as a relative thing in regard to time or eternity, it must necessarily depend; and a quality which, as it is natural, must be deemed permanent, so far as the nature of beauty is deemed so: and he would, therefore, translate is, in that sentence, by *ser*,—thus, *El* ES *hermoso.*

From this general observation it follows, that, when we have relation to the existence of qualities, which are inherent in, or

essential to the nature of objects; or, in other words, of qualities which denote the *nature* or *kind* of the objects to which they belong, *ser* must be employed;—and, on the contrary, *estar* should be used when speaking of the existence of accidental qualities; qualities which denote the *manner* in which objects exist. To this general rule, no exception can be absolutely attached.

As there are, however, many instances in which the *kind* and *manner* of existence are so nearly allied, that the student, however sagacious, is at a loss to make the right distinction; the author will endeavour to render this remark perfectly intelligible to him, by placing before his view those cases in which the distinction is most difficult to be perceived.

It is very plain, that if we say, "*this book* IS *good*," *is* in this sentence, shows that the natural quality of the book is goodness; *goodness*, or *badness*, &c. being qualities which must be inherent in the nature of any object. But, if we say, "*this book* IS *well bound;*" *is*, in this sentence, exhibits a quality, which is altogether accidental in the book; for its nature does not require that it should be either *well*, or *badly* bound. The first sentence, would, therefore, be translated by *ser;* and the second by *estar*, thus: *Este libro* ES *bueno.* *Este libro* ESTA *bien encuadernado.*

If we speak of the attributes of any object, or of the physical or moral qualities of men, it is abundantly clear, that whatever they may be, they are descriptive of the possessor's nature. For instance: if I say, this man is wise, learned, discreet, judicious, passionate, &c.; or if I say, "The summer *is* warm;" "the winter *is* cold;" "cloth *is* made out of wool," &c., I am the whole time describing his or its natural qualities; or those qualities which are inherent in *his* or *its* nature. In such cases, therefore, the verb *ser*, would be employed; as, "God *is* powerful," *Dios* es *poderoso.* "Ice *is* cold," *el yelo* es *frio.* "Women *are* tender," *las mugeres* son *tiernas.* "He *is* wise," *el* es *sabio.* "This *is*," *esto* es.

Speaking of the location, situation, &c. of a *river*, a *city*, *monument*, or any other object; we have reference to the *manner* in which that certain object exists, but not to any of the qualities which naturally belong to a river, a city, a monument; such as *dimension*, *beauty*, *greatness*, &c. Hence it is, that all kinds of locality, are always expressed by *estar;* for instance: "Here *is* London, a city which *is* great in every thing," *aquí* está *Lóndres*, *ciudad*

liness may end. If it be said, "I *was* wounded," I may either mean that I received from some individual, an injury, the effects of which can never be removed, or that, I was at a certain time existing in a wounded condition; but that the wound having been cured, I enjoy my former state of health. This sentence, taken in the first meaning, would be, indubitably, translated by *ser;* and in the second, by *estar*. *El* fué *herido*. *El* estaba *herido*. And thus will happen in the following and similar cases: "*Este libro* es *escrito por Levizac*," this book *is* written by Levizac. "*Este libro* está *escrito en frances*," this book *is* written in French. "*Esta quinta* es *hecha por el divertimiento de su dueño*," this country seat *is* made for the amusement of its proprietor. "*Esta quinta* está *hecha con balcones*," this country seat *is* made with balconies.

There are some qualities inherent in the nature of objects, the existence of which, at the time we speak of them, has already taken, or is yet to take, place. It is not to be supposed, that on this account, those qualities change their nature. Speaking, for instance, of a city which once was, or which it is believed at a future period will be *large* or *small;*—*rich* or *poor;*—*splendid* or *miserable*, &c., but now it is not so; we must speak of these qualities as past, or future; but as being, at the time of their existence, descriptive of the nature of the city. For instance: "Baltimore, seventy years since, *was* the retreat of the panther and the serpent; and *now is* the abode of seventy thousand souls," *Hace setenta años que Baltimore* era *el recinto de la onza y de la sierpe y ahora* es *la morada de setenta mil almas*. Speaking of a person who was judicious in all his actions, and at present, owing to circumstances, is no longer so; we must certainly speak of the quality of this individual as inherent in his nature, when it was in existence: as, "*El* era *juicioso en todas sus operaciones*," he was judicious in all his actions. This rule is also applicable when we speak of the manner in which an object exists; thus, for instance: "*El* estaba *aquí ayer, y sin duda* estará *aquí mañana;*", he *was* here yesterday, and undoubtedly he *will be* here tomorrow.

It frequently happens, that the same quality may, in an object, be either natural or accidental; it may either express the natural, or the accidental existence. When this occurs, we must

select the verb which our meaning requires. Suppose we wish to say that the water of a certain fountain is naturally warm; and that the water of a certain tube is also warm, but that it has become so by the process of fire. In the first instance, we should unquestionably use *ser;* and in the second *estar;* thus: *Esta agua* es *caliente;* and, *Esta agua* está *caliente.* The same would take place in regard to any person who had injured any one of his limbs. If it was supposed that his cure was beyond any medical or surgical operation, the injury would become as permanent as if it were natural; and, therefore, expressed by *ser;* but if, on the contrary, it was supposed of a short duration only, it would be a certain manner of existence. Translating "that man *is* lame" by *este hombre* es *cojo,*" his lameness is considered permanent; and *Este hombre* está *cojo,* temporary only. If it be said, "*Juan* está *melancólico,*" we mean, John feels *now* melancholy; taking for granted, that the moment the circumstances which rendered him so, subside, he will no longer be in this situation. But if we say, "*Juan* es *melancólico,*" we convey the idea that John is of a melancholy disposition. And thus it is with regard to any other object which is susceptible of these two existences.

When we mention the occupation, or profession, of an individual, we speak of it as its being a natural quality. It is well known, that every human being is considered as having a certain employment; this employment becomes, therefore, essential to the nature of man. His changing this employment or occupation for another, is, consequently, no reason for its not being attached to his nature: *ser* is, then, the verb by which this quality must be expressed; as, "*Napoleon* fué *emperador,*" Napoleon *was* an emperor. "*El* ha sido *capitan, pero ahora* es *general,*" he *has been* captain, but he *is* now general. "*El* era *zapatero,* es *sastre, y sin duda* será *carpintero,*" he *was* a shoemaker, *is* now a tailor, and I doubt not that *he will be* a carpenter.

The author indulges a hope, that if the student pursue with attention the preceding observations, he will no longer feel at a loss to make the right distinction between *Ser,* and *Estar,** how intricate soever the object of his difficulty may be.

*Owing to the various meanings of some adjectives, it happens that when applied in one sense, they require *ser,* and when in

EXERCISES.

History is the picture of times and men. Solomon
retrato ———
who was the son of David, and who built the temple
——— CONSTRUIR *templo*
of Jerusalem, was the wisest of kings. Health is the
——— *sabio* *salud*
support of life, and joy is the soul of health.
apoyo *alegría* *alma*
Reason was given to man to control his passions.
razon *para subordinar* ———
It is honourable to be a friend to the unfortunate.
honroso *desdichado*
Attention is a very necessary thing to improve our
atencion *cosa para mejorar*
mind. The hundred gates of the city of Babylon
entendimiento *puerta* *Babilonia*
were of brass. Telemachus come to rest for thy
bronce *á descansar pues*
clothes are wet. When kings are beloved, it is a
vestido *mojado*
certain proof that they deserve to be so. To comfort
preuba MERECER *lo* † CONSOLAR *á*
the afflicted, is an act of mercy. Eternity is a
afligido *obra* *misericordia*
continued circle, its centre is every where, but its
continuo *circulo* *centro* (*en todas partes*)

another, *estar*. *Bueno*, and *malo*, for instance. The first of these words means *good*, and also *well;* and the other *bad*, and *ill*. If a person wishes to say that he is not *well*, he will, of course, say: *y no* estoi *bueno;* this being the manner in which he *now* exists; but that another is not *good*, he will say, *él no* es *bueno;* this being a quality descriptive of his nature.

vaya," it is necessary that I should go, or, I must go. "Es necesario *hacer atencion á las cosas del mundo*," it is necessary that we should pay attention, or, we must pay attention to the things of the world.

Note 1. As, *ser preciso*, to be necessary, *ser necesario*, to be necessary, &c., require the subjunctive; when we say, in English, it is necessary for me to go, for them to be here, &c., we must say in Spanish, it is necessary that I should go, that they be here, &c. *Es necesario*, or, *es menester que yo vaya, quo ellos se queden aquí.*

Note 2. There are some personal verbs which are often conjugated impersonally; as "basta *que él lo diga*," it suffices that he says so. "No basta *que él lea, debe leer bien*," it is not enough that he reads, he must read well.

Note 3. When *ser*, to be, is used impersonally, and precedes a pronoun, the verb *ser* must agree with this pronoun in number and person; as, "*Soi yo* quien lo hizo," it is I who did it. "*Son ellos los* que lo dicen," *it is they* who say it.

EXERCISES.

There needs* (no more) than a bad inclination
(no ser menester) sino † ———
to make a man vicious. (It is not enough) to think
para hacer á vicioso no bastar pensar
with exactness, we must also express ourselves
ecsactitud (ser menester) espresarse
with clearness. (It is necessary) to prefer our duty
claridad ser preciso † preferir obligacion
to our pleasure.
gusto
(*Note* 1.) (It is not enough) for a general to be pru-
no bastar
dent, it is also necessary that he be fortunate. It is
afortunado

* See observation, page 169.

not enough for us to study, we must learn. It is not
estudiar *aprender*
enough for men to appear modest, it is necessary that
parecer modesto
they really be so.*
realmente *lo.*

(*Note* 2.) It is the gospel that commands us to
evangelio *manda*
forgive our enemies. It is not those who speak
pardonar *á* *hablar*
most that men admire. It is thou who (hast deceived)
mas *admirar* *engañar*
us. Men[2] must[1] obey† the laws, since it is
(ser menester que) *puesque*
they that defend us. It was envy that occasioned
DEFENDER *envidia* *occasionar*
the first murder in the world.
asesinato *mundo*

EXERCISES.

On the impersonal and irregular verbs.‡

But let us suppose that your general should
suponar
(come out) victorious. I already told you, that although
salir *victorioso* *ya* *decir*
he may shed tears, they cannot pardon him. Al-
verter lágrima *poder pardoner*
though he may know me, he will not come. He
conocer *venir*

* *So*, when used in the sense of *it*, as above, should always be translated by *lo*.

† See observation, page 169.

‡ See Etymology, from page 125, to page 170.

counterfeited ten dollar bank notes. Oh! and
contrahacer (notas de banco de diez pesos)
(how much) do I suffer with my disease. Do not
cuanto † padecer enfermedad
condescend to change your opinion without sufficient
condescender cambiar sin bastante
ground for it. (Give consolation) to the afflicted.
fundamento consolar
All heard Marcus Brutus. The Roman people did
oir á Marco Bruto el Romano pueblo
not regret the assassination of Cæsar, but they
sentir asesinato César pero
regretted that after his death the vile Cinna
sentir (depues de) ———
should speak ill of him. It (fell to his) lot to live
decir mal caberle en suerte vivir
so long. They ought to have reviewed the
(tanto tiempo) deber rever
works. Should we obtain the office we wish, how
obra conseguir puesto desear cuan
happy I would be. The trees blossom again. We
reflorecer
would never oppose a negotiation. Let them propose
oponerse á ——— *proponer*
the conditions. (Make thyself acquainted) with their
imponerse en
proposals. Prefer virtue to riches. (They have
propuesta anteponer com-
composed.) various works. If (they should expose)
poner esponer
her to his rage. Her groans attracted the attention
cólera gemido atraer
of the hearers. To the end that the delinquents
oyente (á fin de que) delincuente

(would be equivalent) to the labour. He will surpass
equivaler *trabajo* *sobresalir á*
his predecessor in humility. The innkeeper conducted
——— *humildad* *mesonero* *conducir*
me to the house of a carrier. If this orator were
arriero
never to introduce his similies. If the trees (should
introducir ——— *árbol*
not produce) fruit next summer. We shall
producir *fruta (el verano que viene)*
abide by your opinion. In order that (they might
atenerse á *mante-*
keep up) their establishment. He would not entertain
ner *establecimiento* *entretener*
them. Refrain thy passions. Though some accident
contener
(may happen) to them, they never will infringe the
sobrevenir *(contravenir á)*
laws. The bad smell arose from the drain. We
mal olor *provenir* *caño*
prepared ourselves for the battle. I never retract
prevenirse *desdecirse de*
what I have[2] once[1] said.[3] They will bless the
una vez *bendecir*
hand. He (had predicted) that (they would curse) him.
predecir *maldecir*
Though he (should contradict) the assertion, I will
contradecir *afirmacion*
not retract. This bread is blessed.
pan

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE LXIII.

An active transitive verb, governs the noun to which its energy is transmitted, in the objective case; as, "*Yo* te *amaré*, I shall love *thee*. "*Dios* aborrece *el vicio*," God *hates* vice.

Note 1. In the following instances, the verb governs the objective case, with the preposition *á*.

1. When the objective case is a person or any inanimate object personified; as, "*Dios* ama al *justo*," God *loves* the righteous man. "Atacáron á *Toledo*," *they attacked* Toledo. "*Bonaparte nunca* pudo conquistar á *la España*;" Bonaparte never *could conquer* Spain.

2. When the nominative, and the objective are in the same number, both representing inanimate objects, and the nominative exercising a certain power over the objective; as, "A la leña *quema el fuego*," fire burns wood. "*El verbo rige* al adverbio," the verb governs *the adverb*. "*El sol alumbra* á la tierra," the sun lights *the earth*.

Note 2. When the sentence contains two objective cases, of which, one, is, in English, governed by a verb, and the other by the preposition *to;* the *á*, should, in Spanish, be omitted; as, "*Introducirémos* el conde [*not al*] *á la marquesa*," we shall introduce *the Earl* to the Marchioness.

EXERCISES.

They whom opulence has made proud and whom
opulencia *orgulloso*
luxury has corrupted, cannot relish the simple
disolucion *corromper* *gustar* ——
pleasures of nature. We should fear and obey
placer *temer* *obedecer*

the Author of our being, (even him who) (has power)
autor *ser* *si, á él que* *puede*
to reward or punish us for ever. God will reward
premiar *castigar* *para siempre* *recompensar*
the good and punish the wicked. Spain (used to govern)
castigar *gobernar*
Mexico, but now she has lost every power over it.
Mégico *perder* *todo* *poder* *sobre*
When a person sees the present dissolution, he
observar *actual* ———
would suppose that nothing but vice leads the world.
creer *sino* *regir*
Cortés sent four envoys to the Tlascaltecas to
remitir *embiado* ——— *para*
(request of them) entrance into their towns.
pedirles *entrada en* *ciudad*

OF VERBS GOVERNING THE INFINITIVE.

RULE LXIV.

If two verbs come together in English, and the second be in the infinitive, it is generally used in the same mood in Spanish; as, "*Deseō* aprender," I wish *to learn*. "*Es menester* regir *nuestras pasiones*," it is necessary to *rule* our passions.

Note 1. Verbs denoting *to dare, to begin, to teach, to learn, to compel, to submit, to exhort,* or *invite, to prepare, to assist, to be destined,* and *to accustom one's self,* generally require *á* before the infinitive which they govern; as, "*No me atrevo á* hablar," I dare not *speak*. "*Empecé á* aprender *el Español*," I began *to learn* the Spanish. "*Se puso á* estudiar," he set about *to study*. "*Le convidé á* cenar *conmigo*," I invited him *to sup* with me. "*Me está siempre ecsortando* a vivir *cristianamente*," he is always exhorting me *to live* like a christian.

(to be beloved) by his subjects by his affability. The
amar de vasallo por afabilidad.
mayor ordered us (to be taken up.) Men often
corregidor mandar prender
(suffer themselves) (to be overcome) by temptations,
dejarse vencer
because they dare not expose themselves to the
atreverse esponerse
sarcasms of the world. It was not easy (to meet with)
sarcasmo hallar
a more favourable conjuncture to free ourselves from
conjuntura librarse
his dominion. To obtain a convenient seat, it
dominacion lograr cómodo asiento
was necessary to go very early, but who (would not
temprano ma-
rise betimes) to have the pleasure of hearing his
drugar gusto oir
speeches? The victory is not yet gained.* The
discurso alcanzar
capitulation was not signed. There remains to us
——— *firmar quedar*
yet (a great deal) to suffer. Nothing ought to be left
aun mucho padecer
undone. Our wrongs remain still unrevenged. We
hacer agravio aun vengar
ought to suffer with resignation all the evils which we
sufrir ——— *mal*

* The verb *quedar*, or *estar*, with the preposition *por*, is used before an infinitive, to denote, that the action of this infinitive, is not yet accomplished; as, "The letter is *not yet written*," *la carta está* por escribir. *Nos quedan seis leguas* por andar. "We have six miles *to go*."

cannot avoid. The republic of Colombia, appears to
evitar ———
have conducted herself very discreetly since the
conducido *discretamente desde*
day in which she dissolved her chains. Men ought
disolver *cadena*
to teach one another to practise virtue. Whoever
enseñarse
begins to learn a science ought not to leave it,
aprender *ciencia* *dejar*
until he is master of it. He who is accustomed
(*hasta que sea*) *maestro* *acostumbrar*
to suffer, knows (how to appreciate) innocent pleasures.
padecer *apreciar*
Religion compels us to forego pleasures, and to re-
obligar *olvidar* *deleite* *re-*
vere our superiors.
verenciar ———

VERBS GOVERNING THE INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE LXV.

When two verbs come together in English, and the latter is governed in the indicative or subjunctive by a conjunction, the Spanish verb will, in general, admit the same mood; as, "*Díjome éste* que pensaba *partir ántes de amanecer*, *y* que él tendria *cuidado de dispertarme;*" the latter told me *that he meant* to set out before day-break, and *that he would take* care to awake me.

Note 1. Verbs denoting *fitness*, or *necessity*, such as imply *commanding* or *permission*, those which signify *desire*, or *joy*, *wonder*, or *doubt*, and *impersonals* used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, generally

require the verb which follows them, to be in the subjunctive;* as, "*Conviene* que venga *mañana*," it is proper that *he should come* to-morrow. "*Mandó* que rindiesen *la plaza*," he *ordered the* place to be given up. "*Quiero* que aprendas," I wish *you to learn.*

Note 2. The conjunction must always be expressed in Spanish, although in English it may be only understood; as, "*Me* dijo que *vendria*," he told me [*that*] he would come.

Note 3. When the verb which in English is governed in the infinitive, can, by means of the conjunction *that*, be changed into another mood; this latter mood ought always to be adopted in the Spanish. Thus for instance, the sentence "I know him to be good," can be changed into, I know that he is good, and this, therefore, should be the Spanish construction:—*Yo sé que él es bueno.* "He commanded me to follow him," [that is, that I should follow him] *me mandó que la siguiese.*

Note 4. The subjunctive must be employed after any conjunctive conjunction, in which *que* is included; such as,—*dado que* granted that;—*con tal que* provided that:—*aménos que*, unless that;—*no sea que*, lest—*ántes que;*—*sin que*, &c. as, "Dado que me escriba *no le responderé*," *granted that you should write me*, I shall not answer you. "Con tal que vmd. calle, *yo me contentaré*," *provided you keep silent*, I shall be satisfied "Aménos que restituya *el* dinero *no le perdonarán*," *unless he returns* the money, they will not forgive him. †

The tenses of the subjunctive are frequently directed by the governing verb in the indicative; thus:—

1. If the governing verb be in the *present* or the *future imperfect* of the indicative, the verb governed ought to be in the *present* or *perfect* of the subjunctive; as, "*Le* suplico *á vmd. que* venga *aquí mañana*," I *entreat* you to come *here* to-morrow. "*Le* diré *á mi hermano que no* salga *hasta las tres*," I *shall tell* my brother

* The conjunction *that*, in this case is generally used.

† The student should also read attentively the rules given from page 342 to page 354.

EXERCISES.

Despise not any condition lest it hap-
despreciar ninguno situacion (no sea que) acon-
pen to be your own. Consider, man, that (every thing)
tecer † todo
has had a beginning, and that it will have an end.
principio todo fin
Chimalpopoca, in the eleventh year of his reign
reinado
ordered a great stone to be brought to Mexico. God
mandar piedra traer
has told us to fulfil his commandments, and
(complir con) mandamiento
(we would be saved.) Although Duhesme, in eighteen
salvarse
hundred and eight, entered Barcelona in a friendly
entrar de amigable
manner, yet he wished the governor after
modo sin embargo querer gobernador
some days of his entrance, to give him the keys of that
entrada dar llave
capital. There are few persons of so penetrating a
súblime
genius, and so just a judgment as* (to be capable of)
ingenio verdadero juicio que poder
learning the arts and sciences, without teachers. Is it
aprender sin maestro
not (to be wondered at,) that this age should be so much
de maravillarse siglo
corrupted? Ferdinand the third ordered Seville to be
corromper Sevilla

* See note 1, rule xviii., page 239.

attacked on the 20th of August, 1247. Though the
embestir
invention of machines in England, for the making
máquina *egecucion*
of merchandize, be useful to make them cheaper, and
mercaderías *útil* *barato*
more abundant, is it not pernicious to those poor human
pernicioso
beings who were employed in making them? Provided
ser *empleado*
we act as God commands us, let the envious world
obrar *mandar* *envidioso*
say what it pleases.
querer

OF VERBS REQUIRING CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS.

OF VERBS REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION DE.

RULE LXVI.

1. Passive verbs require the preposition *de* or *por** before the noun which denotes the agent; as, "*Los malos son aborrecidos de*, or por *Dios*," the wicked are hated *by God*. "*El reo fué sentenciado* por *el juez*," the culprit was sentenced *by* the judge.

Note 1 Neuter verbs, active intransitive, as well as some reflective verbs, govern a word with *de*, which denotes what causes their effects; as, *Bramar de corage*, to roar with passion. *Enfermar de calentura*, to sicken with fever. *Tiritar de frio*, to shiver with cold.

* *Por* may always be used. But this is not the case in regard to *de*. For, generally, it may only be employed when the verb expresses an effect of the mind; as, "*El es* amado de *su padre*," he is loved *by* his father,

Note 2. Verbs implying *plenty* or *want*, *remembrance* or *oblivion*, govern a noun generally preceded by *de;* as, "*Llenō la casa* de gente," he filled the house *with people*. "*Acuérdate* de tu Criador," remember *thy* Creator. "*Se ha olvidado*, de mí,"* he has forgotten *me*.

Note 3. Verbs implying *blaming*, *absolving*, *using*, *repenting*, *jeering*, *and pitying*, generally govern a noun also with *de;* as, "*No te* alabes de *valiente*," do not *extol* thy courage. "*El se* gloria de *sabio*," he makes a *boast of* his wisdom. "*Se* arrepintió de *sus delitos*," he *repented of* his crimes.

Note 4. Verbs implying *distance* or *separation*, generally require *de* before the noun which they do not directly govern; as, "*Me alejaré* de mi tierra," I shall remove *far from my country*. "*Apártate* de la ocasion," avoid *the opportunity*. "*Cuando dispertō* del sueño," when he awoke from *his sleep*. "*Escapāron* de la prision," they escaped *from the prison*.

To all these verbs, may be added the following:

Adolecer de enfermedad,	To be seized with illness.
Agraviarse de algo,	To take offence at something.
Alegrarse de las nuevas,	To rejoice at the news.
Avergonzarse de la respuesta,	To be ashamed at the answer.
Atemorizarse de algo,	To be frightened at something.
Airarse de la respuesta,	To be angry at the answer.
Abochornarse de la conversacion,	To blush at the conversation.
Abundar de riquezas,	To abound in riches.
Ahitarse de manjares,	To be surfeited with meats.
Apercibirse de armas,	To provide one's self with arms.
Armarse de paciencia,	To arm one's self with patience.
Abstenerse de la fruta,	To abstain from fruit.
Ahorrar de razones,	To spare words.
Apearse del caballo,	To alight from the horse.
Apearse de su opinion,	To alter one's opinion.
Apelar de la sentencia,	To appeal from the sentence.
Asegurarse del peligro,	To shelter ourselves from the danger.

* Except the expression, *traer á la memoria*, to remind; or *olvidar*, to forget, which admits no preposition whatever; as, "*Le trāge a la memoria la promesa*," I reminded him of the promise. "*Olvidō la respuesta*," he forgot the answer.

Indies were discovered by Columbus, in fourteen hun-
India descubierto Colon
dred and ninety-two. Homer's Iliad (was translated)
Homero Iliada traducir
by Alexander Pope. When boys cry with passion,
Alejandro llorar cólera
they ought to be severely reprehended. Some
severamente reprehendido
people are ashamed to do things which ought to be
avergonzarse
supposed the most honourable. The crew of the
suponer honroso tripulacion
vessel in which Columbus was, soon (grew tired) of
navio Colon pronto cansarse
being at sea, and all was quarrel and dissention.
estar al mar (no habia sino) riña

O man, remember him who does you a service, and
acordarse te favor
do not forget, if you can, to do him another. No
olividar
one can say, I want nobody. Men ought never to
no necesitar nadie
praise their wisdom. The last war between France
alabarse † sabio ultimo
and Spain was so inveterate, that the Spaniards
inveterado
had no mercy on the French, nor the French, on
(tener misericordia)
the Spaniards. Men ought to (avail themselves)
valerse
of every opportunity of doing good. An honest man
ocasion honrado

(does not value himself) upon any thing. Thy parents
preciarse *padre*
will repent having lectured a simpleton so much.
arrepentirse *arengado* *mentecato*
We did not laugh at hearing him sing, but at seeing
reirse *oir* *cantar* *sino* *ver*
him dance. Those things whigh degenerate from
bailar *degenerar*
their nature (are apt) to be admirable if they are
soler ———
good, and most vile if they are bad. We renounce[3]
vil *renunciar*
more[1] easily[2] our interests than our pleasures.
facilmente

OF VERBS REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION *Á*.

RULE LXVII.

Verbs of *demanding*, and of *granting* or *refusing*, require generally the preposition *á*, before the noun to which their energy is transmitted; as, "*Pide perdon* á *Dios*," he asks pardon *from* God. "*El amo negó la licencia* al *criado*," the master denied the leave *to* the servant.

Note 1. Verbs implying *yielding*, or *resistance*, generally require *á* before the noun to which their energy is transmitted; as, "*Aunque declare ella su parecer, yo no soi uno de los que* someten *su opinion* al *dictámen de otros*," although she may declare her opinion, I am not one of those, who *submit* their opinion *to* the opinion of others. "*Me* opondré á *las leyes*," I shall *oppose* the laws.

Note 2. Verbs of *comparing* generally require *á* before the noun with which the comparison is made; as, "*El hijo se parece*, al padre," the son resembles *the father*." "*La hija se semeja* á la madre," the daughter is like *the mother*. "*Por lo demas, no es mas parecido un huevo* á otro huevo," as to the rest, one egg is not more like *another egg*.

Note 3. Verbs implying *to belong, to concern, to happen, to play,* as well as most of the impersonal verbs, generally require *á* before the noun to which their energy is directed; as, "*Pertenecemos* á la tierra," we belong *to the earth.* "*Los bienes de un deudor* corresponden á sus acreedores," the property of a debtor *belongs to his creditors.* "*Importa* á los Cristianos," it concerns *Christians.* "*Desgracias acontecen* á los incautos," misfortunes happen *to the unwary.* "*Jugará* á los naipes," he will play *at cards.* "*Todo le parecia* á ella *un sueño,*" every thing seemed *to her* a dream. "*Le convenia* á ella *la propuesta,*"* the proposal was advantageous *to her.*

Note 4. Verbs of *condemning*, require the punishment to be preceded by the preposition *á;* as, "*Condenáron al reo* á galeras," they condemned the culprit *to the galleys.* "*Sentenciarán al desertor* á ser arcabuceado," they will sentence the deserter *to be shot.*

The following and similar verbs belong to the above.

Abandonarse á su suerte,	To abandon one's self to one's lot.
Acceder á la propuesta,	To accede to the proposal.
Acogerse á alguno,	To have recourse to somebody.
Acomodarse al reglamento,	To conform with the regulations
Acostumbrarse al trabajo,	To become used to labour.
Adherir al mismo dictámen,	To adhere to the same opinion.
Agregarse á otros,	To join one's self to others.
Ajustarse á la razon,	To conform to reason.
Apegarse á algo,	To adhere to something.
Arreglarse á lo justo,	To regulate one's self by what is just.
Aparecerse á muchos,	To become suddenly visible.
Arrogarse algo á sí,	To arrogate something to one's self.
Atribuirlo á otros,	To attribute it to others.
Cedar *á los ruegos,*	To yield to the entreaties.
Ceñirse á poco,	To limit one's self to little.
Condescender á los ruegos,	To condescend to the entreaties.

* *Ser*, when used in the sense of *to belong*. requires *de* instead of *á* before the noun which denotes the possessor; as, "*la casa es* de mi tio, the house belongs *to my uncle.*

places. I (went out) of Ithaca to inquire after my
plaza salir —— preguntar por
father, of the other kings who had returned from the
vuelto
siege of Troy. Men ought always to answer the
sitio Troya deber responder
question* put to them with coolness and modesty.
pregunta ponerse blandura modestia
Speak to God as if you were heard by men. The king
oido
sent over a great store of gentlemen and warlike
† *número señor guerrero*
people amongst whom he distributed the land. The
gente entre tierra
Moors determined to be buried under the ruins
Moro determinarse (dejarse enterrar) bajo
of Toledo, rather than surrender. Mula, and Car-
—— *ántes que entregarse —— Car-*
thagena refused to open their gates to Infante Don
tagena rehusar abrir puerta —— ——
Alphonzo, but they were obliged to open them in the
Alfonzo obligado
year one thousand two hundred forty-two. It is neces-
sary that we should apply ourselves to improve our
aplicarse mejorar
minds. It is said that the natives of the Isle of
entendimiento natural isla
Wight, resemble very much those of the valleys of
—— *asemejarse valle*
Arragon. It concerns princes to judge of their-
—— *importar príncipe juzgar*

* *Which are*, or *which is*, must always be expressed in Spanish.

ministers, but it concerns vassals to submit to
ministro *vasallo* *someterse*
their will. Mexico has ceased to belong to Spain.
voluntad *pertenecer*
Tantalus was condemned to a continual thirst, and to
Tántalo *continuo* *sed*
have the water up to his chin, and not (to be able)
(*junto á*) *barba* *poder*
to taste it.
probar

VERBS REQUIRING *EN.*

RULE LXVIII.

Most verbs precede a noun, or an infinitive, with the preposition *en*, when the noun denotes in what the meaning of the said verb is conspicuous; as, "*Los condenáron* en las costas," they condemned them *in the costs.* "*Ella crece* en virtudes," she increases *in virtue.* "*Siempre pensaré* en ti," I shall always think *on thee.*

The following verbs may be included:

Abrasarse en deseos,	To burn with desires.
Abundar en riquezas,	To abound in riches.
Aferrarse en su opinion,	To be tenacious of one's opinion.
Andar en pleitos,	To be engaged in lawsuits.
Barar en tierra,	To run aground.
Consentir en la propuesta,	To consent to the proposals.
Dar en manías,	To be seized with some mania.
Encenegarse en vicios,	To wallow in vice.
Esmerarse en algo,	To exert one's self in any thing.
Hallarse en la fiesta,	To be present at the feast.
Imponer en algo,	To instruct in any thing.
Prorumpir en lagrimas,	To burst into tears.
Redundar en beneficio de otro,	To redound to another's benefit.

EXERCISES.

It is better not to abound with riches, than to
abundar
burn with the desires which they excite. If we
abrasarse *escitar*
thought oftener on the prodigies of nature;
reflecsionar *amenudo* *prodigio*
(how much more) (would we not admire) the wisdom
cuanto mas *admirar* *sabiduría*
of that Supreme Being who[2] rules (every thing.[1])
supremo *ser* *gobernar* *todo lo*
It is better not to be occupied, than to be thinking of
ocupado *pensar*
the ways of doing mischief. It is not those who
modo *mal*
burst into tears the soonest,* that feel the
prorumpir *lágrima* *pronto* *sentir*
most.

VERBS REQUIRING *CON.*

RULE LXIX.

Verbs denoting *behaviour* generally require *con* before the person towards whom the behaviour is directed; as, "*Ella se ha airado* con su hermano," she is affronted *with her brother*. "*El se casó* con su prima," he married *his cousin*. "*Me desahogaré* con mi padre," I will unbosom myself *to my father*. "*Justarse* con alguno," to settle *with any one*.

Note 1. When the verb *meterse* is used in the sense of *to meddle*, or *to interfere*, it requires *con* before the noun, if it be a person, and *en* if it be a thing; as, "*Aconséjote, amigo, que en adelante*

* The soonest, should be translated by the comparative *mas pronto*, without the article.

with caresses, a fault as reprehensible as it is per-
caricia costumbre ——— *per-*
nicious to the children. How many persons of (un-
nicioso niño *ir-*
questionable character,) did not the negroes in St.
reprehensible conducta ——— *Santo*
Domingo kill with blows, with stabs, and (in the
——— *garrotazo cuchillada de*
most atrocious manner that ever was heard
un modo mas atroz que ninuguno de los que ántes se
of before,) from 1791, to 1801. They threw a
habia oido *hasta* *echar*
curtain down with a single (shot of their gun.)
cortina (en tierra) *solo* *cañonazo*

OF PREPOSITIONS REQUIRED BY VERBS OF MOTION.

RULE LXX.

Verbs implying *motion to, towards* or *from a place,* govern the noun denoting whence the motion proceeds with *de,* the noun which shows its direction with *á;* and the noun expressing the space through which it passes with *por;* example: "*Fuéron de Lóndres* á *Chelsea,* por *el parque,*" they went from London *to* Chelsea *through* the park. "*Vengo* de *la comedia, y me voi* adonde *estuve anoche, y donde pienso quedarme hasta mañana,*" I come *from* the play, and am going whither I was last night, and where I think I shall stay till tomorrow.

Note 1. When we mean to denote only the place to which the moving body seems directed, we use *hácia* or *para,* instead of *á;* as, "*Va* hácia *el Parque, pero no creo que llegue allá,*" he is going

towards the park, but I don't imagine he will reach it. "*Salió* para *Lóndres*," he set out *for* London.

Note 2. The verb *volver* is also used before an infinitive, when we mean to denote the repeating of the action implied in the infinitive; as, "*Volví á leer la carta*," I read the letter over once more. "*Volverá á pedirlo*," he will ask for it again. "*Volvimos á entrar en la casa*," we re-entered the house.

The following verbs belong to the above rule:

Abalanzarse á los peligros,	To rush on danger.
Abordar una nave á otra,	To bring one ship along side of another.
Apelar á otra tribunal,	To appeal to another court.
Apropincuarse á alguno,	To draw nigh any one.
Arrojarse á la batalla,	To dart forwards at the battle.
Ausentarse de Madrid,	To quit Madrid.
Balancear á tal parte,	To vibrate towards such a side.
Caminar por el monte,	To travel over or through the mountain.
Ladearse á tal parte,	To incline to such a side.
Acercarse á la lumbre,	To draw nigh the fire.
Convertirse á Dios,	To turn to God.
Concurrir á la junta,	To attend the meeting.
Mandar la carta á España,	To send the letter to Spain.
Traer vinos de Francia,	To bring wines from France.
Embiar á las Indias,	To send to the Indies.

EXERCISES.

The promptitude with which men sometimes pass
presteza *pasar*
from the bitterest grief to the greatest joy, is
amargo dolor *alegría*
really astonishing. The rapidity with which
(en realidad) *asombroso* *rapidez*
light passes is prodigious; only being seven or
luz *pasar* *prodigioso* *solamente está*
eight minutes in its progression from the sun to the

earth; in[2] this short space of time traversing[1] se-
tierra *corto espacio* *travesar*
veral millions of miles. Through (how many) dangers
milla *por* *cuantos* *peligro*
did not the great American herò pass, and he always
héroe
(came out) of them without the least injury. He
salir *sin* *menor* *daño*
was going towards Rome, when (he was attacked) by a
asaltar
gang of (highwaymen.) Columbus went to the courts
cuadrilla *ladron* *Colon*
of England and Portugal (to inform) them of the
——— *dar noticia*
existence of a new world, and he was, in both, heard
eesistencia *(las dos)*
with universal contempt. He did not understand the
——— *desprecio* *entender*
letter, and he read it again. (Not being able) to
carta *leer* *no pudiendo* *salir*
succeed, he again tried the experiment.
bien *hacer* *prueba*

OBSERVATION ON *gustar* AND *faltar*.

There are two neuter transitive verbs in the Spanish language, *gustar* and *faltar;* which, when translated into English by *to like*, and *to want*, or *to be in want of*, the sentence requires a different construction from that which the student would at first imagine. As by means of the preposition *á*, (which, when those parts of grammar are used in the above sense, is absolutely necessary,) their action is transmitted to him that forms the nominative case, which nominative case must, in Spanish, be the objective; and the Spanish objective, the English nominative Thus, for instance: "*I* like him," él *me gusta á mí.* [that is, *he pleases me.*] "*I* want books," me *faltan libros.* [that is, *to me books are*

benefits which we receive from the bountiful hand of
favor *bundadoso*
the Almighty; who can be so vile, as not to be
Todopoderoso *vil*
sorry to have committed so many irreverences against
irreverencia
Him.

ADVERBS.

RULE LXXI.

Most of the adverbs in *mente*, are formed from adjectives; as, from *cortés*, polite, *cortésmente*, politely; from *comun*, common, *comunmente*, commonly. If the adjective have two terminations, the feminine should be selected to form the adverb; thus: *alto*, *alta*, high; *altamente*, highly:—*piadoso*, pious; *piadosamente*, piously. When two or more of these adverbs in *mente*, modify the same verb, all the adverbs lose the termination *mente*, except the last; thus for instance, "*El habla* clara y elegantamente," he speaks *clearly* and *elegantly*. "*Cuando calumnian á tu amigo* abierta y descaradamente, *defiende su causa*," when thy friend is calumniated, *openly* and *boldly* defend his cause.

Note 1. Adverbs of manner are mostly placed after the verb, as, "*Lo habia dicho* frecuentemente," he had *frequently* said it. "*No hemos hecho* bien," we have not done *well*.

Note 2. Sometimes the adverb begins the sentence, for the sake of elegance; as, "Imediamente *me puse en marcha*," I marched *immediately*.

Note 3. *Mas*, and *ménos*, when they do not begin the sentence, should follow the verb which they modify; as, "*Queria* mas *de lo que me diéron*," I wanted *more* than they gave me. "*Tengo* ménos *de lo que pensaba*, "I have *less* than I thought.

Note 4. *Sí* and *no* being used as an objective case to some verbs, require *que* before them, unless they be used as substantives; as, "You say *yes* and I say *no*," vmd. dice *que* sí, *y yo* digo *que* no. "He answered not *a word*," *no respondió ni un* sí ni *un* no.

OBSERVATION ON *jamas*, *nunca*, *no*, AND *mui*.

Jamas, is sometimes coupled with *nunca*, never, and with *siempre*, ever, to render the expression more energetic; as, "*Nunca jamas lo haré*," I shall never do it. "*Que vives y reines por siempre jamas*," who livest and reignest for ever and ever.

Two negatives in the Spanish language, strengthen the negation; as, "*No tengo nada*," I have nothing. "*No he visto á nadie*," I have seen nobody. If the negative adverb commences the sentence, the *no* then cannot be used; as, "*nada tengo*," I have nothing;—*á nadie he visto*, &c.

Mui, which is translated by very. cannot qualify a verb, in such cases, *mucho* must be used; as, "*Me gusta mucho*," I like him very much. "*Se asemeja á su padre mucho*," he resembles his father very much.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE LXXII.

Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "*Podemos ser buenos y felices*, sin *riquezas*, we may be good and happy *without* riches.

Note 1. The preposition *segun*, has the peculiarity of being used alone with a verb in its indicative or subjunctive mood; as, "*Segun creo*," according to what I believe. "*Entónces el arriero* segun *supe con el tiempo*," then the carrier, *as* I was afterwards informed.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS.

A friend who candidly and judiciously warns us
cándido *juicioso* *advertir*
of our faults, is a treasure which we cannot easily
yerro *tesoro* *fácil*

acquire, nor sufficiently appreciate. When the gen-
adquirir *suficiente* *apreciar*
eral asked him whether he did not want more
preguntar *si* *necesitar*
than those hundred men to conquer the enemy, he
conquistar
answered, no. Never despise your inferiors;
responder *despreciar*. ——
(on the) contrary, treat them with kindness and
al *tratar* *cariño*
affability, and relieve them when they are in need.
afabilidad *socorrer* *(menesteroso)*
O man never let a day[2] pass[1] without giving thanks
dejar *sin* *gracia*
to the Almighty for all the benefits he has
(Todopoderoso) *beneficio*
bestowed upon you. After she had read the history
conceder †
of Nero, she exclaimed with a doleful voice,
Neron *esclamar* *lastimoso*
never, no, never (would have I thought) that men
creer
(could become) so cruel and depraved. It is better
poder hacerse —— *depravado*
to suffer with resignation, than with impatience, the
sufrir *impaciencia*
calamities of this world. Youth is very much in-
calamidad *mundo*
clined to vice. Persons sometimes offend others
(la gente) *ofender*
very much, without wishing to do so.* No one can be
desear

*When *so*, stands for *it*, it is always construed *lo;* as, "You are rich, but I am not *so*," *vmd. es rico, pero yo no* lo *soi*. "It is

OF CONJUNCTIONS.*

RULE LXXIII.

The conjunction *but*, not being preceded by a negative, is expressed by *pero*, or *mas;* and after a negative, it is construed *sino;* as, "*Yo soi rico*, pero, *or* mas *no soi dichoso*," I am rich, *but* I am not happy. "*No es dichoso*, sino *rico*," he is not happy, *but* rich. "*Todos fuéron allá*, pero *or* mas *su hermano llegó el primero*," they all went thither, *but* his brother arrived the first. "*No fuéron el lunes* sino *el martes*," they did not go on Monday, *but* on Tuesday.

Note 1. It is to be observed, that although *sino* is the most proper to be used after a negative, *pero*, or *mas* are preferable when the verb is repeated; as, "They did not go on Monday, *but* they went on Tuesday," *no fuéron el Lunes*, pero, *or* mas *fuéron el Martes*.†

Note 2. The exceptive *but* being preceded by an interrogative pronoun, or by a negative, is rendered by *sino;* and not following a negative, is construed *ménos;* as "*¿Quien lo dijo* sino *vmd.?*" who said it *but* you? "*El no come* sino *fruta*," he eats nothing *but* fruit. "*El como todo* ménos *la corteza*," he eats all *but* the rind. "*Todos fuéron allá* ménos *su hermano*," they all went thither *but* his brother.

Note 3. When the word *but* is used as a substitute for some other words, it is generally rendered, in Spanish, by the words which it represents. Thus:

He was hardly gone out but (*when*) the house fell down, *apénas hubo salido* cuando *se cayó la* casa.

But (*if it were not*) for me, he would die with cold, si no fuera *por mí el se moriria de frio.*

But that I think (*if I* did *not think that*) it would vex thee, I would tell it thee, si yo no pensara que *le molestase, se lo diria.*

* See pages 188, 189 and 190

† Pero is sometimes used as a substantive, and then it signifies defect; as, *ella no tiene* pero, she has no *blemish.*

There is no one but is (*that is not*) a sinner, *no hai ninguo* que no sea *pecador*.

He went no day into the country but he returned (*that he returned not*) loaded, *ningun dia fué al campo* que no volvió *cargado*.

I have but (*only*) one servant, *tengo* solo *un criado*.

I came but (*I came not till*) yesterday, no viene hasta *ayer*.

That means no more but (*than*) to tell me to go away, *eso no quiere decir mas* que *decirme que me vaya*.

The annexed conjunctions are translated in the following manner:

As is *como;* example: black *as* pitch, *negro* como *la pez*.

As being followed by *so*, is expressed *así como;* example: *as* he rewards virtue, *so* he punishes vice, así como *premia la virtud*, así *castiga el vicio*.

As meaning *when*, is *cuando;* example: we met her *as* we were going home, *la encontrámos* cuando *íbamos á casa*.

Neither and *nor* is *ni;* example: he will *neither* sell it *nor* give it, *no quiere venderlo* ni *darlo*.

Neither, at the end of a sentence, is translated *tampoco;* as, nor I *neither*, *ni yo* tampoco.*

Rather; this adverb, when used as an adversative conjunction, is resolved into *ántes* or *ántes bien;* example: I owe him nothing, rather [on the contrary] he owes me something, *yo no le debo nada, ántes* or *ántes bien el me debe algo*.

Whether is *sí;* example: tell me *whether* he will come or *not*, *dígame vmd.* si *él vendrá ó* no.

Whether, in phrases like the following, is expressed by

* When *either* comes accompanied by a negative, it is translated like *neither;* example: I will not see them, nor she *either*, "*Yo no*

que; example: *whether* he comes or not, I don't care any thing, que *venga ó* que *no venga, no se me da nada.*

Both, meaning *as well as*, is translated either *así como*, or *tanto como;* as, así *él* como *yo vendrémes, both* he and I will come; tanto *el conocimiento de libros*, como *de hombres es necesario; both* the knowledge of books and men, is necessary.

However, or *howsoever*, is rendered, *por* or *por mas;* as, *however* great a man may be, he must always be humble, por *grande que sea un hombre, debe siempre ser humilde; how* horrid *soever* vice may be, it will always find followers, por mas *horrible que sea el vicio, siempre encuentra secuaces.*

EXAMPLES.

None *but* God can know our thoughts. Every thing
conocer
but the hour of death is uncertain. I do not complain
quejarse
of the law, *but* of her servants. Death is terrible, *but*
ministro ———
judgment will be more so: let us not fear then the
juicio *lo* *pues*
hour of death, *but* the day of judgment. What his
juicio
valour achieved was much, *but* what his mind suffered
obrar *espíritu padecer*
was more. Fame is the reward of conquerors, *but*
fama *recompensa* *conquistador*
virtue will have another recompense. Of what service
premio *servicio*
was the death of Nero to the Romans, *but* to make
Neron . . . . . *de dar*

be dignified. However certain a man may be of
(*guardar dignidad*) *cierto*
a thing, he should, (on no occasion,) be positive.
deber *nunca* *positivo*

OF INTERJECTIONS.*

RULE LXXIV.

Adjectives employed as interjections, require *de* before the noun to which they are applied; as, "Pobre de *mi padre!*" oh! my *poor* father! "Desdichada de *mi madre!*" oh! my *unhappy* mother!

Note 1. The interjection *ai*, when used like the English *wo*, requires *de* before the following noun; as, ai *de tí! wo* to thee! ¡ai *de aquellos que mueren en sus pecados! wo* to them who die in their sins!

Note 2. The interjection *ele* is used with the personal pronouns only, and always joined to the objective case; as, "Etela *que viene!*" lo she comes! "Eteme *aquí ya fuera de Oviedo!*" *behold me* here, or, *lo here am I*, already out of Oviedo!

EXERCISES.

Oh, my father! my friend! how great has been my
ingratitud
ingratitude! Oh, piety! oh, virtue! how insensible have
I been to thy charms! Unhappy we, how shall we
encanto
have courage to fight with our friends! Happy thou,
valor *pelear*
Telemachus! with such a guide thou hast nothing to
fear! Wo to me, should death come before I am pre-
pre-
pared! Lo, here they come! prepared to insult us.
parar *insultar*

* See page 190.

OBSERVATION.

It was considered expedient to give, in the first edition of this grammar, a specimen of the various modes of translation which had been heretofore adopted. Experience has taught us, that they increased the size of the book, without affording any immediate or remote utility to the student. As it has always been our object to render this grammar, as useful and acceptable as study and reflection would permit us, we have substituted in place of those models, a few short extracts, which will serve both as promiscuous exercises of the syntactical rules, and lessons to prepare the student for translation and composition.

PRUDENCE.

Hear the words of prudence, (give heed unto) her
prudencia atender á
counsels, and store them in thine heart: her max-
consejo guardar mác-
ims are universal, and all the virtues (lean upon) her:
sina ——— depender
she is the guide and mistress of human life. Put a
guia dueño †
bridle on thy tongue; set a guard before thy lips,
freno á lengua poner guarda á labio
lest the words of thine own mouth destroy thy
(*paraque*) (*no destruir*)
peace. Let him who (scoffeth at) the lame, (take care)
burlarse cojo guardarse
that he (halt not himself:) whoever speaketh of

not of thyself,) for it (shall bring) contempt upon
alabarse *eso* *grangear* *menosprecio* †
thee; neither deride another, for it is dangerous.
burlarse *peligroso*
DODSLEY.

GRATITUDE.

There is not a more pleasing exercise of the
deleitable *operacion*
mind than gratitude. It is accompanied
(*corazon humano*)
with so great inward satisfaction, that the duty
interior ——— *obligacion*
is sufficiently rewarded by the performance.
quedar *recompensar* *obra*
It is not like the practise of many other virtues,
como *práctica*
difficult and painful; but attended with so much plea-
penoso *seguir* *de-*
sure, that were there no positive command which
leite *mandato*
enjoined it, nor any recompense (laid up) for it
ordenar *recompensa* *preparar*
hereafter, a generous mind would (indulge in)
(*en el otro mundo*) *alma* *practicar*
it for the gratification it affords.
——— *ofrecer* ADDISON.

DISCRETION.

There are many shining qualities in the mind
brillante *prenda* *entendimi-*

EMPLOYMENT OF TIME.

Time is precious, life short, (and consequently) not
corto *por consiguiente* *ni*
a moment should be lost. Sensible men know how
deber *perder* *sensato* †
to make the most of time, (and put out their whole
y todo lo emplean en
sum to interest.) They are never idle, but conti-
cosas útiles *ocioso*
nually employed in rational amusements or study.
——— *divertimiento*
It is a universal maxim, that idleness is the mother
ociosidad
of vice. It is,[3] however,[1] certain,[2] that
(de todos los vicios) *(sin embargo)*
laziness is the inheritance of fools; and nothing
indolencia *propiedad* *tonto*
can be more despicable than a sluggard. Whatever
despreciable *haragan*
business you* have, do it the first moment you
ocupacion *cumplir* *al* †
can, never by halves, but finish it without interrup-
mitad *terminar* ———
tion, if possible.
——— *(si es posible)* CHESTERFIELD.

TRUE AND FALSE MODESTY.

Nothing is more admirable than true modesty,
verdadero *modestia*

* Addressing, in this general manner, *tú* should always be used in Spanish.

and nothing is more contemptible than the false. The
aborrecible *falso*
one guards virtue, the other betrays it. True modesty
proteger *vender*
is ashamed to do any thing that is repugnant to the
repugnante
rules of right reason: false modesty is ashamed to
regla *buena razon*
do any thing that is opposite to the humour of the
contrario *humor*
company. True modesty avoids every thing that is
compañia *evitar*
criminal, false modesty every thing that is unfashionable.
(no es de moda)

The latter is only a general indetermined instinct;
solo *indeterminado instincto*
the former is that instinct, limited and circumscribed
(que se circunscribe)
by the rules of prudence and religion.

ADDISON.

JUDGMENT.

Deeply impress your mind with the vast
profundamente *grabar (en tu) alma* † *grande*
importance of a sound judgment, and the rich and
necesidad *sólido juicio* *precioso*
inestimable advantages of right reasoning. Review
——— *ventaja* *verdadero discurrir* *repasar*
the instances of your own misconduct in life, and
caso *(impropia conduta)*

observe how many follies and sorrows (you had es-
locura *pesar* *ahorrarse*
caped) if from your (early years,) you had taken
desde *mocedad*
due pains to judge aright concerning persons,
(*el trabajo*) *juzgar verdaderamente* *de*
times, and things. Do not hover always on the
tiempo *pararse* *en*
surface of things, or (take up) suddenly with mere
superficie *ni ceder* *(de repente)* *á* *mero*
appearances, for this will fill the mind with
apariencia *pues* *llenar* *entendimiento*
errors and prejudices, and give it an ill habit of
error *preocupacion* (*le acostumbraria á mal*)
thinking; but penetrate into the depth of matters (as
pensar † *penetrar* † *fondo* *materia* *tanto*
far as) your time and circumstances will allow.
como (*te lo permitan*)

WATTS.

What peculiarity is there in regard to the notes of interrogation and admiration? . . . 45–46
When is the diæresis (··) used? 47
What do we understand by the orthographic accent? . . . . . *ib.*
When is it used? 47–49
In what manner are the other marks of punctuation employed? . . . . . *ib.*
Are there abbreviations used in Spanish writing? . *ib.*

ETYMOLOGY.

What is etymology? 55
How are words divided? . . . . . *ib.*
Of how many sorts of words is the Spanish language composed? . . . . . *ib.*
What is a noun? . . . . . *ib.*
What is an article? . . . . . *ib.*
What is an adjective? . . . . . *ib.*
What is a pronoun? . . . . . *ib.*
What does a verb denote? 56
What does an adverb modify? . . . . *ib.*
What do prepositions show? . . . . . *ib.*
What do conjunctions connect? . . . . *ib.*
What is an interjection? . . . . . *ib.*
What is a proper noun? . . . . . *ib.*
What is an appellative noun? . . . . . *ib.*
What is an abstract noun? . . . . . *ib.*
Are nouns distinguished by other names? . . 57
What is an augmentative noun? . . . . *ib.*
What is a diminutive noun? . . . . . *ib.*
What are collective nouns? . . . . . *ib.*
How are collective nouns divided? 57
What is a definitive collective noun? . . . *ib.*

What is an indefinite collective noun? . . 57
What is it that belongs to nouns? 58
What is gender? . . . . . *ib.*
How many genders are there in Spanish, properly speaking? . . . . . *ib.*
Are there no nouns which, on account of their nature, are distinguished by other kinds of gender? *ib.*
Which are the rules to distinguish the genders of nouns? 58–59
Are there no exceptions to these general rules? *ib.*
Which are these exceptions? 59–64
What is number? . . . . . *ib.*
How many numbers are there? . . . . . *ib.*
How is the plural number formed? . . . 64–65
What is case? . . . . . *ib.*
How many cases have the Spanish nouns? . *ib.*
Which are the reasons assigned why there are but two cases in Spanish? note * . . . 65–68
What does the nominative case express? . . 66
What does the objective case express? . . *ib.*
Decline the word *mesa*, "table." 67
Which are the Spanish articles? 68
Decline the words *rei*, "king," *libro*, "book," *reina*, "queen," *casa*, "house," with the article. 68–69
Decline *hombre*, "man," *muger*, "woman," with the adjective. 70
In what case is the adjective preceded by the neuter article? 70–71
How many degrees of comparison are there? . *ib.*

What is the reason that some adjectives are term-
ordinal? 71
Which are the cardinal adjectives or numbers? . 72–74
Which are the ordinal adjectives or numbers? 74–75
How many kinds of pronouns are there in Spanish? 76
Which are they? . . . . . *ib.*
Which are the numbers of personal pronouns? . *ib.*
Which are the persons of pronouns? . . . . *ib.*
Decline the personal pronouns. 77
For what reason has the author assigned two ob-
jective cases to pronouns? . . . . . *ib.*
What do the possessive pronouns indicate? . . 78
Which are they? . . . . . *ib.*
What is the office of the relative pronoun? . . 79
Which are they? . . . . . *ib.*
Which are the interrogatie pronouns? . . . *ib.*
What is the office of the demonstrative pronouns? *ib.*
Which are they? . . . . . *ib.*
What is the office of the indefinite pronouns? . 80
Which are they? . . . . . *ib.*
Into how many kinds are verbs divided? . . 81
What is an *active* verb? . . . . . *ib.*
What is a *passive* verb? . . . . . *ib.*
What is a *neuter* verb? . . . . . *ib.*
How are *active verbs* divided? . . . . . *ib.*
What does an *active transitive* verb express? . *ib.*
What does an *active intransitive* verb express? . *ib.*
Into what kind of verbs may *active transitive* verbs
be changed? . . . . . *ib.*
When is a verb called *reflective?* 82
How are *active transitive verbs* changed into tran-
sitive? . . . . . *ib.*
What is it that belongs to verbs? . . . . *ib.*

How many [illegible]
Repeat the [illegible]
Repeat the [illegible]
To how many [illegible]
action of a [illegible]
How are those [illegible]
What do [illegible]
What does the [illegible]
What does the [illegible]
What does the [illegible]
Of what does the [illegible]
What is a [illegible]
How many [illegible]
How does the [illegible]
Which are the [illegible]
What is the Span[illegible]
What is [illegible]
To how many [illegible]
itself?
Which are the [illegible]
Which are the [illegible]
Which are the [illegible]
Which are the [illegible]
Conjugate the [illegible]
tense, [illegible]
How does the [illegible]
the second, [illegible]
How are the [illegible]
called?
How are the [illegible]
gation form[illegible]
How are the [illegible]
jugation form[illegible]

How are the tenses of the verb of the third conjugation formed? 105–107
How are the participle and gerund formed? 107–108
Conjugate the regular verbs, *amar*, "to love," *vender*, "to sell," *unir*, "to unite." . . 108–116
Conjugate the passive verb, *ser herido*, "to be wounded." 117–119
Conjugate the reflective verb, *alabarse*, "to praise one's self." 119–121
Conjugate the irregular verbs. . . 125–164
Conjugate the impersonal verbs. . . 164–169
Conjugate the defective verbs. . . 169–170
Which are the participles irregularly formed? 171
Which are the participles that have both an active signification, and are used as adjectives? 174
What is the difference between the ancient and modern termination of verbs? . . . 175–177
What are the ancient, what the modern terminations of the persons of the first conjugation in which a difference exists? . . . 176
What the persons of the second conjugation? . 177
What the persons of the third conjugation? . *ib.*
What is the variation of irregular verbs? 177–178
Where is the verb placed in asking questions? 178
Where is the negation *no* placed in verbs conjugated negatively? 179
Into how many classes are adverbs divided? . *ib.*
Repeat the adverbs of place. 180
" " time. . . . . *ib.*
" manner. . . . 181
" " quantity. . . . *ib.*
" " comparison. . . . . *ib.*
" " order. . . . . *ib.*

Repeat the adverbs of affirmation. 182
" " negation. . . . . *ib.*
" " doubt. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the adverbs that require *de*, and those that require *a*, before the nouns following them? 182–183
Repeat the adverbial phrases. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the prepositions that the Spanish Academy has deemed such? 184
Repeat the English prepositions with the corresponding ones in Spanish. . . 185–188
Into how many kinds are the Spanish conjunctions divided? . . . . . *ib.*
Which are the conjunctive? . . . . . *ib.*
" disjunctive? . . . . . *ib.*
" conditional? 189
" causal? . . . . . *ib.*
" continuative? . . . . . *ib.*
" comparative? . . . . . *ib.*
" adversative? . . . . . *ib.*
" objective? . . . . . *ib.*
Which are the simple, which the compound conjunctions? . . . . . *ib.*
Which are the words that are to be considered as interjections in the Spanish language? . 190

SYNTAX.

What is syntax? 191
Of how many parts does it consist? . . *ib.*
What is *concord?* . . . . . *ib.*

How must the article agree with the noun? rule 1. 193
How are *of the*, and *to the*, translated? note 1, rule 1. . . . . *ib.*
What kind of article do feminine nouns beginning with *a*, or *ha*, accented, take? note 2, rule 1. *ib.*
Do nouns used in a general sense take the article? rule 2. 195
What is understood by nouns used in a general sense? reference *, rule 2. . . 195–196
When is it that the names of empires, kingdoms, countries, provinces, &c. are, and when is it that they are not preceded by the article? rule 3. 197–198
Which are the places that always bear the article? note 1, rule 3. 198
Is the article placed before nouns of measure, weight, bulk and number? rule 4. . . 200
How is money reckoned both in old Spain, and South America? reference *. . . . 200
When is the article repeated in Spanish? rule 5. 201
Is the article used when todo—a—os—as, follows the nouns thus enumerated? note 1, rule 5. *ib.*
Is the article placed before the days of the week, and before numerals denoting the hour of the day? rule 6. 202–203
Is the article placed before dates? note 1, rule 6. 203
What is to be observed in regard to *Señor*,—*a*—*ito*—*ita?* rule 7. 204
Is the article placed before *Don*, or has *Don* a plural, or can it be used before surnames? note 1, rule 7. 205
Are nouns which denote dignity or profession preceded by the article? . . . . . *ib.*

On what cases is it used? note 10. . . . *ib.*
Has the Spanish language the possessive case? rule 13. 222
How is it supplied? rule 13. . . . . *ib.*
What is the arrangement to be followed in Spanish, when two nouns come together, the one serving as adjective for the other? note 1, rule 13. 223
How are the phrases, *a book of my father's, a soldier of the king's*, to be rendered in Spanish? note 2, rule 13. . . . . *ib.*
Must the words, house, palace, &c. understood in English by the sign ('s), be fully expressed in Spanish? note 3, rule 13. . . . *ib.*
How are adjectives divided in Spanish? . . 225
How is the feminine of adjectives formed? . *ib.*
In what manner are articles of commerce qualified, if we wish to express the nation in which they were raised? . . . . . *ib.*
Does the occupation of persons form an exception to this rule? . . . . . *ib.*
How do adjectives agree with nouns? rule 14. 226
What kind of adjectives do two, or more nouns in the singular require? note 1, rule 14. . . *ib.*
And if they differ in gender? ibid. . . . *ib.*
How does the adjective agree when prefixed to two singular nouns? How does it agree if it follows two or more plural nouns? note 2, rule 14. . *ib.*
Does an adjective agree with a title or the person that bears it? note 5, rule 14. . . 227
What kind of adjective does nada require? note 4, rule 14. 227
How do two or more adjectives qualify a plural noun? observation. . . . . *ib.*

Are adjectives placed before or after the nouns? rule 15. 232
In what three instances are they put before? note 1, rule 15. 233
What is the position of adjectives when a verb precedes or follows them? note 2, rule 15. . *ib.*
When is *cierto* placed before, when after the noun, it qualifies? note 3, rule 15. . . . *ib.*
Where are the adjectives *mucho* and *poso* placed? note 4, rule 15. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the adjectives that lose their final *o* when prefixed to nouns? rule 16. . . 236
When is it that *Santo*, loses its termination? note 1, rule 16. 237
When does *Ciento*, lose its termination? note 2, rule 16. . . . . *ib.*
What is it to be observed in regard to *grande?* note 3, rule 16. . . . . *ib.*
What is it to be observed in regard to *aljuno* and *ninjano*, and *tercero*, observation? . . 239
Which are the words used in Spanish to denote comparison? rule 17. . . . 244
How is "so much" and "as much" translated? note 1, rule 17. . . . . *ib.*
When is it that *mas* precedes *de*, instead of que? note 2, rule 17. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the irregular comparatives? ibid. . 245
By what words is the article "the" rendered when used to denote comparison? rule 18. . 248

Is *cual* used instead of *como?* note 4, rule 18. 248
How are superlatives formed in Spanish? rule 19. 250
And if the adjectives end in a vowel? note 1, rule 19. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the adjectives that undergo a change before they admit *isimo*, those that are irregularly formed, and the irregular superlatives? . 251
How are those superlatives formed in Spanish, which in English end in "est?" rule 20. . 253
How is most translated? note 1, rule 20. . *ib.*
How is the preposition "in" after superlatives translated in Spanish? note 2, rule 20. . *ib.*
Which are the adjectives that require the preposition *de?* rules 21, 22. 255–257
By what preposition are adjectives denoting proximity followed? And by what those denoting distance? rule 23. 258
By what preposition are adjectives denoting fitness followed? note 1, rule 23. . . . . *ib.*
When is the pronoun *nosotros*, expressed by *nos?* observation 261
When is *Vos*, used instead of *Vosotros?* ibid. *ib.*
How is *vmd*, declined? ib. . . . . *ib.*
Is it similar to other pronouns? . . . . *ib.*
When is it that the subject or nominative case precedes the verb? And when is it that it follows it? rule 24. 262
In what cases are the pronouns used in Spanish? note 1, rule 24. 263
Where is the first objective case placed? rule 25. . 266
When a verb governs another in the infinitive, where may the objective case be placed? note 1, rule 25. . . . . *ib.*

Does the pronoun agree with the property or the possessor? reference †. 286
How are mine, thine, his, &c. preceded by of, translated? note 3, rule 29. . . . . *ib.*
When is it, that the English adjective possessive pronouns, are translated by the Spanish definite articles? observation, note 1st, 2d, 3d and 4th. 290–291
When is it, that "your" and "yours," is translated, *de vmd*, and *de vmds?* 291
Do *quien*, *cual*, *que*, *and cuyo* change from singular to plural, or from masculine to feminine? observation. 294
Is *cual* preceded by the article. . . . *ib.*
To what does *quien* relate? rule 30. . . . 295
" *cual* " ? ib. . . . . *ib.*
" *que* " ? ib. . . . *ib.*
" *cuyo* " ? ib. . . . . *ib.*
How are "who" and "whom" translated in Spanish? rule 31. 297
By what may "whom" be translated when not preceded by a preposition? note 1, rule 31. . *ib.*
By what is "that" or "which" translated? And by what "that which" or "what?" note 2, rule 31. . . . . *ib.*
How is "what" translated, when used as a substantive? note 3, rule 31. . . . . *ib.*
When may *cuál* be used? rule 32. . . . 299
Is the relative ever implied in Spanish? rule 33. 301
Where is the preposition which governs a relative pronoun placed? note 1, rule 33. . . . *ib.*

How are the personal pronouns translated, when they precede "who" or "that?" rule 34. 302
In questions, how is "who" translated, how is "which," and how is "what?" rule 35. . 303
How is "whose" translated in asking a question? note 1, rule 35. 304
What is it to be observed if a preposition govern the interrogative pronoun? note 2, rule 35. *ib.*
How do demonstrative pronouns agree with substantives? rule 36. 306
By what may *este-a, estos as* be translated? And *aquel-la, aquellos-as?* rule 36. . . . *ib.*
What happens when *este* and *ese,* precede the word *otro?* reference *. . . . . *ib.*
How are *este, ese,* and *aquel* translated, when they relate to distance? observation. . . 308
How are these pronouns translated when they relate to time? ibid. . . . . *ib.*
How are the English personal pronouns *he, the, they* or *those* translated, whenever they precede a relative pronoun, either in the nominative or objective case? rule 37. . . . . *ib.*
How are these same personal pronouns translated if they be in the objective case, and precede a relative pronoun in the nominative case? note 1, rule 37. 309
How is "the latter," and how "the former" translated in Spanish? rule 38. . . . 312
How is "that," when followed by "of" or "which" translated? note 1, rule 38. . . . *ib.*

Which are the indefinite pronouns? . . 314
How is "one" translated? note 1. . . . . *ib.*
How is "some body, some one, any body, any one?" note 2. . . . . *ib.*
How is "nobody, no man, no one, not any body, not any one?" note 3. 315
How is "something, anything?" note 4. . . *ib.*
" "nothing, not any thing?" note 5. . *ib.*
" "some, any?" note 6. . . . . *ib.*
" "none, not any?" note 7. . . . . *ib.*
" "whoever, whosoever, whichever?" note 8. *ib.*
" "whatever, whatsoever?" note 9. . . . 316
" "another, other, others?" note 10. . *ib.*
" "each other, one another?" note 11. . *ib.*
" "both, several?" note 12. 317
" "much, many?" note 13. . . . . *ib.*
" "each, when alone?" note 14. . . *ib.*
" "each," or "every," when joined to a noun? note 15. . . . . *ib.*
How is "every," when not used in the same sense of each? note 16. . . . . *ib.*
How is "all?" note 17. 318
What does the "present of the indicative" denote? rule 39. 325
What are the various uses of the "present tense?" notes, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. 325–326
What does the "imperfect of the indicative" denote? rule 40. 328
What are the circumstances expressed by this tense? note 1, rule 40. . . . . *ib.*
What does the "perfect indefinite denote?" rule 41. 330

What is the general distinction, between *ria*, and *se*, and when are they used? notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10. 344–346
What does the "perfect of the subjunctive" denote? rule 49. 350
What does the "pluperfect" denote? rule 50. 351
What does the future imperfect denote? rule 51. *ib.*
What does the "future perfect" denote? rule 52. 352
What is the precise difference between the imperfect and the "future of the subjunctive?" observation. 353
What does the "infinitive mood" represent? rule 53. 354
What are its various uses? notes 1, 2, rule 53. . 335
What does the "perfect" represent? . . *ib.*
How is the English "participle present" construed in Spanish? rule 54. 356
Which are the various uses of the "gerund?" notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, rule 54. 356–357
When is the "passive participle" declinable? rule 55. 358
What is to be observed, when *tener* is used instead of *haber*, for the conjugation of compound tenses? note 1, 2, rule 55. 359
Is the "past participle" ever used in Spanish as a case absolute? note 2, rule 55. . . . . *ib.*
How does the verb agree with its nominative? rule 56. 365
What verb do two nouns in the singular connected by a conjunction, require? rule 57. . 367
Of what number must that verb be, which agrees with two or more nouns, the last of which is preceded by the conjugation *o?* rule 58. . 368

Of what number must that verb be which agrees with the phrases *ó tú ó yo, ó él ó ella*, &c.? note 1. rule 58. 368
If two or more nouns, are not connected by any conjunction but the last makes an aggregate of them all, with which one of them must the verb agree? rule 59. . . . . *ib.*
If two or more persons are subjects to the verb, with what must this last agree? note 1, rule 59. 369
When the verb is prefixed to two or more singular nouns, though they be united by the conjunction *y*, of what number must the agreeing verb be? rule 60. . . . . *ib.*
With which one of these nouns must the verb agree should they differ in number? *ib.* . . . . *ib.*
Of what number is to be the verb which agrees with a definite collective noun? rule 61. . . 370
And the verb which agrees with an indefinite collective noun? *ib.* . . . . . *ib.*
What is the use and difference of *haber* and *tener?* 372
How is, "to be thirsty, hungry, ashamed, cold, warm, or afraid" to be translated? . . *ib.*
How is, "to have to," to be translated? . . *ib.*
" "to be to?" 373
" "to have just?" . . . . . *ib.*

On what does it depend that the same adjectives require sometimes *ser* sometimes *estar?* reference *. 379
With what nouns is the verb *ser* conjugated impersonally? rule 62. 381
What tense do *ser preciso* and *ser necesario* require? note 1, rule 62. 382
Does it ever happen that personal verbs are conjugated sometimes impersonally? note 2, rule 62. *ib.*
With what must the verb *ser* agree when used impersonally? note 3, rule 62. . . . . *ib.*
In what case does an active transitive verb govern a noun? rule 63. 387
In what instances does the verb govern the objective case with the preposition *a?* note 1, rule 63. *ib.*
Which is the exception to these instances? note 2, rule 63. . . . . *ib.*
When is it that verbs are used in the infinitive in Spanish? rule 64. 388
Which are the verbs that govern the infinitive with *a?* note 1, rule 64. . . . . *ib.*
Which are the verbs that govern the infinitive with *de?* note 2, rule 64. 389
When is it that the preposition "to" before an infinitive is translated in Spanish by *por*, and when is it, that it is translated by *para?* note 3, rule 64. . . . . *ib.*
When is it that verbs govern, in Spanish, either the indicative or subjunctive, according as they do in English? rule 65. 391
Which are the verbs that require the subjunctive invariably? note 1, rule 65. . . . . *ib.*
Must the conjunction "that," *que*, be always expressed in Spanish? note 2, rule 65. . . 392

What is to be observed on *gustar* and *faltar?* observation. 408
How is the verb *pesar*, rendered? *ib.* . . . 409
How are the adverbs in *mente*, formed? rule 71. 410
What modification do adverbs in *mente* undergo, one, two or more of them qualify the same verb? *ib.* . . . . . *ib.*
Where are adverbs of manner placed? note 1, rule 71. . . . . *ib.*
For what sake is a sentence sometimes begun with an adverb? note 2, rule 71. . . . . *ib.*
What word should *mas* and *ménos* follow whenever they do not begin the sentence? note 3, rule 71. . . . . *ib.*
When is it that *sí* and *no* require *que?* note 4, rule 71. 411
Is *jamas* ever coupled with *nunca?* observation. *ib.*
For what purpose are two negatives used in the Spanish? *ib.* . . . . . *ib.*
When is it that "very" is to be translated by *mucho*, and not *mui? ib.* . . . . . *ib.*
What case do prepositions govern? rule 72. . *ib.*
What is the peculiarity of *segun?* rule 72. . *ib.*
How is the conjunction "but," not being preceded by a negative? rule 73. 414
When is it that *pero* or *mas* are preferable to *sino?* note 1, rule 73. . . . . *ib.*
How is the exceptive "but" rendered? note 2, rule 73. . . . . *ib.*
In what manner is "but" to be rendered in Spanish, when used as a substitute for other words? note 3, rule 73. 414

How is "as" translated? 415
" "as" followed by "so?" . . . . ib.
" "as" meaning "when?" . . . . . ib.
" "neither" " "nor?" . . . . ib.
" "neither," at the end of a sentence? . ib.
" "rather," when used as an adversative? ib.
" "whether?" . . . . . ib.
" "whether," in phrases like, "whether he comes or not?" . . . . . ib.
How is "both," meaning "as well as?" . . . 416
" "however," or "howsoever?" . . ib.
What preposition do adjectives employed as interjections require? rule 74. 418
What preposition does the interjection *ai* require, when used for the English "woe?" note 1, rule 74. ib.
How is the interjection *ete* used? note 2, rule 74. ib.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

That part of grammar which treats of the *accent*, and establishes the laws of *versification*, is called Prosody.

OBSERVATION.

In Orthography, pages 47, 48, 49, we spoke of accent as a written sign, denoting that the vowel upon which it is placed, must be pronounced with more force, than any other letter in the same word. The accent in prosody is taken in a different sense. It refers not to that orthographical mark, but to the stress, by which a certain letter of every word is distinguished from the rest.

Majesty seems to be inherent in the Spanish language, and this quality is very apparent in its pronunciation. No syllable* or consonant is ever accented; vowels only are susceptible of this distinction. The consequence of this custom is, that every word has a vowel long, which must necessarily tend to render this language full and sonorous.

In some words, the vowel upon which the stress is placed, is distinguished by that mark or acute accent mentioned in Orthography. But, in some others, the vowel is considered sufficiently conspicuous without any sign whatever. Hence the student must not only know the accented vowel of every word, but those words which require this vowel to be designated by that orthographical accent. It is presumed that this task may, in a great measure, be compassed by carefully perusing the rules which are now laid down. They will, we are satisfied, guide the scholar in all instances, with regard to the laying of the

*Very frequently we speak of the accented syllable, instead of the accented vowel of a word.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. The accent will be written in those words composed of the first and third person of the preterite, or any person of the future indicative, and a pronoun; as, *témile*, I feared him; *terminóse*, it was terminated; *concluyólo*, he concluded it; *amaránse*, they will love themselves.

2. The esdrújulos* have always the antepenult vowel long; and it is always marked with the accent; as, *ímpetu*, impulse; *cámara*, chamber; *santísimo*, most holy; *altílocuo*, using high sounding words. Under these words are considered those which are formed from a verb and a pronoun; as *óyeme*, hear me; *deténgánse*, let them stop.

3. Any tense of a verb to which two pronouns are affixed, have the fourth vowel (counting from the last,) long, and marked with the accent, except the tenses mentioned in the first exception of this rule, which have the antepenult long and accented; as *deténgamelos*, let them be stopped for me; *digéronselo*, they said it to them; *búscantele*, let them seek him for you; *traeráselo*, he will bring it to her; *llevóselo*, you took it away.

4. The adverbs terminating in *mente*, follow, in every respect, the adjectives from which they were formed; as, *industriosa*-mente, industriously; *bárbara*-mente, barbarously.

* The *esdrújulos* are those words which, ending in one or two vowels, and consisting of more than two syllables, are accented on the antepenult vowel. This is one of those instances in which theory could not show the number of these *esdrújulos*, unless they were given in a catalogue, which, as it would be very numerous, could not be acquired without considerable labour. The arrangement of the above rules, supersedes, we think, the necessity of all this trouble. The student knows well, that according to the 2d exception to Rule II. the *esdrújulos* are marked with the accent; no mistake can therefore be committed in pronouncing them. This kind of words is also very easily distinguished, and a little practice in reading, will educate the scholar's ear in a manner, as to place beyond difficulty, this part of Prosody.

5. There are some words, which, contrary to the present rule, have the last vowel long. In this case it always bears the accent; as, *allá*, there; *aquí*, here; *café*, coffee-house; *Perú*, Peru.

RULE III.

Words ending in a diphthong, or two vowels, have their penult vowel long, without being accented; as, "*serio*, serious; *feria*, fair; *mutuo*, mutual; *duo*, duetto; *reo*, culprit.

EXCEPTION.

1. The orthographical accent will be used in all those words, the last syllable of which is long;* as *minué*, minuet; *Monjuí*, Monjuí, [a fortress in Catalonia.]

RULE IV.

Words of three or more syllables, terminating in the diphthongs *ia*, *ie*,† *io*, *ua*, *ue*, *uo*, have generally their penult long, without the marked accent; as, *concordia*, concord; *imperio*, empire; *desaguo*, discharge of water; *desague*, channel.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. When the above terminating vowels are not a diphthong, the accent must be written on which ever of the two vowels the stress happens to be laid; as, *filosofía*, philosophy; *ganzúa*, a picklock.

RULE V.

Words which end in *ae*, *ao*, *au*, *eo*, *ea*, *oe*, *oo*, (these letters not being diphthongs,) are accented on the penult without any mark; as "*bacalao*, codfish; *hermosea*, he beautifies; *arcabuceo*, the act of shooting criminals; *linaloe*, aloes; *Feijoo*, Feijoo; (the name of a great Spanish writer) *loo*, I praise.

* A little practice will soon make the student acquainted with these.

EXCEPTIONS.

When the above vowels are diphthongs, the word to which they belong, has the antepenult long, and marked with an accent; as, *Cesárea*, imperial; *etérea*, étherial; *cutáneo*, cutaneous; *momentáneo*, momentary; *héroe*, hero.

RULE VI.

Words ending in a consonant have the last vowel long, but not marked with the accent; as *caridad*, charity; *almacen*, store-house; *albañil*, bricklayer; *borrador*, the rough copy of any writing; *correr*, to run; *amar*, to love; *advertir*, to take notice of.

EXCEPTIONS.

All words ending in a consonant, which have not the last vowel long; the vowel upon which the stress is laid, must be marked with the accent. The number of these words is very trifling, in comparison to those which come under the general rule, yet we think it too considerable for insertion. The following will serve as examples, and, it is believed, to guide, the student in all the rest: *árbol*, tree; *volúmen*, volume; *vírgen*, virgin; *mártir*, martyr; *crísis*, crisis; *alférez*, ensign; *Aristóteles*, Aristotle.

RULE VII.

The plural follows the singular of words in every respect whatever; as "*árbol*, *árboles*, trees, *hortelano*, *hortelanos*, gardeners; *espiritu*, *espiritus*, spirits.

RULES TO KNOW ON WHICH VOWEL TO LAY THE STRESS IN THE TENSES OF VERBS.*

1. If the termination of the tense of a verb be an *a*, *e*, or *o*, alone, or followed by *n* or *s*, the penult vowel

*They comprise all the regular, and many of the irregular verbs.

3. All the persons of the future indicative; as, *adoleceré*, *concluirás*, *celebrará*, *sorprenderémos*, *contendréis*, *lisongearán*.

4. The first and second persons plural of the three imperfects, and of the future, of the subjunctive; as, *anduviéramos*, *tendrian*, *amaríamos*, *partiéremos*, *comprehendiéreis*.

[After very mature reflection, we have determined to write the versification in Spanish. The reasons which have prevented us from presenting this treatise in English, are explained at the end of this grammar, where it has been deemed expedient to place this second part of Prosody.]

APPENDIX.

COLLOQUIAL IDIOMS.

To act as, *hacer de;* as, "*He acted as* a teacher during the voyage," hizo de *maestro durante el viage.*

To afford, *estar ó hallarse, en estado de, tener los medios;* as, "How many things would one buy if he could *afford it;*" *cuantas cosas no compraria uno si* tuviese los medios.

To agree, speaking of eating, is rendered by *sentar bien;* as, "Chocolate does not *agree with* me," *el chocolate no me* sienta bien. Speaking of climates and seasons, by *acomodar;* as, "The climate of Havana *does not agree* with me," *el clima de la Havana no me* acomoda.

Amiss if, when it is followed by *not to be,* is rendered by *no ser fuera del caso;* as, "It *would not be amiss* if you went thither," no seria fuera del caso *que vmd. vaya allá.*

To answer, *corresponder,* in such expressions as the following. "This year's crop *does not answer* our expectations," *la cosecha de este año,* no corresponde á *nuestras esperanzas.*

To answer for, (i. e. to stand security for,) *salir fiador;* as. "I *will answer* for him," *yo* saldré fiador *por él.*

Answer, *hacer* or *acomodar,* "I have a pair of shoes which *will answer* you," *tengo un par de zapatos que le* acomodarán.

To avail one's self of an opportunity, *valerse de la ocasion.*

To become, *hacerse;* "He *became* rich after his mother's death," se hizo *rico despues de la muerte de su madre.*

To become, *meterse;* he became a priest, a soldier, &c. &c., *se metió sacerdote, soldado, &c.*

To become, speaking of dress, is translated *caer*, or *sentar;* as, "This coat *does not become* you well," *esta casaca no le* cae bien.

To become, is translated *ser*, in such expressions as, "What *will become* of my father?" *que* será *de mi padre?*

To become, *ir á parar, hacerse;* as, "What has become of my hat?" *que* se ha hecho *de mi sombrero?* "If such maxims and such practices prevail, what *is become* of national liberty?" *¿si tales mácsimas y tales costumbres prevalecen, á donde* ha ido á parar *la libertad nacional?*

To be the dupe, *engañar, quedar burlado;* "Rome *was the dupe* of the manner in which Nero began to reign," *los principios del reinado de Neron*, engañáron *á los Romanos.*

To be in the right. *tener razon;* to be in the wrong, *no tener razon;* "He *is in the right* to complain," tiene razon *de quejarse.*

To be obliged, *quedar agradecido á uno;* as "*I am* very much *obliged* to you," *le* quedo *mui agradecido.*

To be near, *estar á pique de*, or *por poco;* as, "I was very *near* falling," por poco *me caí*, or, estuve á pique *de caerme.*

To be fond, *gustar á uno;* as, "I *am fond* of reading," *á mí me* gusta *el leer.*

To be sure [illegible]
letter to him [illegible]
llévale esta [illegible]
embió.

To be within [illegible]
de fusil, de [illegible]
gun-shot, and [illegible]
when we left [illegible]
de cañon, y [illegible]
dejamos.

To be well of [illegible]

To be in great [illegible]
guno.

To be very [illegible]
de. "I [illegible]
caerme.

To be, in such [illegible]
lated in; as "The [illegible]
jects," [illegible]

To be to blame for, [illegible]
to blame for his [illegible]
de sus crueldades?

To be [illegible]
you this bill, and [illegible]
ta y quedarme [illegible]

To be easy, or [illegible]
wine I drink it, [illegible]
out it," [illegible]
go, me pasa.

To be so kind [illegible]
as, "*Be so kind* [illegible]
a perfect health" [illegible]
su amigo que yo [illegible]

To bespeak, *encomendar apalabrar.*

To be beyond one's reach, *estar fuera del alcance de uno.*

To bid adieu, or to take leave, *despedirse.*

Birth day, *dia de cumple años.*

To be over, *pasar;* as, "The tempest *is over,*" pasó *la tempestad.*

To bring up, *criar;* as, "My parents *brought me up* in this manner," *así* me criáron *mis padres.*

To catch cold, *resfriarse.*

To care, in such expressions as, I care nothing, or I don't care, is translated *darse* or *importar;* as, "*I care* nothing for his talking," *nada se* me da *por su hablar;* "What care I?" *¿que me* importa *á mí?*

To choose, *elegir;* but in such expressions as the following is rendered *dar á uno la gana;* "Why don't you tell me your name? because I don't choose," *¿Porque no me dice vmd. su nombre? pórque* no me da la gana.

To come to pass, *sucederr, acontecer.*

To depend upon, *fiar de;* as, "*Depend upon* my word," fie *vmd.* de *mi palabra.*

To do, in such expressions as the following, is rendered *ir;* as, "How do you do?" *¿como le va?* (i. e. how does it go with you.)

Droll saying, *dicho gracioso.*

Droll affair, *cosa rara.*

Drop tears, *soltar lágrimas.*

Engine, *máquina.*

Steam Engine, *máquina de vaho* or *vapor.*

Fire engine, *bomba de fuego.*

Pile engine, *martinete.*

To fancy, *antojarse;* as, "*He fancied* that he could learn without study, but he soon perceived that he was

mistaken," se le antojó *á él que podria aprender sin estudiar, pero pronto vió que estaba engañado.*

To fare, *tratarse;* as, "*He fares* like a king," se trata *como á rei.*

Fashionable, *á la moda.*

Fast and loose, *inconstante.*

To find fault with, *hallar que decir;* "He *finds fault with* every thing," *en todo* halla que decir.

To favour, (i. e. to resemble,) *parecerse;* "That young man *favours* his mother," *aquel jóven* se parece *á su madre.*

Fellow, applied to a pair of objects which ought to be similar, is rendered *compañero-a;* as. "My boots are not *fellows,*" *mis botas no son* compañeras.

To fetch a sigh, *dar un suspiro.*

To fill up the time, *emplear el tiempo.*

To find in one's heart, *determinar.*

To find out, *descubrir.*

Fortnight, *quince dias.*

A fortified town, *plaza de armas.*

From top to toe, *de cabeza á pies.*

To furnish a house, *adornar una casa con muebles.*

Fresh water, *agua dulce.*

To get, *grangear, ganar, adquirir.*

To get off, *deshacerse de alguna cosa.*

To get off, *escapar, huir.*

To get up, *levantarse de dormir ó del asiento.*

To get through, *salir de, pasar por.*

To get clear off, *zafarse, libertarse.*

To get well, *restablecerse de alguna enfermedad.*

To get a good name, *tener buena fama.*

To give up the ghost, *entregar el alma á Dios.*

To give one's respects, *dar muchas memorias.*

To give evidence, *atestiguar.*

To give one his own, *reprehender, regañar.*

To give out, *publicar, darse á conocer por quien no es.*

To give up, *abandonar, entregar.*

To give way, *ceder, hacer lugar.*

To give in, *rendirse.*

To go about, *procurar, intentar, emprender.*

To gó to the bottom, *irse á pique.*

To go on, *atacar, proseguir, seguir.*

To go through, *agecutar alguna cosa.*

To grate the teeth, *rechina los dientes.*

To happen to be, *ser ó estar por casualidad;* as, "I *happened to be* there, when he arrived," estaba yo por casualidad *allí cuando él llegó.*

To happen not to be, *no hallarse;* as, "I unfortunately *happened not to be* there when they paid, and thus I lost my money," *por desgracia no* me hallé yo allí *cuando pagáron, y así perdi mi dinero.*

Hard, *duro, sólido, firme, difícil,* &c. When *hard* follows a verb, and stands in the place of an adverb, it is translated in Spanish by that word, which it represents; thus, for instance: to study hard, *(to study eagerly,) estudiar con ahinco;* to drink hard, *(to drink to excess,) beber con esccso.*

Hence it is, *de aquí es, de aquí dimana.*

To hit the nail on the head, *acertar ó dar en el hito.*

To have, or *to be* an instance, *tenerse egemplar;* as, "There never *was an instance* of such a thing here," *jamas se* tuvo *aquí* egemplar de *tal cosa.*

Instant, [when applied to the present month,] *corriente;* as, "on the tenth instant," *el diez del corriente.*

In witness whereof, *y para que conste,* or *en fe de lo*

To look well, sick, &c. applied to persons, is, *tener buen á mal semblante, á cara;* as "How do I look?" *¿que semblante tengo?* "You look sick," *vmd. tiene semblante de efermoo.*

To look handsome, ugly, &c., *parecer.* or *tener apariencia;* as, "How pretty he looks!" *¡que hermoso parece!* or *¡que hermosa apariencia tiene!*

To make over, *ceder. transferir, traspasar.*

To make pay, *llevar;* as, "*They made me pay* eight dollars for last night's supper," *me* lleváron *ocho pesos por la cena de anoche.*

To make a fine show, *hacer gran papel.*

To be the matter with, *tener, afligir;* as, "What *was the matter with* you last night?" qué tenias, or *qué* te afligia *anoche.*

To matter, *importar;* as, "It matters not," *or* "it is no matter," *no importa.*

To miss, *echar ménos;* as, "As soon as I got up, I *missed* my purse," *luego que me levanté,* eché ménos *mi bolsillo.*

Objection, *reparo;* as, "He had no *objection* in giving me letters of recommendation," *no tuvo* reparo *alguno en franquearme cartas de recomendacion.*

To oblige, *agradar. grangearse ó atraerse la voluntad ó benevolencia de otros, agradecer,* or *estimar á uno;* as, "You are very polite, and consequently *oblige* every person," *vmd. es mui urbano, y por consiguiente* se atrae ó se grangea la voluntad de otros. "Sir, you will extremely *oblige me,* by writing to me as soon as you arrive at New York," le agradeceré, or le estimaré *infinitamente, que al instante que llegue á Neuva York me escriba.*

Occasion [when it implies necessity] *necesidad;* as "I shall have *no occasion* to buy these books now, shall I?" *Yo no* tendré necesidad *de comprar estos libros ahora, ¿es verdad?*

Old, [when applied to the age of a person] *edad;* as, "How old are you," *¿que edad tiene vmd.?* and it might also be rendered by *cuantos años tiene vmd.* literally, how many years have you.

Out of, *por* or *de*, in such expressions as these; "He did it out of mercy," *lo hizo de lástima.* "Of friendship," *por amistad.*

To own [when implies acknowledgment] *confesar*, [when implies possession] *ser;* as, "he *owns* it," *el lo* confiesa. "He *owns* it," [i. e. he possesses it] es *de él.*

To part with, *deshacerse de;* as, "*I would not part* with this library for all the world," no me desharia *de esta librería por todo el mundo.*

To pass one's word for another, *empeñer uno su palabra por otro.*

To pay the tribute of nature, *morir.*

To perform one's promise, *cumpler uno con su palabra.*

To play, [when applied to musical instruments] *tocar;* as, "I have been told you *play* very well on the *violin,*" *me han dicho que vmd.* toca el violin *mui bien.*

To play the fool, *hacer el tonto.*

To please, *dar gusto, agradar;* as, "I would do every thing *to please you,*" *todo lo haria para* agradarle.

To please, [when implies request] *servirse;* as, "*Please to* come soon to-night," sirvase *vmd. venir temprano esta noche.*

To put to death, *matar.*

To put up, *aguanter sufrir.*

To rap, or knock at the door, *tocar á la puerta.*

To revenge an affront, *vengarse de una afrenta.*

To right one's self, *tomar la justitia por su mano.*

To stand in need of, *hacer falta á uno;* as, "*I stand in need* of some Spanish books," á mí me hacen falta *algunos libros espanoles.*

To search a house, *registrar una casa.*

To stand security, *salir fiador por otro.*

To sell for cash, or ready money, *vender de contado.*

To sell on credit, *vender al fiado, ó á plazos.*

To sell by auction, *almonedear.*

To settle disputes, *componer pedencias.*

To settle accounts, *ajustar cuentas.*

Short of money, *escaso de dinero.*

To sink a mine, *cavar una mina.*

To sleep soundly, *dormir á pierna suelta.*

To smell of, or like, *oler á;* as, "They all *smelled of* gunpowder," *todos* olian á *polvora.*

To snuff the candle, *despavilar la vela.*

Soon, in such expressions as the following, should be translated *tarder*, to stay long: as, "*How soon* will your father be back, dear Charles? *¿cuanto* tardará *tu padre en volver? querido Cárlos.*

To spare, [when implies omission] *perdonar;* "*He spared* no labour to become learned," no perdoné *fatiga para llegar á ser erúdito.*

To spend, [when applied to time or seasons] *pasar;* as, "how delightful it is to *spend* the summer in the country," *cuán delicioso es,* pasar *el verano en el campo.*

To speak to the purpose, *hablar al caso.*

sorry, *to put you into*, or *to give you any* trouble," *siento* molestarle.

Upon pain, sopena; as, "No person shall desert *upon pain* of death," *nadie desertará* sopena *de muerte.*

To wear out, or to exhaust one's patience, *hacer perder la paciencia.*

To wind up a watch, *dar cuerda á un reloj.*

Witty saying, *chiste.*

To wonder, is not translated in Spanish in such expressions as the following: as, "*I wonder* whether these complaints will ever end?" *si se acabarán jamas estas quejas.* "*I wonder* whether we shall see land to-day," *si veremos tierra hoi?*

To word a letter, *dictar una carta.*

If, in common conversation, the verb is repeated in English in the affirmative, when the sentence is in the negative; and *vice versa*, in the negative, when the sentence is in the affirmative; to render, as it is presumed, the interrogatory more expressive, the words *¿es verdad?* [it is true?] *¿no es verdad?* [is it not true?] are used in Spanish: Example; "You have seen my father; *have you not? Vmd. ha, visto á mi padre* ¿no es verdad? "He will not travel much;—*will he?*" *El no viajará mucho* ¿es verdad! "you would go there, if permitted: wou'dn't you?" *Si se lo permitiesen, Vmd. iria allá* ¿no es verdad?

SYNONYMES.

Aquí Aca.

Acá, means here, or hither, as well as *aqui*, with this difference, that *acá* applies more forcibly *to this place here;* for instance: come here, [the very spot which is marked] *venga vmd. acá;* I live here, [i. e. in this house, mansion, country seat, &c.] *aquí vivo.*

Ahí, Allí, Allá.

Their equivalents in English are, *there, thither*, or *that place*, but they can, by no means, be indiscriminately used. *Alí* always denotes a place near at hand, and generally supposes it close to the person addressed; as, "Examine, O man! thy heart, thou wilt *there* see the motives of thy actions," *ecsamina, hombre, tu corazon*, ahí *veras los motivos de tus acciones* *Allí* and *allá* both denote a remote place, but the latter should always be used for, *to that place*; as, "I shall go *there* (*to that place*) to-morrow," *yo iré alla mañana.* "Do you not see *there*, on that rock, how many men there are," *no ves* allí *or* allá *sobre aquella pena, que de hombres hai.*

Luego que, Despues que.

As both these adverbs may be rendered in English by *after*, it must be observed, that the former circumscribes the time within determined boundaries, and consequently equivalent to *so soon as*; example: "After he arrived, he came to see me," despues que *llegó;* (some time after,) *me vino á ver.* "Luego *que llegó;*" (immediately after,) *me vino á ver.*

Despacio, Poco á Poco.

Both these expressions mean an action which is effected in a slow manner. There is however this difference; *despacio* is applied to the slow operation of the action in itself; *poco á poco*, denotes the slow operation of its progress towards the end. If we say, "*Fuí* poco á poco *ganando terreno*," I went *by degrees* gaining ground. We mean, that, although slowly, we gained some of the ground which was to be gained. If *despacio* be substituted, we then have relation not to the slow progress we made in gaining ground; but our *slowness*, in the act of gaining it.

Adulador, Lisongero.

Flatterer is the English equivalent of these two words. They cannot, however, be indiscriminately used in Spanish. *Adulador* [from *Adulator*] is the person who thinking, that because persons are susceptible of flattery, he must sacrifice truth, justice and opinion to the object of his adulation. The *lisongero* is the person, who, by means of his manner and mode of expression, can give to all his praise the semblance of truth—he persuades with ingenuity; and introduces himself into the good opinion of the person flattered by indirect and insinuating means. Hence it is said. that a wise man must despise the one that uses adulation, or the *adulador*, and fear him who uses flattery, or the *lisongero*. This latter adjective is, therefore, applied to those expectations, anticipations, &c. which, in appearance, are delightful; but, in reality, mere shadows.

"*El presidente le hizo la* honra *de nombrarle cónsul,*" the president did him the *honour* to appoint him consul.

No Obstante, Aunque, Bienque.

These three conjunctions are always employed to exclude an opposition, but their import is not exactly the same: *no obstante*, serve to exclude a positive opposition; *aunque*, one that is contingent; and *bienque*, serves to modify the first idea, diminishing its force. Examples: "the Romans won the battle, *although* their force was much smaller," *los Romanos ganáron la batalla*, no obstante *que sus fuerzas eran mucho mas pequeñas.* "I shall make sail to-morrow, *although* the wind may be contrary," *mañana saldré*, aunque *el viento sea contrario.* "The emperor and the prince are both great generals, *though* the latter is certainly very superior," *el emperador, y el príncipe son grandes generales*, bienque *éste en realidad es mui superior.*

Opinion, Parecer, Dictámen.

Opinion (from *opino*) denotes opinion only as conceived, the others as declared; but *parecer* (from *pareo*) implies such an opinion as is given on the existence or non-existence of a thing, the truth or falsehood of an assertion. *Dictámen* (from *dicto*) tends to influence future conduct. "Every one has his *opinion,*" *cada cual tiene su* opinion. "I am of *opinion* that he will conquer," *soi de* parecer *que vencerá.* "They would not follow his *opinion,*" *no quisiéron seguir su* dictámen.

Pórque, Pues.

When these words are employed to denote cause, motive, or reason, they are synonymous; but *pórque*

expresses a positive inference, and *pues* one that is only probable; as, "He does not know his lesson *because* he has not studied it," *él no sabe la leccion* pórque *no la ha estudiado.* "He shall never learn the English, *because* it is very difficult," *él nunca aprenderá la lengua Inglesa*, pues *es mui dificil.*

Sospecha, Recelo.

Both these words imply suspicion, but *sospecha* may allude either to good or evil, when *recelo* can only allude to evil. The first, therefore, denotes every kind of suspicion, and the second that which is accompanied with a degree of fear only. Their derivatives *sospechar* and *sospechoso*, and *recelar* and *receloso*, are subject to the same distinction; as, "I *fear*, or *suspect* that he will impose upon us;" recelo ó sospecho, *que él nos engañará.* "He raised the stone, *suspecting* that it concealed a treasure," *levantó la losa* sospechando, *que ocultaba un tesoro.*

Veneno, Ponzoña.

Veneno denotes any species of poison, either as simple or compound: *ponzoña* generally implies animal poison, sometimes vegetable poison, but in its natural state only; as, "*El* veneno ó *la* ponzoña *de las víboras,*" the *poison* of vipers. "*Todos los cosméticos son* venenos *preparados,*" all cosmetics are prepared *poisons.* "*Sospechó que habia* veneno *en la bebida,*" (not *ponzoña*) he suspected there was *poison* in his drink.

Voz, Palabra.

Both these terms are rendered in English by *word;* but they can, by no means, be indiscriminately used in Spanish. *Voz*, implies a word considered as uncon-

nected and unuttered, and should, therefore, be adopted when we treat of the structure, the real meaning, or the derivation of words;—*palabra* denotes an uttered word considered as a component part of a sentence, and regards all the circumstances which refer to the pronunciation, the figurative meaning, or the energy of words. "This Dictionary contains many words," *este Díccionario contiene muchas voces.* "I took them at their word," *les cogí la palabra.* "The *word* ENNUI is a French *word*, and a *word* very difficult to pronounce," *la* VOZ ENNUI *es* VOZ *francesa, y* palabra *mui difícil de pronunciar.*

A VOCABULARY

OF THE MOST NECESSARY WORDS.

Of God, &c.

DIOS, God.
Gesu-Cristo, Jesus Christ.
el Espíritu Santo, the Holy Ghost.
el Redentor, the Redeemer.
el criador, the Creator.
una criatura, a creature.
la naturaleza, nature.
un espíritu, a spirit.
un cuerpo, a body.
el cielo, heaven.
el paraiso, paradise.
la gloria, heaven.
un ángel, an angel.
un santo, a saint.
un mártir, a martyr.
un profeta, a prophet.
un evangelista, an evangelist.
un patriarca, a patriarch.

The Elements.

El fuego, the fire.
el aire, the air.
la tierra, the earth.
el agua, the water.
el mar, the sea.

The Months of the Year.

Enero, January.
Febrero, February.
Marzo, March.
Abril, April.
Mayo, May.
Junio, June.
Julio, July.
Agosto, August.
Septiembre, September.
Octubre, October.
Noviembre, November.
Diciembre, December.

Seasons and Holidays.

La primavera, spring.
el verano, the summer.
el otoño, the autumn,
el invierno, the winter.
la canícula. dog-days.
las miesas, the harvest.
las vendimias, vintage.
el esquileo, sheep-shearing-time.
el dia de año nuevo, new-year's day.
carnestoléndas, ó carnaval, carnival.
Miércoles de Ceniza, Ash-Wednesday.
la quaresma, Lent.
la semana santa, holy week.
el Domingo de Ramos, Palm Sunday.
Pascua de Resurreccion, Easter Sunday.
Fiesta de Pentecóstes, Whit-suntide.
el Corpus, Corpus-Christi.
Dia de todos Santos, All-saints day.
el Adviento, Advent,
Navidad, Christmas,
Vigilia, Vigil.
dia de ayuno, fast-day.
dia de viérnes, fish-day.
dia de carne, meat-day.

Individuals and Ages.

Un hombre, a man.
una muger, a woman.
un viejo, an old man.
una vieja, an old woman.
un muchacho, a boy.
un jóven, a young man.
una muchacha, una moza, a young girl.
un niño, una niña, a child.
una doncella, a maid.
un gigante, a giant.
un enano, a dwarf.
la infancia, childhood.
la juventud, youth.
la edad viril, manhood.
la vejez, old age.

The Human Body.

El cuerpo, the body.
los miembros, the members.
la cabeza, the head.
los sesos, the brain.
el pescuezo, the neck.
la cabellera, the queue.
las sienes, the temples.
la frente, the forehead.
las cejas, the eye-brows.
el ojo, the eye.
la niña del ojo, the eye-ball.
los párpados, the eye-lashes.
las orejas, the ears.
la nariz, the nose.
la ventanas de la nariz, the nostrils.
nariz roma, Roman nose.
nariz aguileña, Grecian nose.
la cara, face.
las facciones, the features.
el carillo, o megilla, the cheeks.
la boca, the mouth.
los labios, the lips.
las quijadas, the jaws.
las encías, the gums.
la lengua, the tongue.
el paladar, the palate.
la garganta, the throat.
los dientes, the teeth.
las muelas, the back teeth, grinders.
la barba, the chin.
las barbas, the beard.
las espaldas, the back.
los hombros, the shoulders.
el espinazo, the back bone.
el pecho, the breast.
el estómago, the stomach.
el costado, the side.
las costillas, the ribs.
el corazon, the heart.
el higado, the liver.
los pulmones, the lungs.
la hiel, the gall.
las entrañas, the bowels.
la vegiga, the bladder.
la sangre, the blood.
un hueso, a bone.
las venas, the veins.
los nervios, the nerves.
los brazos, the arms.
el codo, the elbow.
la muñeca, the wrist.
una mano, a hand.
el dedo, the finger.
el dedo pulgar, the thumb.
las caderas, the hips.
los muslos, the thighs.
las rodillas, the knees.
las piernas, the legs.
la pantorilla, the calf.
el pie, the foot.
el tobillo, the ankle.
la planta del pie, the sole of the foot.
el talon, the heel.

los callos, the corns.
las uñas, the nails,
la carne, the flesh.
el pellejo, the skin.
el pelo, the hair.
los bigotes, the mustaches.
la tez, the complexion.
las lágrimas, the tears.

Things belonging to the Body.

El sueño, the sleep.
un sueño, a dream.
la voz, the voice.
la palabra, the speech.
la hermosura, beauty.
la fealdad, ugliness.
la salud, health.
la gordura, fatness.
la flaqueza, thinness.
el semblante, the countenance.
el talle, the shape.
la traza, appearance.
el andar, the walking.

Natural Actions.

La risa, the laughter.
el llanto, grief.
el aliento, breath.
un suspiro, a sigh.
el estornudo, a sneeze.
el hipo, the hiccough.
el ronquido, the snoring.
un gesto, a gesture.
un ademan, an attitude.
una postura, a posture.

The Five Senses.

La vista, the sight.
el oido, the hearing.
olfato, the smelling.
el gusto, the taste.
el tacto, the touch.
el color, the colour.
el sonido, the sound.
el olor, the smell.
el hedor, the stink.
el sabor, the smell.

Defects and Maladies of the Body.

Una berruga, a wart.
una arruga, a wrinkle.
un grano, a pimple.
una córcova, a hump.
pecas, freckles.
una enfermedad, a disease.
un mal, a sickness.
un dolor, a pain
un dolor de muelas, toothache.
un dolor de cabeza, headache.

el dolor, grief.
el disgusto, disgust.
la duda, doubt.
la sospecha, suspicion.
el deseo, desire.
el atrevimiento, boldness.
la arrogancia, arrogance.
la timidez, timidity.
la bondad, goodness.
la envidia, envy.
la confianza, confidence.
la cólera, anger.
el ánimo, spirit.
la piedad, piety.
el valor, valour.
la misericordia, mercy.

Of Wearing Apparel worn by Men.

Un vestido, a suit
una casaca, a coat.
una chupa, a waistcoat.
calzones, breeches.
medias, stockings.
ligas, garters.
zapatos, shoes.
hebillas, buckles.
un pañuelo, a handkerchief.
un sombrero, a hat.
un espadin, a sword.
los guantes, gloves.
un sombrero de tres picos, a cocked hat.
botas, boots.
corbata, cravat.
los vuetos, ruffles.
una faltriquera, a pocket.
una camisa, a shirt.
un reloj, a watch.
una cageta, a snuff-box.
un baston, a cane.
un paragua, an umbrella.
una bolsa, a purse.

Of the Wearing Apparel worn by Women.

El zagalejo, the under petticoat.
unas anaguas, a white upper petticoat.
una saya, a black petticoat.
un guardapiés, a silk petticoat.
un tontillo, a hoop petticoat.
un gorro, a plain cap.
encage, lace.
alfileres, pins.
coginete, a pincushion.
los zarcillos, ear-rings.
los brazaletes, bracelets.
un anillo, a ring.
una sortija, a guard.
un abanico, a fan.
un bonete, a bonnet.
un jubon, a spencer.

una escofia, a dress cap.
pelo postizo, false hair.
la cotilla, the stays.
el cordon, the lace.
el herrete, the tag.
una bata, a gown.
un delantal, an apron.
una mantilla, a shawl.
un capotillo, a mantle.
una palatina, a tippet.
un velo, a veil.
un manguito, a muff.
los chapines, clogs.

Of Mankind in general.

Un hombre, a man.
un viejo, an old man.
una muger, a woman.
un soltero, a bachelor.
una doncella, a maid.
el marido, the husband.
la muger, the wife.
un viudo, a widow.
un huérfano, a male orphan.
un heredero, an heir.
el mayorazgo, an heir at law.
el bisabuelo, the great grandfather.
un bisnieto, a great grandson.
un abuelo. a grandfather.
un nieto, a grandson.
el padre, the father.
la madre, the mother.
un hijo, a son.
un padrasto, a step-father.
un muchacho, a boy.
un mocito, a lad.
un niño, a male child.
un niño de teta, a sucking child.
una madrastra, a step-mother.
un suegro, a father-in-law.
el yerno, the son-in-law.
la nuera, the daughter-in-law.
el cuñado, the brother-in law.
un tio, an uncle.
un sobrino, a nephew.
un hermano, a brother.
un primo, a cousin
primo hermano,first cousin.
padrino, god-father.
madrina, god-mother.
ahijado, god-son.
un pariente, a relation.

Names of Individuals according to their Rank, Profession or Employment.

El papa; the Pope.
un cardenal, a cardinal.
un arzobispo, an archbishop
un obispo, a bishop.
un dean, a dean.
un canonigo, a canon.
un vicario, a vicar.
un cura, a rector.
un teniente de cura, a curate
un emperador, an emperor.
una emperatriz, an empress
un rei, a king.
una reina, a queen.
un príncipe, a prince.
una princesa, a princess.
un conde, an earl.
una condesa, a countess.
un marques, a marquis.
una marquesa, a marchioness.
un lor, a lord.
una señora, a lady.
un caballero, a gentleman.
una dama, a lady.
el corregidor, the mayor.
un juez, a judge.
un alcalde, a justice of the peace.
un abogado, a counsel.
un procurador, a solicitor.
un escribano, a notary.
un médico, a physician,
un cirujaño, a surgeon.
un boticario, an apothecary.
un comerciante, a merchant.
un mercader, a mercer.
un corredor, an exchange broker.
un tendero, a shop-keeper.
un escribiente, a clerk.
un sastre, a tailor.
un zapatero, a shoemaker.
un sombrerero, a hatter.
un carnicero, a butcher.
un panadero, a baker.
un especiero, a grocer.
un cervecero, a brewer.
un carpintero, a carpenter.
un cantero, a mason.
un pastelero, a pastry cook.
un confitero, a confectioner.
un peluquero, a hair-dresser.
un vidriero, a glazier.
un pintor, a painter.
un librero, a bookseller.
un impresor, a printer.
un grabador, an engraver.
un remendon, a cobbler.
un mandadero, a porter.

un Catalan, a Catalan.
un Vizaino. a Biscayan.
un Manchego, a native of la Mancha.
un Malagueño, a native of Malaga.
un Granadino, a native of Granada.
un Asturiano, a native of Asturias.
un Gallego, a native of Gallicia.
un Dinamarquez, a Dane.
un Sueco, a Swede.
un Muscovita, a Muscovite.
un Cartagines, a Carthaginian.
un Arabe, an Arabian.
un Egipcio, an Egyptian.
un Algerino, an Algerine.
un Indio, an Indian.
un Moro, a Moor,
un Ruso, a Russian.
un Navarro, a native of Navarre.
un Arragones, a native of Arragon.
un Criollo, a Creole.
un Montañes, a Mountaineer.
un Serrano, a Highlander.

Of a City and its Parts.

Una ciudad, a city.
una villa, a town.
un lugar, a village.
una aldea, a hamlet.
los arrabales, the suburbs.
una calle, a street.
un callejon, a lane.
una plaza, a square.
el caño, the kennel.
el mercado, the market.
una casa, a house.
la casa de cabildo, the town-house.
una parroquia, a parish.
la casa de comedias, the play-house.
la pescadería, the fish-market.
la carnicería, the flesh market.
la panadería, the bread-market.
el matadero, the slaughter-house.
un edificio, a building.
un palacio, a palace.
el muelle, the wharf.
una tienda, a shop.
una iglesia, a church.
una ayuda de parroquia, a chapel of ease.
el Correo, the Post-office.

una universidad, a university.
un colegio, a college.
una academia, an academy.
un hospital, an hospital.
una casa de locos, a madhouse.
una cárcel, a prison.
un café, a coffee house.
una fonda, a hotel.
un figon, a cook's shop.
una posada, an inn.
la Bolsa, the exchange.
la Aduana, the Custom-house.
el Almirantazgo, the admiralty.
una oficina, an office.
un escritorio, a counting-house.
el teatro, the stage.
los bastidores, the scenes.
el patio, the pit.
un oposento ó palco, a box.
un monasterio, a monastery.
un convento, a convent.
un almacen, a warehouse.
una fábrica, a manufactory.
un taller, a work shop.
una escuela, a boys' school.
escuela de niñas, a girls' school.

Of the House and its Divisions.

El solar, the ground floor.
un alto, a story.
el primer piso, the first floor.
el portal, the porch.
el patio, the court.
las escaleras, the stairs.
un escalon, a step.
una alcova, a bed room.
una anticámara, an antichamber.
un tocador, a dressing-room.
un retrete, a closet.
los corridores, the galleries.
un cuarto, a room.
el comedor, the dining-room.
una sala, a parlor.
la estrada, the drawing-room.
un desvan, the garret.
un tejado, a tiled roof.
una ventana, a window.
un balcon, a balcony.
una puerta, a door.
el aldabon, the knocker.
el umbral, the threshold.

la despensa, the pantry.
la cocina, the kitchen.
una alhacena, the cupboard.
un mirador, an observatory.
la bodega, the cellar.
la caballeriza, the stable.
la cochera, the coach house.
el jardin, the garden.
el parque, the park.

Of Household Furniture.

Una armadura de cama, a bedstead.
las cortinas, the curtains.
la alfombra, the carpet.
un plumon, a feather-bed.
un colchon de lana, a flock-mattress.
un gergon de paja, a straw-mattress.
una almohada, a pillow.
una sábana, a sheet.
una funda de almohada, a pillow-case.
los cobertores, the blankets.
la colcha, the counterpane.
una silla, a chair.
una mesa, a table.
un sillon, an easy chair.
un canape, a sofa.
un estante, a book-case.
un papelera, a bureau.
un escritorio, a writing desk.
el aparador, the sideboard.
un espejo, a mirror.
una araña, chandelier.
un forte piano, a pianoforte.
un guardaropa, a wardrobe.
un gabinete, a cabinet.
un biombo, a screen.
un bahul, a trunk.
una caja, a box.
una gaveta, a bureau drawer.
un cajon, a table drawer.

Of the Table, &c.

La mesa, the table.
el mantel, the table cloth.
una servilleta, a napkin.
un cuchillo, a knife.
un tenedor, a fork.
una cuchara, a spoon.
una garrafa, a decanter.
un jarro, a jug.
un servicio de mesa, a table service.
un servicio de té, a tea-service.

una costrada, a mince-pie.
una torta, fruit-pie,
los póstres, the dessert.
uvas, grapes.
melones, melons.
piñas, pines,
naranjas, oranges.
peras, pears.
manzanas, apples.
melocotones, peaches.
damascos, apricots.
nueces, walnuts.
avellanas, filberts.
almendras, almonds.
pasas, raisins.
manjar blanco, blanc-mange.
jaleas, jellies.
queso, cheese.
manteca, butter.
cerveza, beer.
cerveza floja, table-beer.
agua, water.
un pastel, a meat pie.
una empanada, a fish-pie.
leche, milk.
azúcar de pilon, loaf-sugar.
azúcar terciado, moist sugar.
tostada, toast.
aguardiente, brandy.
ron, rum.
punche, punch.
sangria, negus.
orchata, orgeat.
limonada, lemonade.

THE

MOST NECESSARY AND USEFUL DIALOGUES.

DIALOGO I.	DIALOGUE I.
Para saludar, despedirse, &c.	*To salute, take leave, &c.*
Buenos dias caballeros.	Good morning, gentlemen.
Buenas tardes tenga vmd. señora.	Madam, I wish you a good afternoon.
Buenas noches señor.	Good night, sir.
Criado de vmd.	Your servant.
Servidor de vmd.	I am your servant.
Soi el suyo.	I am yours.
¿Como está vmd.?	How do you do?
Mui bien.	Very well.
Mui dispuesto á servirle.	At your service.
¿Como se lo pasa?	How is it with you?
¿Como va su salud?	How is your health?
Bastante buena ¿y la suya?	Quite well, how are you?
¿Está vmd. bueno?	Are you well?
Mui bien, ¿y como esta vmd?	Very well, how do you do?
¿Como ha estado vmd. desde que tuve el gusto de verle?	How have you been since I had the pleasure of seeing you?
Espero que le veo en perfecta salud.	I hope I see you well.
Espero que hallo á vmd en buena salud.	I hope I find you in good health.
Estoi en perfecta salud	I am perfectly well.
¿Y como está vmd?	And how is it with you?

Pasablamente bien.	Pretty well, I thank you.
A mi ordinario.	As usual.
Lo celebro mucho.	I am glad of it.
Me alegro de verle en buena salud.	I am very happy to see you well.
Le doi mil gracias, or se lo agradezco.	I am obliged to you.
¿Como está su señor hermano?	How does your brother do?
Creo que está bueno.	I believe he is well.
Me alegro mucho de oirlo.	I rejoice to hear it.
¿Adonde está?	Where is he?
Al campo.	In the country.
En la ciudad.	In town.
En casa.	At home.
Ha salido.	He is gone out.
Se alegrará mucho de verle.	He will be glad to see you.
¿Como está su señora?	How is your lady?
Está mui buena.	She is very well.
No está buena.	She is not well.
¿De que se queja?	What ails her?
¿Que mal tiene?	What complaint has she?
Tiene calentura.	She has an ague.
Lo siento muchísimo.	I am sorry for it.
¿Ha mucho que está indispuesta?	How long has she been ill?
Dígale vmd. que siento muchísimo que esté indispuesta.	Tell her I am sorry to hear she is ill.
No faltaré de hacerlo.	I will not fail.
A Dios caballero.	Farewell, sir.

Lo siento mucho.	I am sorry for it.
¿Adonde está su señora hermana?	Where is your sister?
Ha salido, pero volverá luego.	She is gone out; but she will return very soon.
¿Quiere vmd. pasearse en el jardin conmigo?	Will you take a walk in the garden with me?
Con mucho gusto.	With all my heart.
¿Quiere vmd. quedar á comer con nosotros?	Will you stay and take dinner with us?
No puedo.	I cannot stay.
Es menester que me vaya.	I must go.
Vmd. está mui de priesa.	You are in a great hurry.
¿Hágame el favor, porque tanta priesa?	Why are you in such a hurry?
Espero que tendré el gusto de verle en breve.	I hope I shall have the pleasure of seeing you again soon.

DIALOGO III.	DIALOGUE III.
Sobre el estado del tiempo.	*Concerning the state of the weather.*
¿Que tiempo hace?	How is the weather.
Hace buen tiempo.	It is fair weather.
Hace mal tiempo.	It is foul weather.
Hace calor.	It is hot.
Hace mucho frio.	It is very cold.
Ha nevado.	It has snowed.
Hiela.	It freezes.
Deshiela.	It thaws.
Llueve.	It rains.
Llovizna.	It drizzles.
Llovió á cántaros.	The rain pours down in torrents.

It thunders.
It lightens.
The lightning struck the house.
I saw but one flash.
I heard two claps.
There is a sleet falling.
There is a very thick mist.

A fog rises.
The wind is high.
The wind blows hard.
The wind blows cold.
It begins to grow light.
It begins to grow dark.
It is day.
It is night.
The sun rises.
The sun sets.
It is a starlight night.
The moon shines.

DIALOGUE IV.

At rising in the morning.

Who knocks at the door?
Who is there?
Are you in bed still?
Are you asleep?
Are you awake?
I am awake.
Is it time to get up?
Is it eight o'clock?

Abra la puerta.	Open the doór.
Está cerrada con llave.	It is locked.
Aguarde un poco.	Stay a little.
Me acosté mui tarde.	I went to bed very late.
En cuanto á mi, creo que el sueño de la mañana es el mejor de todos.	For my part, I think that the morning sleep is the best of all.
¿Porque no se viste vind?	Why do you not dress yourself?
Diga vmd. á la criada que me traiga una camisa limpia.	Tell the maid to bring me a clean shirt.
Hágame el favor de darme la bata.	Pray give me my morning gown.
Aquí estan sus zapatos.	There are your shoes.
Es menester que me lave las manos.	I must wash my hands.
Deme una bacía.	Give me a basin.
Deme un poco de jabon.	Give me a little soap.
Mis manos estaban mui sucias.	My hands are very dirty.
¿Adónde está mi camisa?	Where is my shirt?
Aquí está	Here it is.
No está limpia	It is not clean.
Esta camisa no está caliente.	This shirt is nót warm.
Deme un pañuelo.	Give me a handkerchief.
Deme el pañuelo que está en la faltriquera de mi casaca.	Give me the handkerchief that is in my coat pocket.

Este caballero que viajó por España quisiera mejor una gícara de chocolate.	The gentleman who travelled through Spain, may be for a cup of chocolate.
Sí señor, si se sirve vmd. mandármela hacer se lo agradeceré.	Yes, sir, if you will be pleased to order it for me, I will be obliged to you.
Muchacho, vete presto, y haz para el caballero una gícara de chocolate de España, que está tenido por el mejor de toda la Europa.	Boy, go quickly, and make the gentleman a cup of the Spanish chocolate, as it is considered the best in Europe.
Que esté bien batido, y con bastante espuma.	Let it be well beaten, and it will froth high.
No te olvides de traer bizcochos, porque los puede preferir al pan.	Do not forget bringing biscuits, as he may prefer them to bread.
Pero ante todas cosas, pon en la mesa la conserva, y una salvilla con vasos grandes llenos de agua de la fuente.	But above all things, put on the table some preserves, and a salver, with tumblers full of spring water.
Ya ha tomado vmd. demasiado trabajo por mí.	Sir, you have taken too much pains on my account.
Señor, ninguno hallo, en servir á vmd. y cuanto mas amenudo me favorezca con sus visitas, tanto mas apreciables me serán.	Sir, I find none in serving you, and the oftener you honour me with your visits, they will be more and more agreeable to me.

Es un efecto del buen corazon de vmd., por lo que le doi sinceras gracias.	It is an effect of your good heart, for which you have my sincere thanks.
Quedo siempre á la dispocion de vmd.	I am always yours.

DIALOGO VI.	DIALOGUE VI.
Comiendo.	*At Dinner.*
La comida está en la mesa.	Dinner is on table.
Caballeros, si vmdes. gustan, vamos al comedor.	Gentlemen, if you please, let us go into the dining-room.
Muchísimo me agrada la propuesta.	The proposal pleases me very much.
Pase vmd. adelante.	Walk in.
Voi á seguirle.	I'll follow you.
No, señor; despues de vmd.	No, sir; after you.
Señores, mientras que vmdes. gastan el tiempo en cumplimientos se enfria la comida.	Gentlemen, whilst you spend the time in compliments, the dinner gets cold.
Señora, hágame vmd. el favor de tomar el primer asiento.	Madam, do me the favour to take the first place.
Señor Don Diego, sírvase vmd. sentarse junto á la señora.	Mr. James, be pleased to take the next seat to the lady.
¿Quien quiere sopa?	Who likes soup?
¿Señora, gusta vmd. que le mande una tajada del salmon?	Madam, will you allow me to send you a slice of salmon?

¿Le gusta á vm. la salsa de camarones ó la de anchovas?	Do you like shrimp sauce or anchovy?
Muchacho. quita la sopa y el pescado.	Boy, take the soup and fish away.
Vamos, señores, echemos un trago juntos.	Come, gentlemen, let us take a glass together.
¿No quiere vmd. tomar un vaso de vino con nosotros?	Won't you take a glass of wine with us?
No, señor, por ahora me contentaré con un vaso de cerveza.	No, sir, I shall content myself with a glass of beer for the present.
Tráenos las garrafas y las copillas, y dale al señor un vaso de cerveza fuerte.	Bring us the decanters and glasses, and give the gentleman a glass of porter.
Mas me gusta la cerveza floja.	I like small beer better.
Señores, á la salud de vmdes.	Gentlemen, your healths.
Buen provecho le haga á vmd.	I thank you, sir.
Danos pan tierno, este pan es duro.	Give us new bread, this bread is stale.
Corta unas rebanadas de pan casero.	Cut some slices of home-made bread.
Señor Don Pedro, ¿quiere vmd. hacerme el favor de trinchar esa gallina?	Mr. Peter, will you do me the favour to carve that fowl?
Vmd. es mejor trinchante que yo.	You are a better carver than I.
Señor, voi á mandarle á vmd. las pechugas.	Madam, I am going to send you the breast.

Voi á cortarle á vm. una tajadita de la lengua de vaca.	I am going to cut you a small slice of the neat's tongue.
No, señor, no mas.	No, sir, no more.
He comido bastante.	I have eaten sufficiently.
Esa señora no ha comido casi nada.	The lady has scarcely eaten any thing.
Perdone vmd. me ha servido de cuanto habia en la mesa.	I beg your pardon; you have helped me to every thing there was on the table.
Espero, señores, que no me dejarán comer solo.	I hope, gentlemen, you won't suffer me to eat alone.
¿Vamos, señor coronel, de qué quiere vm. que le sirva?	Come, colonel, to what shall I help you?
Venga una tajadita del jamon, solo por hacer compañia á vm.	Hand me over a small slice of ham, only to keep you company.
¿Quiere vm. magro ó gordo?	Will you have fat or lean?
Ambos me gustan bien.	I like both very well.
¿Gusta vm. señora, que la sirva del pastel de manzanas, ó del de ciruelas?	Madam, will you permit me to help you to some apple-pie, or to some plum-pie?
¿Le gusta á vm. la costra?	Do you like crust?
Si, señor, pero no me de vmd. mucho zumo.	Yes, sir, but do not give me too much juice.
Basta.	That's enough.
Estimaré me mande vmd. un pedacito de queso.	I'll thank you to send me a small piece of cheese.
Córtese vmd. pan.	Cut yourself some bread.

¡Que! ¿le gusta á vm. el migajon mas que la corteza?	What! do you like crumb better than crust?
No he aliñado la ensalada, para que cada uno la aliña á su gusto.	I have not dressed the salad, that every one may dress it to his taste.
Muchacho, trae las ampolletas que están en el aparador.	Boy bring the cruets which are on the sideboard.
Destapa esa limeta.	Uncork that bottle.
He perdido mi tirabuzon.	I have lost my cork-screw.
Toma el mio.	Take mine.
Esta es cerveza de Escocia y quiero que la prueben vmdes.	This is Scotch beer, and I should like you to taste it.
Le dirémos á vmd. nuestro parecer.	We'll give you our opinion.
Pues, ¿que tal?	Well, what do you think?
Es mui buena, pero fortísima.	It is very good, but very heady.
Muchacho, lava esos vasos.	Boy, rinse those glasses.
Pon el vino en la mesa, y tráenos los postres.	Set the wine on the table, and bring us the dessert.

DIALOGO VII.	DIALOGUE VII.
Tomando el Te.	*On Drinking Tea.*
¿Ha traido el recado para el te?	Have you carried in the tea things?
Todo está en la mesa.	Every thing is on the table.
¿Hierve el agua?	Does the water boil?
El te está pronto.	Tea is quite ready.

Aguardan para vmd.	The company are waiting for you.
Vengo.	I am coming.
Le seguiré.	I will follow you.
No ha puesto una basija sobre la mesa.	You have not put a basin on the table.
No tenemos tazas bastantes.	We have not cups enough.
Nos faltan todavia dos tazas y una salvilla.	We want two more cups and a saucer.
Traiga otra cucharita.	Bring another spoon.
No ha traido las tenacitas.	You have not brought the sugar tongs.
¿Toma vmd. azúcar?	Do you take sugar?
¿Toma vmd. nata?	Do you take cream?
Me hará favor de darme un poco mas de leche.	I will thank you for a little more milk.
El te está demasiado fuerte.	The tea is too strong.
Puedo hacerle mas ligero.	I can put more water in it.
¿Que tomará vmd.?	What will you have?
Aquí hai bollos.	Here are cakes.
Tomaré pan y manteca.	I shall take a slice of bread and butter.
Ma hará el favor de darme un poco de pan y manteca.	I will thank you for some bread and butter.
Su te está mui bueno.	Your tea is very good.
Este es un te escelentísimo.	This is most excellent tea.
¿Adonde le compró vmd.?	Where did you buy it?
Le compré en casa de ——.	I bought it at ——.
Tiene la mejor tienda para te y cafe.	It is the best shop for coffee and tea.
¿Ha acabado vmd. ya?	Have you done already?

Despiérteme mañana temprano.	Call me to-morrow early.
¿Se acordará de despertarme?	Will you remember to awake me?
Sí, le despertaré.	Yes, I will awake you.
No falte.	Do not fail.
Tengo que levantarme al romper del dia.	I must rise by break of day.

DIALOGO IX.	DIALOGUE IX.
Al hablar á un sastre.	*On speaking to a Taylor.*
Señor maestro, quiero hacerme un vestido negro.	Sir, I want to get a suit of black made.
¿De que le quiere vmd.	What will you have it made of?
La casaca de paño de Francia, la chupa de seda, y los calzones de casimiro.	The coat of French cloth, the waistcoat of silk, and the breeches of kerseymere.
Aquí tiene vmd. muestras.	Here are some patterns.
¿Cuantas varas necesito para casaca y chupa?	How many yards do I want for the coat and waistcoat?
Dos varas y media para la casaca, y vara y media para la chupa.	Two yards and a half for the coat, and a yard and a half for the waistcoat.
¿De qué se ha de aforrar la casaca?	What will you have the coat lined with?
De lo mismo.	With the same.
Hágame vmd. un vestido que me venga bien.	Make me a suit to fit well.
Quedará vmd. contento.	I shall give you satisfaction.

¿Cuando me traerá vmd. el vestido?	When will you bring me my suit.
Señor, cuanto ántes.	As soon as possible, sir.
¿Quiere vmd. probarse el vestido?	Will you be pleased to try on your suit?
Ese vestido le cae á vmd. bien.	That suit becomes you well.
Me gusta mucho este vestido.	I like this suit very well.
Hágame vmd. una casaca de paño azul con botones dorados; un par de pantalones del mismo color; y tres pares de calzones de marinero de mahon.	Make me a blue cloth coat, with gilt buttons; a pair of pantaloons of the same colour; and three pair of nankeen trowsers.

DIALOGO X.	DIALOGUE X.
Al hablar á un zapatero.	*On speaking to a shoemaker.*
Hágame vmd. un par de zapatos.	Make me a pair of shoes.
¿Para cuando los quiere vmd.?	When do you want them.
Para el domingo sin falta.	On Sunday without fail.
Los últimos no valian nada.	The last were good for nothing.
No me duráron quince dias.	They did not last a fortnight.
Este zapato me lastima.	This shoe hurts me.
Vmd. no ha entrado el pié todavia.	Your foot is not quite in yet.

No me viene bien este zapato.	This shoe does not fit me.
Está mui ajustado.	It fits too close.
Me aprieta un poco en el empeine.	It presses on my instep.
Se ensanchará á pocos dias.	It will widen in a few days.
Bien, hágame vmd. otro par como éste, y un par de botas, y tráigame las botas luego que esten acabadas.	Well, make me another pair like this, and a pair of boots, and bring me the boots as soon as they are finished.
Las traeré á vmd. la semana que viene.	I'll bring them to you next week.

CARTAS DE COMERCIO.

CARTA I.

Propuesta para una Correspondencia.

Señor Don José Malba.
Havana.

Baltimore, 29 *de Mayo*, de 1822.

Mui señor mio; deseando establecer en esa ciudad una correspondencia segura con un sugeto de probidad para las varias comisiones, y encargos que puedan ocurrirme en los asuntos de mi comercio; informado de las circunstancias, y calidades que concurren en V.; me tomo la libertad de suplicarle se sirva aceptar el encargo de corresponsal mio, y de avisarme de su resolucion para mi gobierno.

El buen nombre que la persona, y casa de vmd. tienen en esta, me inducen igualmente á ofrecerle mis servicios para cuanto fuere de su agrado; y ya sea que acepte V, ó no, mi proposicion, apreciaré mucho se digne honrarme con sus preceptos.

Dios guarde la vida de vmd. los muchos años que le desea su atento servidor, Q. S. M. B. *

FRANCISCO SAURIN.

* These letters are contractions of *que sus manos besa*, who kisses your hands.

COMMERCIAL LETTERS.

LETTER I.

A proposal for a Correspondence.

Baltimore, May 29th, 1822.

SIR,

Desiring to establish a regular correspondence with a respectable commercial house in your city, for the various commissions and dealings which may occur in my business, and being informed of your respectable standing as a merchant, I take the liberty to request you to accept the offer of being my correspondent, and also to inform me of your determination thereon for my government.

Your respectable character, and the good credit of your house in this place, induce me, likewise, to offer you my services in transacting any affairs in which your interests may be promoted; and whether the proffers of my correspondence meet with your approbation or not, I shall nevertheless be very happy if you honour me with your commands.

I am, with very high regard, and consideration,

Sir, your most obedient servant,

FRANCIS SAURIN.

CARTA II.

Repuesta.

Señor Don Francisco Saurin,

Baltimore.

Havana, 14 de Junio, de 1822.

Mui Señor moi; el honor de ser corresponsal de una persona del crédito de vmd. no puede dejar de aceptarse con la mayor satisfaccion. Yo desde luego le admito, dándole las gracias por esta prueba de la confianza con que me distingue, y ofreciendo servirle con la puntualidad, y eficacia que vmd. me merece.

Espero manifestar á vmd. la sinceridad de mis sentimientos luego que se sirva emplearme, segun propone; y me aprovecharé igualmente de sus ofertas, á que estoi mui reconocido.

Dios guarde á vmd. ms.* as. como lo pide su mui afecto atento servidor. Q. S. M. B

JOSÉ MALBA.

CARTA III.

Sobre un Embarco.

Señor Don C. D.

Havana, Agosto 18, de 1820.

Mui Señor moi; en esta fecha, y con arreglo á las órdenes de vmd., he embarcado por su cuenta, y riesgo á bordo de la fragata el Aguila, capitan Juan Quick, con destino á Filadelfia; á la órden y conocimiento de Don D. P. los efectos que constan de la factura, y conocimiento que incluyo en ésta.

See abbreviations, page 49.

Espero que serán del gusto de vmd. así por su calidad como por su precio, y que llegarán bien acondicionados, pues se han enfardado con mucho esmero.

Celebrare la buena salud y prosperidad de vmd. pues soi su mui afecto y. *s. s. s.* *

Q. S. M. B. A. B.

FACTURA.

Factura de los efectos, que por cuenta, y riesgo de Don *C. D.* y con la marca, y número del márgen, tengo embarcados á bordo de la fragata mercantil Aguila, su Capitan Jaime Quick, con destino á Filadelfia, para entregar á la orden de Don *D. P.* A saber,

		p.	*r.*
P. D.	No. 1, 20 piezas de cotonina, á 4 pesos	80	
Q.	No. 2, 110 docenas de guantes, á 6 p.	660	
No. 1, á 3.	No. 3, 80 sombreros, á 3 p.	240	
		980	
	Derechos y gastos, ...	18	4
	Comision á 2 por ciento, ...	19	7
Havana, 18 de Agosto, de 1820.	Pesos	1018	3

CONOCIMIENTO.

Yo Jaime Quick, Maestre que soi del buen navio (que Dios salve,) nombrado el Aguila, que al presente está surto y anclado en el puerto de la Havana, para con la buena ventura seguir este presente viage al puerto de Filadelfia, conozco haber recibido, y tener cargado, dentro del dicho mi navio debajo de cubierta, de vos Dn. A. B. tres cajas de varios efecto: todo enjuto y bien acon-

* These three S, are contractions of *su seguro servidor*, your assured servant.

I hope that the quality and price of these effects will meet with your approbation, and that they will arrive in good order, having been very carefully packed up.

I am, with the greatest esteem, sir,

Yours, &c. A. B.

INVOICE.

Invoice of sundries, marked and numbered as per margin, shipped on board the Eagle, J. Quick, master, bound to Philadelphia, to be delivered to Mr. D. P. or order, for account and risk of C. C. To say,

		Dolls.	Cts.
P. D. Q. No. 1, to 3.	No. 1, 20 pieces of dimity, at $4.	80	00
	No. 2, 110 dozen gloves, at $6.	660	00
	No. 3, 80 hats, at $3.	240	00
		980	00
	Duties and charges,	18	50
	Commission at 2 per cent.	19	97

Havana, August 18, 1820.

BILL OF LADING.

SHIPPED in good order, and well conditioned, by A. B. in, and upon, the ship called the Eagle, whereof is master, for this present voyage, James Quick, now in the harbour of Havana, and bound for Philadelphia, to say:

P. D. Q. No. 1, to 3.

3 Boxes of sundries,

being marked and numbered as in the margin, and are to be delivered, in like good order, and well-condition-

dicionado y marcado con la marca del márgen, con lo cual prometo, y me obligo, llevándome Dios en buen salvamento con el dicho mi navío, al espresado puerto, de acudir y entregar por vos y en vuestro nombre; dichos géneros igualmente enjutos y bien ocondicionades (salvo los peligros de mar) á D. P. ó á quien por él allí fuere parte; pagándome de flete á razon de con —— capa y avería. Y en fe de que así me obligo cumplir os doi tres conocimientos de un tenor, firmados de mi nombre por mí ó por mi escribano; el uno cumplido, los otros no valgan. En la Havana, á 18 de Agosto de 1820.

LETRA DE CAMBIO.

Nueva York, á 28 de Diciembre, de 1824.

A ocho dias vista se servirán vmds. mandar pagar por esta mi primera de cambio (no habiéndo hecho por la segunda, ni tercera) y á la órden de Don M. R. la cantidad de —— valor recibido de dicho Señor, que anotarán vmds. en cuenta, segun aviso de s. s. s. q. s. M. B.

J. C.

Primera

A los Señores E. y V. en la Havana.

El Endoso.

Páguese á la órden de Don A. B. Nueva York, &c.

M. R.

VERSIFICATION.

It was our intention, at first, to have presented this part of Prosody in English, as in the first edition of this grammar. The following considerations however, have induced us to present it in Spanish.

1st. That after the student has gone through the grammar, we think he will have made a sufficient progress to understand any grammatical rule, although it be laid down in Spanish.

2d. That it is very seldom persons will attend to versification before they are tolerably well versed in this language. For these individuals, the rules written in Spanish will unquestionably, be preferable.

3d. That whether the rules be in English or Spanish, the examples elucidating them must absolutely be in this latter language; it being impossible to give any adequate translation.

4th That when the peculiarities of an idiom are to be explained, if they must not be placed in contradistinction with the rules of another, it is always better that they should be written in the language which they are intended to elucidate.

We conceive these reasons to be sufficient to sanction our change. Indeed, as our anxiety has been, throughout this grammar, to promote the advancement of the student, it could scarcely be supposed, we would give place to any arrangement, which, in our opinion, did not tend to this great object. As our zeal, however might carry us so far as to mislead us, we have thought it proper to explain the motives which have induced us to make so remarkable an alteration.

De la Versificacion ó arte métrica.

Versificacion es el conjunto de un número determinado de sílabas, arregladas segun ciertas leyes.

Rima es la correspondencia que tienen los sonidos finales de unos versos con los de otros.

Hablando del acento en página 448 se dijo que todo monosílabo tiene acento, esto es, que todo monosílabo tiene vocal *larga*. Así

es, pero en la versificacion, tendrán esta vocal *larga ó enfática*, segun la naturaleza de la línea en que se hallen. Hai algunas que están mas dispuestas á ser enfáticas que otras, y al contrario; y otras, que si se quiere, se pueden ó no hacer enfáticas.

Ademas del acento prosaico de que se ha hablado tratando del *acento;* se usa muchas veces de otro, que se llama poético, á fin de guardar la medida; particularmente en los polisílabos. Pronunciandado la voz *desgraciádamente*, que tiene su acento verdadero en la cuarta sílaba, estamos obligados á dar un poco de fuerza á la primera y quinta, y se producen tres troqueos. El acento prosaico en todo ritmo, está obligado muchas veces á ceder al poético: pronunciando velozmente sílabas enfáticas; y con fuerza, otras que son breves. Aunque los versos españoles, esten regulados por lo general por el énfasis ó sílabas enfáticas, contribuye mui esencialmente un cierto balance de cantidad. En t dos los versos solemnes ó graves, se verá que sobrepasan las sílabas largas á las cortas; y que, al contrario, en los versos donde el movimiento es veloz y vivo, se hallará que las sílabas cortas, son las que prevalecen.

Tenemos en el idioma castellano dos especies de versos; los que se forman ó dividen segun pies; y los que segun su ritmo particular.

De la division de versos segun sus piés.

Todos los pies en la poesía consisten de dos ó tres sílabas; y se pueden reducir á muchas clases; pero se puede decir que los usados en nuestro idioma son los tres siguientes:—

Troqueo, Yambo, Anapesto.

El *Troqueo* consiste de dos sílabas; la primera larga ó enfática, y la segunda breve; como, *té-mo; mé-nos; Pé-dro.*

El *Yambo* tiene tambien dos sílabas; la una breve; y la otra enfática; como, *te-mór; fe-líz; ser-víl.*

El *Anapesto* se compone de tres sílabas; las dos primeras breves, y la última enfática.

Las sílabas que no son enfáticas se demostrarán por esta señal (⏑), y las que lo son, por esta (–).

La medida *trocaica* mas corta que se halla en nuestro idioma,

consiste de un *troqueo* y medio pié con rima doble ó de dos sílabas: v. g.

Clārŏs | rī os.
Cēlŏs | frī os.

En la medida trocaica se introduce algunas veces un yambo:

Nī mĕ | dēja el | llān to
Dĕ cīr | cōmŏ | quē do.

Jamas escede â cinco piés la medida trocaica y rara vez se compone de tantos; el siguiente es un egemplo de tres piés con rima doble ó de dos sílabas:—

Hōmbre | quē sĭn | āscŏ | sō rba.

La medida yámbica mas corta que se halla en nuestro idioma consiste de un yambo hipermétrico, ó con rima de dos sílabas:

Sĕ muē | ve,
Lă nā | ve,
Mĭs lē | ve,
Que ŭn ā | ve.

Se escriben con medida yámbica los versos ecsámetros ó heroicos, consistiendo de cinco piés; y, siendo de rima doble ó de dos sílabas, consisten de once silabas, por lo cual se llaman tambien *endecasílabos:*

Pĭs tō | rĕs quē | dŏr mīs | ĕn lā | mă jā da.

Se introduce muchas veces un troqueo en el primer verso de la medida yámbica; y hai poetas que le introducen en otros parages de la línea.

Grāvĕs | mĭ rā | dăs ȳ | mĭ rār | sŭā ves.
Y cuān | to ĕl mār | ĕl aī | re ĕl suē | lo ĕnciĕr ra.
Sĭ mē | quiē rĕs | ŏ frēz | co ă tū | bĕllē za.

Los *Anapestos* se hacen de varias dimensiones, pero nunca esceden á cuatro piés. So omite por lo regular la primera sílaba del primer pié.

Lŏs ā | nĭmŏs ār | dĕn ĕn Diōs | ăbrăsā dos.

Del ritmo ó rima.

Los versos se dividen en *parejas;* ó versos cuyos ritmos estan eguidos; esto es, el primero, rimando con el segundo; el terce-

letras en ámbas líneas, desde la vocal en que carga el acento hasta el fin; v. g.

"Pues defended el reino rostros *béllos*
"Que yo pondré la planta en vuestros *cuéllos*."

La rima *asonante* solo requiere una similaridad de vocales, pero no de consonantes; y así es que *ligéro* puede formar asonancia con *cubiérto; amáres* con *nóches; melónes* con *azótes*, &c. v. g.

"Sordo á las voces, con que el hombre in*ténta*
"Detenerle en su curso, al tiempo *cáno*
"Ni el vuelo acorta, ni el semblante vu*élve*,
"Ni presta oidos á sus ruegos bl*ándos*."

Sin contravenir á las reglas de la poética, la mismo voz se puede usar al fin de las dos lineas rimantes; con tal que se usen en sentido diferente. De este modo *sagrado* puede rimar con *sagrado*, si uno de estos dos vocablos significa *cosa sagrada;* y el otro *asilo*, *albergue*, &c.

Muchas veces se escriben versos de medida latina; y en este caso, los versos tienen sus nombres diferentes segun el número de piés de que consisten. Así es que se llaman *sáficos adónicos* los versos cuyo metro consiste de cinco piés, de los cuales, el tercer siempre debe ser dáctilo, y los otros son yámbicos. A cada tres versos sáficos hai un adónico, que consta de un pie dáctilo y otro espóndeo. Hai otros de otras medidas que no se ponen aquí, porque apènas jamas se usan. Los siguientes son sáficos adónicos de Lope de Vega.

"Amor poderoso en el cielo y ti*érra*,*
"Dulcísima gu*erra** de aquestos sen*tidos*,
"¡O cuantos perdid*os* con vida inqui*eta*,
"Tu imperio su*geta!*

* Hai algunas composiciones poéticas, en las cuales, como se ve arriba, la última voz de un verso, hace consonancia con la segunda del siguiente. Estos versos no son mui frecuentes; pues se escriben mas para hacer ver la facilidad con que el poeta puede rimar, que yo pórque sean mas harmoniosos; ó mas conformes á las reglas de la versificacion castellana.

"Con vanos deleites y locos em*pleos*,
"Ardientes de*seos* y helados temo*res*,
"Alegres do*lores* y dulces eng*años*
"Usurpas los *años*."

De la division de verso segun su rima.

Los versos españoles se dividen en tres especies *Agudos*, *Llanos*, y *Esdrújulos*.

Los versos *Agudos* ó bien sean de una sola rima, tienen el acento sobre la última sílaba; como,

"Mas aunque muera por *tí*
"No te lo daré á entendér;
"Por que no me quiero *vér*
"Como te viste por *mí*."

Los versos *Llanos* son aquellos sobre cuya penúltima sílaba carga la pronunciacion; ó bien sean versos de rima doble; como,

"O musa celestial! tú, que asis*tíste*
"A el alarde glorioso, y las hilé*ras*
"De los fulgentes querubines *víste*
"Tendidas ya las ínclitas bandé*ras*;
"Los nombres dime, que en el cielo *oíste*,
"De tanto campeon, que en durade*ras*
"Láminas, guarda el libro de la *vída*:
"Honra á sus altos triumfos bien de*bída*."

Los versos *Esdrújulos* son los que tienen la antepenúltima sílaba acentuada; ó bien sean versos de rima triple; v. g.

"Silvano mio, una aficion ra*rísima*,
"Una beldad que ciega luego en vi*éndola*,
"Un seso y discrecion escelen*tísima*;
"Con un dulce habla que en oyé*ndola*,
"Las duras peñas mueve enternecié*ndolas*:—
"¿Qué sentiria un amador perdié*ndola*?"

Hai ademas de estas tres especies de versos, dos mas; que son: *versos de pié québrado*; y *versos sueltos*.

Los versos *de pié quebrado* se usan generalmente en las composiciones dramáticas, que son inumerables en nuestro idioma. Estos consisten por lo regular de cuatro piés yámbicos y pueden

formarse de mĕnos tambien si se quiere; el siguiente egemplo consiste de cuatro piĕs. Tambien se cuentan todos estos versos por sílabas como se verá despues.

Pŭĕs | si ă mār | gă lā | vĕrdād,
Quĭĕ | ro ĕchār | lă dē | lă bōca,
Y | si ăl āl | mă sū | hiĕl tō | ca,
Es | cŏndēr | la ĕs nē | cĕ dād.

Los versos *sueltos* son aquellos que solamente tienen un cierto *ritmo*, pero, las voces finales de unas líneas no hacen *asonancia*, ni *consonancia* con las de otras; al contrario, se evita cuanto sea posible la menor correspondencia, que en cuanto á sonido, pueda ecsister. Es preciso advertir, que entre los poètas españoles, no se tiene mucho cuidado en la rima de unas palabras con otras; y así es que hai muchos pedazos de poesía llamada *asonante*, que en todo rigor pertenece á la *suelta*. Sin embargo, esto no depende ni de la falta de habilidad del poeta; ni de su descuido solo de la lengua. Es esta tan rica y magestuosa, que habiendo correspondencia de metro, no necesita los ornamentos adventicios de la rima para darle brillantez y realce. Mas se asemeja nuestro idioma, en cuanto á eso á los idiomas antiguos griego y latino, que ningun otro ecsistente. No podrémos pues llamar versos *sueltos* los que solo no hacen *asonancia* con otros, sino que será preciso no haber la menor dependencia ó conecsion de sonido; Egemplo:

"Canta con voz suave y dolorosa,
"O musa, los amores lastimeros,
"Que en suave dolor fuĕron criados.
"Canta tambien la triste mar en medio
"Ya Festo de una parte, y de otra Abyde
"Y amor acá y allá yendo, y viniendo,
"Y aquella diligente lumbrecilla
"Testigo fiel, y dulce mensagera,
"De dos fieles y dulces amadores.
"O mereciente luz de ser estrella,
"Luciente y principal en las estrellas,
"Que fuĕron desde acá al cielo enviadas,
"Y alcanzáron allá notables nombres
"Pero comienza ya de cantar, Musa,

Así los versos [illegible]
sueltos pueden [illegible]
ciso observar [illegible]
sílabas que [illegible]
las varias [illegible]
[illegible]
una sílaba [illegible]
y los [illegible]

Los versos [illegible]
mas [illegible]

"Sal | [illegible]
"El | [illegible]
"Con | [illegible]
"El | [illegible]

Los que [illegible]

"Los | [illegible]
"Sa | [illegible]
"Ta | [illegible]
"T | [illegible]

Hai tambien [illegible]
particular, v. g.

"S | [illegible]
"E | [illegible]
"Ser | [illegible]
"S | [illegible]

Los versos [illegible]
mayor; v. g.

"A | [illegible]
"S | [illegible]
"Que | [illegible]
"Le | [illegible]

Se hallan tambien versos de siete sílabas, sin darseles otro nombre particular; v. g.

"¿Quién | es | a | quel | que | ba | ja
"Por | a | que | lla | co | li | na,
"Su | bo | te | lla en | la | ma | no,
"En | el | ros | tro | la | ri | sa?"

A los versos de seis sílabas se les da el nombre de *redondilla menor;* como,

"Fres | cos | ai | re | ci | llos,
"Que á | la | pri | ma | ve | ra,
"Des | te | geis | guir | nal | das
"Y es | par | ceis | vio | le | tas;
"Ya | que os | han | te | ni | do
"Del | sa | co en | las | ve | gas," &c.

Se encuentran tambien versos de *cinco, cuatro, tres* y *dos* sílabas de los cuales se pondrá un egemplo á continuacion;

Cinco sílabas.

"O | qué | de | ma | les
"Ven | los | mor | ta | les,
"Si | hu | ye | la | paz:
"To | do es | te | mo | res
"I | ras | ren | co | res
"Si | hu | ye | la | paz."

Cuatro sílabas.

"Yo | soi | vi | va
"Soi | ac | ti | va;
"Me | me | né | o,
"Me | pa | sé | o
"Yo | tra | ba | jo
"Su | bo y | ba | jo."

Tres sílabas.

"Dineros son calidad,
"Ver | dad:
"Mas ama quien mas suspira
"MEN | TI | RA."

Dos sílabas.

"Ingrata, hermosa Antandra,
"En cuyas centellas
"*Be | llas*
"El alma es salamandra."

Hai versos de *catorce* sílabas y versos de *doce*, ó de *arte mayor;* y estos no son mas que la reunion de versos de *siete* y *seis sílabas:*

"Yo | leí | no | sé | don | de, | que en | la | len | gua | her | bo la | ria, |

"Sa | lu | dan | do á un | to | mi | llo | la | yer | ba | pa | rie | ta | ria,
"Con | so | cor | ro | ne | ri | a | le | di | jo | de es | ta | suer | te."

"¿No | he | mos | de | reir | nos | siem | pre | que | cho | che | a
"Con | an | ci | a | nas | fra | ses | un | no | vel | au | tor?"

Se debe advertir que los versos de *catorce*, *de diez*, y de *nueve* no son de uso mui frecuente.

Los versos de *ocho*, *seis*, *cinco*, *cuatro*, *tres* y *dos* sílabas se conocen bajo la denominacion de versos de redondilla; y los de *once* y *siete* por la de versos italianos.

Llámanse versos *enteros* los que se componen de *once*, *ocho* y *seis* sílabas, en contradistincion de los compuestos de *siete*, *cinco*, *cuatro*, *tres*, y *dos* que se llaman *quebrados*, ó de *pié quebrado*. De estos últimos ya se habló.

Se han dado aquí los varios modos de formar versos en nuestra lengua de una manera mui compendiosa por ecsigirlo así los límites del libro. No se han escrito como en un tratado cuya intencion es la de enseñar completamente el mecanismo de nuestra versificacion, sino para dar de ella una idea clara y concisa, que es todo lo que se requiere para saber leerla con precision, rectitud, energía y efecto. A continuacion se pondrá el modo de *escandir;* esto es, averiguar el número de *sílabas* ó *piés* de que consta el verso.

La mayor dificultad que occurre en *escandir* nuestra poética, es saber, cuando en las voces que contienen una combinacion de dos vocales, si éstas se deben suponer dos sílabas separadas ó una sola. Sin embargo esto se puede aprender facilmente con atender con cuidado á las observaciones siguientes:—

Cuando el acento prosaico no cae sobre ninguna vocal, se consideran las dos como á diptongo; v. g.

Por piés anapestos Dĭchō | sŏs vŏsō | trŏs ă quiēn | lŏs *cuĭdā* | dos.

Por sílabas Di | cho | sos | vo | so | tros | á | quien | los | *cui* | da | dos.

Si el acento prosaico cae sobre la segunda de las dos vocales, cuenta por lo regular como á diptongo; pero, si sobre la primera, como á dos sílabas; v. g.

Por piés anapestos Lŏs ā | nĭmŏs ār | dĕn ĕn *Dios* | ābrā sā | dos.
Por sílabas Ma | *ri* | *a* | vír | gen | be | lla | Ma | dre | es | po | sa.

Si la primera de dos vocales es *a* ó *e* se cuentan por lo regular como á sílabas separadas sin hacer atencion al acento; v. g.

Por piés anapestos Que ĕn vī | do ŏs quĕmā | *ĭs* ĕn fuē | go ă mŏ | rō | so.
Por sílabas Que en | vi | da | os | que | *ma* | *is* | en | fue | go | a | mo | ro | so.

Si una voz termina en vocal, y la siguiente comienza con vocal, la terminante nunca se cuente:

Por piés trocaicos Entrŏ | cón ē | LLA ăquēl | quĕ tān | tŏs dā | ños.
Por sílaba En | tró | con | e | LLA a | quel | que | tan | tos | da | ños.

Si la pronunciacion cargare sobre la vocal terminante; entónces por lo regular se cuenta como silaba separada:

Por piés trocaicos ENTRŌ | ĕn ūn | järdīn | hĕrī | dŏ dē | ă mōr |
Por sílabas En | TRÓ | en | un | jar | din | he | ri | do | de | a | mor.

Cuando una voz termina en una vocal y la que sigue comienza en *h* la elision se quede ó no hacer:

Por piés trocaicos Nĭ āl | tĕrrōr | DE HŎRRĒN | dă guē | rra.
Por sílabas Su a | mor | pues | no | SE | HA | ha | bla | do.

Siempre que la vocal terminante, preceda á una *y* usada como consonante, se cuenta por sílaba separada:

Piés anapestos Do ĕstān | dŏ lŏs cuēr | pŏs căī | dŏs ĕ yēr | tos.
Por sílabas Do es | tan | do los | cuer | pos | ca | i | dos | é | yer | tos.

Estas reglas serán suficientes para poder escandir cualquier pedazo de poesía, así por piés como por sílabas. Se verá que muchas veces una línea tiene una sílaba de ménos, la cual se añade al principio del verso siguiente. Tambien que al fin de una línea hai un medio pié mas ó menos el cual se quita ó añade al principio de la otra.

Page.
Position of adjectives with regard to the noun which they qualify, ... 232
Adjectives which preceding the substantive lose their termination, ... 236
Adjectives requiring certain prepositions, . . 255—258
Peculiarities of the adjectives *alguno*, *ninguno*, *tercero*, 239
ADMIRATION, how used in Spanish, ... 46
ADVERB, the nature of it, ... 179
ADVERBS, of place, time, manner, quantity, comparison, order, affirmation, negation, and doubt, . 179—182
How adverbs in *mente* are generally formed, . 410
Place of the adverb in a sentence, notes 1, 2, 3 . ib.
ADVERBIAL phrases, ... 183
Si, and *no*, require sometimes *que*, note 4, . . 411
Two negative adverbs are, in Spanish, used to strengthen the negation, ... ib.
Adverbs requiring *de*, or *á*, ... 182–183
Jamas, *Nunca*, *No*, and *Mui*, ... 411
AFTER, a preposition, its various meanings explained, . 185
AGREEMENT, or concord and goverment explained, . 191
ALPHABET, with the English pronunciation, . . 25
ALPHABETIC* list of all the irregular verbs, . . 156–164
ANAPESTO, ... 515
ANCIENT terminations of Spanish verbs, placed in contradistinction with the modern, ... 175--178
APPENDIX, See *Words*, *Commercial Documents*, *Dialogues*, &c. 455
APPOSITION, which are the nouns used in apposition, . 211
ARRANGEMENT, the Syntax of this grammar has been arranged differently from that of the second edition, preface, ... 7
ARTICLE, its nature, ... 67
Use and nature of the neuter article *Lo*, . . 70, 216
Use and translation of the English article *a*, . 218
The Spanish indefinite article agrees in gender, number and case, ... 193

* As this list is arranged in an alphabetical manner, in which *any* of the irregular verbs may be found in a glance, the necessity of including them in this index, is entirely superseded

Page.
When the article is used, rules 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 193—205
When the article is omitted, . . . 206—213
Use of *some* or *any*, *notes* 2 and 3, ... 207
AS, a conjunction, its various meanings explained, . 415
When *as*, preceded by *so*, requires a different translation in Spanish, *note* 1, ... 244
AT, its various meanings, ... 185
AUGMENTATIVE, and diminutive nouns, . . . 57
AUXILIARY verbs, their nature and use, . 85, 372, 379
Their conjugation. . . . . 85—100

B.

B, a consonant, its sound, ... 26
BEFORE, BY, their various meanings explained . . 185
TO BE thirsty, hungry, and how translated, . . . 372
BLANK verse, ... 520
BOTH, its peculiarities explained, ... 416
BUT, a conjunction, ... 414
How *but* is translated in its various significations, ib.

C.

C, a consonant, its sound, ... 27
CASE, the nature of it, ... 65
Reasons supporting that in Spanish there are but two cases—note*, ... 65—68
The pronouns have two objective cases, . . 77—80
Use of these two objective cases, . . 266—277
Position of the two objective cases, . . 266—270
The author has assigned but two cases to the Spanish language, ... 65—68
CARDINAL numbers, ... 72—73
COMMERCIAL documents, ... 508
COMPARISON, nature of it, ... 71
words used in Spanish to denote comparison, . 244
So much as much, *so many*, how translated—note 1, ib.
When *mas* precedes *de* when *que*,—note 2, and ‡, ib.
Irregular comparatives, ... 245

Page.
Manner of rendering the indefinite article *the* when it denotes comparison, ... 248
Gual used sometimes to compare—note 4, . . ib.
Cuanto and *Tanto*, how translated—note, rule 18, ib.
Spanish comparatives are sometimes used for English superlatives—rule 20, ... 253
How the English superlatives are rendered in Spanish, rule 19, ... 250
How Spanish superlatives are formed—note 1, . ib.
Various peculiarities of superlatives, . . . 251
Irregular superlatives, ... ib.
COLLECTIVE nouns, the nature and use of them, . 57, 370
COLLOQUIAL idioms, ... 455
CONCORD, *the same as agreement*, ... 191
CONJUGATION, the manner in which the conjugation of regular Spanish verbs is formed, . . 101--108
Conjugation of regular verbs, ... 109—116
Conjugation of passive or reflective verbs, . 117—122
CONJUNCTIONS, their definition, ... 188
Their division, ... ib.
Their peculiar use and construction, . . 414, 416
What conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood, *note* 4, ... 392
The copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, operate differently on the verb, ... 367 -368
CONSONANTS, the sound of them, ... 26--30
CUAL, a relative pronoun, ... 79, 294, 295
CUYO, see *pronoun*, a relative pronoun, . . 79, 294, 295

CH.

CH, a consonant, its sound, ... 28

D.

D, a consonant, its pronunciation, very peculiar, *note* †, 26
Various notions entertained respecting its sound when it terminates a word, ... ib.

Page.

ETYMOLOGY, the nature of it, ... 55
See the Etymology of the article, page 67, of the noun 56, of the adjective 69, of the pronoun 75, of the verb 81, of the adverb 179, of the preposition 184, of the conjunction 188, of the interjection, ... 190
EXCEPTIONS, to the gender of nouns, . . . 60—64
To the rule of the prosodical accent, . 449—452
EXCLAMATION, *same as admiration*, ... 46
EXERCISES, of great importance, and preferable to any other mode of learning *any* language, see Preface.
Exercises, some attached to every rule, *note*, and *observation*, which see.
Recapitulatory exercises in the article, . 214—215
——————— in the adjective and noun, 241—244
——————— in the pronouns, . 321—324
——————— in the tenses, verbs, 360—365
EXTRACTS, used for promiscuous exercises on the irregular verbs; . . . . . 383—386

F.

F, its pronunciation, ... 26
FALTAR, and gustar, ... 408
FEET, poetical feet, ... 515
FOR, a preposition, its various meanings, ... 186
FORMATION, of the tenses of the Spanish regular verbs, 101—108
Of the gerund and participle, ... ib.
The FORMER, how translated, rule 38, . . . 312
FUTURE, perfect and future imperfect, rules 44, 45, . 338
——————— perfect and imperfect of the subjunctive, 51, 52, ... 351, 352

G.

G, the sound of it, ... 28
GENDER, the nature of it, ... 58
In Spanish there are five different genders, but properly speaking, two only, ... ib.
Rules to distinguish the gender of nouns, . 58—59
Exceptions to these rules, ... 60—64

Page.

GENITIVE, no *genitive*, or possessive case in Spanish, 222
GERUND, nature of it, ... 84
How it is formed, ... 107—108
Use and application of it, ... 356—357
GOVERNMENT, the nature of it, ... 191
Government of verbs, ... 387
Which are the kind of verbs that govern the infinitive, 388
Verbs governing the indicative, or subjunctive, 391
Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive, ... 392
GRAMMAR, the nature of *the Spanish Grammar*, . . 25
GRANDE, when it loses its termination, . . 237
GUSTAR, observation on *gustar*, and *faltar*, . 408—409

H.

H, never sounded in Spanish, ... 28
HABER, an auxiliary verb, its conjugation, . . 85—89
The use of Haber, ... 372
To HAVE JUST, how translated, ... 373
HISTORICAL sketch of the Spanish language, . 21—28
HOWEVER, how translated in Spanish, . . . 416

I.

I, its sound, ... 26
IDIOMS, colloquial, ... 455
IMPERATIVE mood—rule 46, ... 340
IMPERFECT indicative—rule 40, ... 328
Difference between the imperfect and preterite of the indicative, observation, ... 331
IMPERFECTS of the subjunctive, ... 343—346
Difference between the imperfects and futures of the subjunctive, observation, ... 353
IMPERSONAL verbs, ... 164—170
IN, its various meanings, ... 186
INFINITIVE mood, ... 83, 354
INNOVATIONS, in the tenses of verbs, ... 175
INTO, its various meanings, ... 187
INTERJECTIONS, the nature of them, ... 190

Page.
Adjectives used as interjections require *de*, . 418
How the interjection *ai*, is translated, . . ib.
INTERROGATIVE pronouns—rule 35, ... 303
INTERROGATION, an orthographical mark, . . 46
IRREGULAR verbs, ... 156—164
——— comparatives, ... 245
——— superlatives, ... 251
IT, meaning *so*, is translated by *lo*, ... 412

J.

J. a consonant, its peculiar sound, ... 28
JAMAS, an adverb, used sometimes with nunca, . 411

K.

K, its sound as in English, ... 26
This character is only retained in the Spanish language, to be used in foreign words, . . ib.

L.

L, its sound, ... 26
LA, *le*, *los*, *las*, articles, ... 68, 193
LANGUAGE, sketch of the Spanish, ... 21
The LATTER, how translated—rule 38, . . . 312
LETTERS, *vowels* and *consonants*, ... 26—30
Commercial letters, ... 506
LL, a consonant, its sound, ... 28

M.

M, a consonant, its pronunciation, ... 26
MODELS, of the irregular verbs, ... 125—155
MOOD, the nature of the *infinitive*, *indicative*, *imperative*, and *subjunctive* moods, ... 83
Use of the moods, ... 325, 340, 342, 354
In what cases conjunctions require the subjunctive mood, note 4, ... 392
MULTITUDE, nouns of multitude known by collective nouns, which see, ... 57
Use of the collective nouns, rule 61, ... 370

Page.
The Spanish nouns have no possessive case, . 222
Nouns are divided into *proper*, *common* and *abstract*, 56
The Spanish language has augmentative and diminutive nouns, ... 57
How they are formed, ... ib.
Declension of nouns, ... 68–71
NUMBER, the nature of it explained, ... 64
There are two numbers, ... ib.
Cardinal and ordinal numbers, ... 72–75
The plural number of adjectives formed like that of substantives, ... 71
NUNCA, an adverb, used sometimes with *jamas*, . . 411

Ñ.

Ñ, its sound, ... 28

O.

O, a vowel, its sound, ... 26
OBJECTIVE case, the nature of it, ... 66
Use of objective cases in the personal pronouns, 266–277
ON, a preposition, its various meanings explained, . 187
ORDINAL numbers, ... 74
ORTHOGRAPHY, its nature shown, ... 25
The alphabet with an English pronunciation, . ib.
The orthographical notes, [few excepted,] are the same, and used for the same purpose in Spanish as in English, ... 49
The reason of the variety of opinions concerning the sound of *c*, *b*, *d*, *t*, *v*, explained, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30
Rules to pronounce the Spanish without any foreign accent, ... 29
Division of the Spanish words into syllables, . 45
Words similar in sound, but different in spelling, 44
Rules for spelling according to the modern usage of the most eminent Spanish authors, . . 49
Orthographical accent, when used, ... 47
Words in Spanish are spelled as they are uttered, 44
OVER, a preposition, its various meanings explained, . 187

P.

Page.

P, its pronunciation, ... 26

PARTICIPLES, a list of verbs having the participle irregularly formed, ... 171

Participles which have an active signification and are used as verbal adjectives, ... 174

Participle past, its nature and properties explained, 83

Formation of the participle, ... 107–108

Use of the participle, ... 358

The participles sometimes require the verb *ser*, sometimes the verb *estar*, ... 377–378

The past participle is used as a case absolute in Spanish, note 2, ... 359

Participle present, like the gerund, ... 84, 356

PARTS OF SPEECH, we have, like the authors whose division is most universally adopted, assigned nine parts of speech to the Spanish language, . . . 55

PASSIVE participle, the same as participle past, . 83, 358

PERFECT indefinite, or preterite indicative, rule 41, . 330

Perfect of the subjunctive, rule 49, ... 350

Difference between the imperfect and preterite of the indicative, observation, ... 331

PERSONIFIED, *nations*, *towns*, *cities*, &c., take the article, rule 3, ... 193

PERSONS, three belong to each number, ... 82

POETICAL feet, of how many syllables they consist—their division, ... 515

POR, sometimes is used with *estar* or *quedar*, to show that an action is not finished, ... 390

POSITION of the *nominative*, rule 24, ... 262

Position of the 1st objective case, rule 25, . . . 266

——————— 2d objective case, rule 26, ... 269

Position of adjectives, rule 15, ... 232

POSSESSIVE pronouns, ... 78, 284, 294

PREPOSITIONS, their nature explained, ... 184

Which are the prepositions deemed such, . . . ib.

English prepositions with their correspondent ones in Spanish, ... 185, 188

Page.
The use of prepositions, ... 411
They always govern the second objective case of the personal pronouns, ... 273
They always precede the relative pronouns, note 1, 310
Prepositions required by verbs of motion, . . 406
PRETERITE, or perfect indefinite, rule 41, ... 330
Difference between the imperfect and preterite, observation, ... 331
PRESENT of the indicative, rule 39, ... 325
Of the subjunctive, rule 47, ... 342
Present participle, the same as gerund, . . 84, 356
PRONOUN, its nature explained, ... 75
Pronouns are divided into five classes, the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*, ... 76
Personal pronouns, their declension, . . 76, 77
They have two objective cases, ... ib.
The necessity that the student be well versed in them, observation, ... 260
Position of the nominative, ... 262
Position of the first objective case, ... 266
Position of the second objective case, ... 273
Use of both objective cases, ... 271, 274
The pronoun VMD. is considered a third person, like *él*, 261
Observations on the personal reciprocal pronoun *se*, 278
Observations on the difference between *le* and *lo*, 282
The two objective cases are sometimes used together, ... 275, 277
Possessive Pronouns, their declension and quantity, 78
Their agreement and use, ... 285
Sometimes the article used in place of them, observation, ... 290, 292
Relative Pronouns, their declension and quantity, 79
Their agreement and relation, ... 295
Their use and peculiarities, ... 297
Who, *that*, *that which*, and *what*, how translated, . ib.
He who, *she who*, or *that*, *they* or *those who*, how translated, ... 302

Page.
A list of regular verbs to exercise the student, . 122
Regular comparatives, how formed—rule 17, . 244
——— superlatives, how formed—rules 19, 20, 250—253
Ra ria, se, the terminations of three imperfects of the subjunctive, ... 343—346
RELATION of relatives, ... 295
RELATIVES, ... 294
REPETITION of the objective case, how used, . . 275
RHYME, its definition, ... 516

S.

S, a consonant, its sound, ... 29
SCANNING, or rules to measure verses, both by feet and syllables, ... 523
SE, a personal reciprocal pronoun, explained at large, 278—280
SER, difference between *Ser* and *Estar*, . . . 374—379
How *Ser* is translated with preciso, necesario, &c. 381
How *Ser* is translated, when impersonally used, 382
SIMPLE and compound adverbs, ... 179
SKETCH of the Spanish language, ... 17—24
SOUND of the letters, ... 26—30
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, its definition, ... 342
When directed by the tense which precedes it, 391—393
What conjunction governs it, note 4, . . 392
SUBSTANTIVE, the same as noun, . . . 56, 67, 222
SYLLABLES, rules for dividing them, ... 45, 46
SYNONYMES, between *Aquí, Acá; Ahí, Allí, Allá; Luego, que, Despues que; Despacio, Poco, á Poco; Adulador, Lisongero; Romper, Quebrar; Ir, Irse; Honor, Honra; No obstante, Aunque, Bienque; Opinion, Parecer, Dictámen; Pórque, Pues; Sospecha, Recelo; Veneno, Ponzoña; Voz Palabra*, ... 467
SYNTAX, its nature explained, ... 193
Of Pronoun, see *pronoun*.
Of Verb, see *verb*, &c.
SPELLING, rules showing the manner in which words are to be spelt in Spanish, ... 43
The various late changes in Spanish spelling, . . ib.

Page.
SO, meaning *it*, is translated by *lo*, note,* 412
SUPERLATIVES, how formed and used, ... 250

T.

T, a consonant, its sound explained, ... 26
TENER, an auxiliary verb, its conjugation, . . 89, 93
Use of *tener*, ... 372
How this verb is translated with the adjectives, *thirsty*, *hungry*, &c. . . . . ib.
TENSES, their nature explained, ... 325, 356
Present of Indicative. 325
Imperfect of the Indicative, ... 328
Perfect Indefinite, ... 330
The difference between the *Imperfect*, and *Perfect Indefinite*, clearly shown, ... 331
Perfect Definite, ... 334
Peculiarities of the Perfect Definite, ... 335
Pluperfect, ... 336
When the Pluperfect is used, ... 337
Future Imperfect, ... 338
Future Perfect, ... ib.
Peculiarities of the Future, ... 339
Imperative Mood, its use, ... 340
Subjunctive Mood explained, ... 342
Present of Subjunctive, ... ib.
Imperfect of Subjunctive, ... 343
Peculiar use of the three imperfects of the Subjunctive, ... 343, 346
Perfect tense, ... 350
Pluperfect, ... 351
Future Imperfect, ... ib.
Future Perfect, ... 352
Observations on the Tenses of the Subjunctive, . 353
Of the termination *ra*, *ria*, and *se*, ... 344—346
Rules for the correct application of these three imperfects, ... ib.—ib.
Different significations of the Preter imperfect, and the Imperfect Future of this Mood, ... 353

Page.
Infinitive Mood, its nature explained, . . 354
Use of the Infinitive, ... 355
Present, Perfect, Gerund, compound of the Gerund, Passive Participle, ... 355—359
TENER, see difference between *Haber* and *Tener*, 372—206
TERMINATIONS, changed to form the tenses of regular verbs, ... 101—108
Ancient terminations, ... 175—179
TRIPHTHONGS, those which belong to the Spanish, 31

U.

U, a vowel, its sound, ... 36
UNDER, its various meanings explained, . . 187
USE of the tenses, ... 325—356
—— of the definite article, rules 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, . 193
—— of the neuter article *lo*, ... 216
—— of the noun, rule 13, ... 222
—— of 1st and 2d objective cases, rules 27, 28, . 271, 273
—— of the tenses, present, indicative, 325—imperfect, 328—perfect, 330—perfect definite, 334—pluperfect, 336—future imperfect, 338—imperative mood, 340—subjunctive, present, 342—imperfect, 343, 344, 345, 346—perfect, 350—pluperfect, 351—future imperfect, 351—future perfect, 352.
—— of prepositions, ... 411
—— of conjunctions, ... 414
USTED, a personal pronoun, explained, . . 261
Its contraction, vmd., ... 86, 261

V.

V, a consonant, its sound, ... 26—30
V, a contraction of *Usted*, ... 86—261
V, and B, distinct in sound, ... 30
VERB, its nature explained, ... 81
Divided into *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*, . . ib.
Conjugation explained, ... 85
Mode of conjugating regular verbs, . 109—121
How regular verbs are formed, . . . 101—108

Page

VOCABULARY, of the most useful and necessary words—Of God,&c.—The Planets, &c.—Of Time—The Days of the Week—The Months of the Year—Seasons and Holidays—Individuals and Ages—Things belonging to the Body—Natural Actions—The Five Senses—Defects and Maladies of the Body, &c. &c. 472
VOWELS, their sound exhibited, ... 26

W.

W, this character does not belong to the Spanish alphabet.
WITH, a preposition, its meaning explained, . . 188
WITHIN, a preposition, &c. . . . . ib.
WITHOUT, a preposition, &c. . . . . ib.
WORDS, the most useful and necessary words, . 472

X.

X, a consonant, its sound, ... 29

Y.

Y, a consonant, its sound, ... 29
Used also as a vowel, ... ib.
Many authors never used it but as a consonant, . ib.

Z.

Z, a consonant its sound, ... 29